MAHARAJA BENDOYA SARASWATI MAHAL ... TANJORE

2633

A

TREATISE

ON THE

British Drill.

Serfoji Rajah 1830

A

TREATISE

ON THE

BRITISH DRILL

AND

EXERCISE OF THE COMPANY;

WITH AN

Introduction

TO THE

FIELD EXERCISE OF THE BATTALION;

EXPLAINING THE

DIFFERENT POSTS AND SITUATIONS

OF

EVERY INDIVIDUAL IN THE BATTALION

During the Performance of its Movements.

SECOND EDITION.

BY CAPTAIN A. SUASSO.

35TH REGIMENT OF FOOT.

London:

PRINTED AND SOLD BY W. CLOWES,

Northumberland-court, Strand.

And may be had of all Booksellers.

1816.

CONTENTS

PAGE.
Preface ix
Introduction 1

PART I. CHAP. I.

SECT.
1. Drill of the Recruit 5
2. Instructor 7
3. Position of the Soldier 8
4. Dumb-bell Exercise 11
5. Standing at Ease 12
6. Eyes to the Right, Eyes to the Left, and Eyes to the Front 14
7. The Facings 15
8. Marching 18
9. Length of Step 21
Halt 27
10. Oblique step 28
11. Dressing, when halted 33
12. Step Out 38
13. Mark Time 41
14. Stepping Short 42
15. Changing the Feet 43
16. The Side or Closing Step 45
17. Back Step 47
18. The Quick Step 49
19. The quickest Step 53
20. Different Times of March 54
21. File Marching 55
22. Wheeling of a Single Rank from the Halt 62
23. Wheelings on the March 71

SECT. PAGE.
24. Wheeling Backwards 73
25. Wheeling Backwards, by facing about 77
26. Wheeling on a moveable Pivot. 78
27. Of the different kinds of Wheeling 83

PART. I. CHAP. II.

DRILL WITH ARMS AND ON SEVERAL RANKS.

28. Position of the Soldier with Arms 88
29. Different Motions of the Firelock 90
30. Attentions in forming the Squad 92
31. To take Open Order from the Halt........... 93
To take Close Order 97
32. Manual Exercise 98
33. Several Motions of the Firelock, not comprehended in the Manual Exercise 106
34. Platoon Exercise 110
35. Explanation of Priming and Loading 114
36. Of the Firings 115
37. Light Infantry 124
38. Marching to the Front or Rear 127
39. Of the several Turnings practised on the March 134
40. Open and Close Order on the March.........137
41. March in File to a Flank.....................139
42. Wheeling in File 141
43. Oblique Marching in Front..................142
44. Oblique Marching in File.....................144
45. Wheeling Forward From the Halt 146
46. Wheeling Backwards 149
47. Wheeling to the Rear by Facing About 151
48. Wheeling from the March on a Halted Pivot..152
49. Wheeling on a Moveable Pivot 155
50. Stepping out, Stepping Short, Marking the Time, Changing the Feet, the Side Step, Stepping back 157

2633

PART II. CHAP. I.

SECT. PAGE.

1. Drill of the Platoon or Company 161
2. Formation of the Company or Platoon 164
3. } Company taking Open and Close Order.... 165
4. }
5. Marching to the Front 170
6. Different Kinds of Step 174
7. The Side Step 175
8. The Back Step 177
9. File Marching 178
10. Wheeling from the Halt 181
11. Wheeling to the Rear by Facing to the Right About 185
12. Wheeling Forward by Subdivision from Line 186
13. Wheeling Backward by subdivisions from Line 189
14. Wheeling to the Front or Rear by Sections .. 190
15. Marching on an Alignement in Open Column of Subdivisions........ 191
16. Wheeling into Line from Open Column of Subdivisions 193
17. In Open Column of Subdivisions Wheeling into an Alignement........ 197
18. In the Open Column of Subdivisions Wheeling into a Moveable Pivot 207
19. Countermarch by Files........ 210
20. Wheeling on the Centre of the Platoon 212
21. Oblique March........ 216
22. Increasing and Diminishing the Front of an Open Column Halted 218
23. Breaking off Files to pass a short Defile...... 220
24. Forming to the Front from File 229
25. Forming from File to either Flank........ 232
26. To form to either Flank from Open Column of Subdivisions 233
27. The Platoon moving to the Front to gain Ground to a Flank, by a March in Echelon by Sections .... [illegible]

SECT. PAGE.
28. Wheeling into Echelon....................240
29. From Three Ranks forming into Two Ranks..245
30. From Two Ranks forming into Three Ranks..247

PART II. CHAP. II.

31. EXERCISE OF THE COMPANY 250

PART III.

1. INTRODUCTION TO THE BATTALION DRILL..267
2. Practice of the Bands of Musicians, Fifers, and Drummers, to the regulated Time of March..267
3. Instruction relative to the Serjeants..........268
4. Exercise of the Pike..........................269
5. Attentions in the Serjeants while acting in the Battalion 271
6. Instruction of the Officers.....................281
7. Instruction to the Officers and Non-commissioned Officers relative to the Perpendicular Directions while on the March, and preserving of the Distance while in Column.........308
8. Field-Officers, Adjutant, and Staff; Battalion at Close Order 311
9. Recollections and Attentions in Commanding Officers of Battalions 319
10. System of Discipline.......................328

A few Questions connected with the Duties of a Soldier when in the Ranks.................339

PREFACE.

AMONG the received opinions, which are doomed to share the fate of inconsistency, discipline*, though universally admitted to be the main-spring of an army, may with justice be classed; for the various branches of instruction† are, in general, either so indifferently attended to, or altogether left to the care of individuals whose inferiority of talent seems totally inadequate to justify the trust reposed in them, that, inferring from the careless manner in which the drill and exercise are often carried on, one would almost be tempted to question their utility, and to range the advantages said to be derived from

* By the word Discipline is here understood, the instruction given to troops respecting the motions of the Manual Exercise, the Platoon Exercise, and the Evolutions; and not that part of military subordination established for the preservation of order and regularity, which is likewise denominated Discipline, and which, by-the-bye, is generally more attended to.

† This principally alludes to the infantry.

 the

the superior skill displayed by troops in the performance of their evolutions amongst those established principles, which, admitted without inquiry, are neither warranted by reason nor experience.

This conclusion, however, can by no means apply to a correct and scientific instruction of the troops, the efficacy of which, in fact, is not only obvious, but far from being enfeebled, will rather be illustrated, whenever its importance is subjected to disquisition,—a circumstance which, amongst the numberless examples that can be adduced, will be most happily displayed by the decided superiority regular troops possess over an armed multitude; and since this superiority can only be ascribed to the want of discipline in the latter, and must of course become evidently proportionate in the former, to the existing degree of order and regularity that prevails amongst them, it appears natural to conclude that the true touchstone for ascertaining the comparative relation in which troops stand to each other, can only be found in the greater or less degree of training which they have received.

Not only the great importance, but the absolute

necessity of drill and exercise, being thus far ascertained, the next consideration seems to be the relative manner in which both should be practised, for the purpose of producing the great effect aimed at when applied to the different descriptions of troops, and which even a common capacity, possessed of a moderate acquaintance with military affairs, will soon perceive should be materially different for the artillery, the cavalry, and the infantry. But, without expanding this observation further than our present limits will admit, and confining ourselves to the infantry, the subject of the present Treatise, we shall readily perceive, after due consideration, that the great object and chief perfection to be attained by the exercise and instruction is steadiness, and that, in whatever proportion this essential qualification is possessed by the individuals composing a battalion, in the same precise ratio will such a body be the more or less accurate in the performance of its movements. To this criterion of the infantry my attention has therefore been principally directed in writing the present Treatise, in conformity to which I have, without neglecting the Battalion Exercise, strongly recommended that of the company, as more calculated, by the men being narrowly watched, to impress on their minds the true principles and know-

ledge of the movements; I have also, on the same principle, bestowed particular care on the drill of the recruit, which, although not unfrequently treated with contemptuous indifference, is however, the fountain-head to which every prevailing quality, as well as existing vice, in the battalion is to be traced. If the mould is ill-shaped, it is in vain to seek for perfection in the impression which is taken from it*.

But as, notwithstanding what is here alleged,

* In displaying the utility of discipline, I do not by any means intend to insinuate the necessity of the men being kept the whole day under arms, or on the parade ground, which far from being favourable to promote precision in the movements, I consider rather inducive to prevent any regularity ever taking place in them, and calculated to cause the men to become unsteady as well as careless in their exercise. A few hours daily, well employed, will prove fully sufficient to effect every purpose of drill and exercise; and if the intended object is not obtained by it, it is because the time has not been properly made use of. As the opinion on this subject of so able a judge in military affairs as the Great Frederic of Prussia will probably be highly gratifying and particularly so as the steadiness and excellence of his infantry has always been proverbial, I have given in the following his directions on that head, as they are found in the English translation of the Regulations for the Prussian infantry, dedicated to the Right Honourable John Earl Rothes, Lieutenant- and

and the sanction giving to the above system of drill by the Rules and Regulations, with which it is perfectly in unison, prejudices in favour of former customs, or perhaps other considerations, may never-

---

General of His Majesty's forces, and Colonel of the Third Regiment of Foot-Guards, &c., Edit. 1754, Part V., Chap. 4, page 115.

Article 1st. The principal reason why a company, battalion, or regiment, when once brought into good order, does not continue so, is, because the captains, as well as some field-officers, don't take the necessary care, nor persevere in disciplining their men, after the months of exercise are past, but defer it till the next.

2d. The field-officer must oblige the captains, and the captains their subalterns, to take all possible care that there may be no man in any company who can't perform the motions quick; is not complete master of his duty, and in every respect capable of behaving properly; has not the air of a soldier; and who does not always appear regular and clean in his clothing.

3d. The officers and non-commissioned officers must take notice of those men who make false motions, or behave amiss under arms and upon duty; and after the exercise is over, or they come off guard, must exercise them apart; and when they are such as ought to know their business, and to do better, must have them punished.

4th. The captains must order the officers of their companies to draw out such men as are awkward, clownish, and unsteady, in their exercise, and to examine them in quarters; to instruct them, polish them, teach them the air of a soldier;

theless

theless suggest difficulties to thwart it, it may not prove altogether useless, in elucidation of the mode of discipline here proposed, to answer a few objections that may probably be alleged against it.

---

to exercise rightly, to march and to load quickly. Should any officer be negligent herein, his captain must become more strict with him; and, in case he still persists in such neglect, he must be reported to the colonel, or, in his absence, to the commanding field-officer, who must put him in arrest: nevertheless, it is not here to be understood that a captain is to depend altogether upon his officers, but he himself must be accountable for the state of his company; must himself take all possible pains to bring it into proper order, and afterwards to preserve it in such; and it is the duty of the officers of his company to assist him.

5th. Captains, or in their absence, the officers commanding companies, when they assemble either with or without arms at their quarters, must always have them in the strictest order; must make them stand steady, cast their eyes to the right, dress their ranks and files, carry their arms properly, march well, and perform every motion with the utmost exactness. When this regularity is preserved constantly, it will be no great difficulty to teach in the spring of the year what may have been forgotten in the winter, and to keep a regiment always in good order.

6th. It is evident from experience that (as many subaltern officers apply themselves to their duty in the presence of their field-officers and captains; but, on the contrary, when ordered out upon separate commands, are altogether inattentive to it) all such have but little or no ambition; the colonel therefore

The

The first of these which we shall notice, is the trifling benefit generally said to be derived from the battalion being exercised separately in platoons; but this objection, though, at first sight, apparently le-

---

must be very strict with them; and, if it appears that nothing less than severity will take place, must report them to his Majesty; because every officer who is not excited to the performance of his duty by a motive of ambition, but must be compelled to it, is unworthy to be one.

7th. Non-commissioned officers who may have the command of any guard or party of men, either with or without arms, must be careful to do their duty with the utmost diligence; and the field-officers, captains, or commanding officers of companies, must look strictly after all such as are only attentive to their duty while their officers are present, and neglect it in their absence; and any gentleman who is a non-commissioned officer, and is guilty of such remissness, shall forfeit all future pretensions to a commission.

8th. The officers must exercise the men when they parade for guard before their captain's quarters, as also upon the regimental parade; and, in large garrisons, before the commandant's quarters the whole year throughout: and make them go through the loading motions, close and open their ranks and files, and perform some parts of the Manual, the continuance of which practice will render it impossible for the men to forget their exercise, to any material degree.

9th. The captains must have their recruits taught to exercise in part by the officers of their companies, and not depend too much on the non-commissioned officers; nevertheless, both skilful non-commissioned officers and private soldiers are like-

velled

velled against the company drill, seems, however, to militate more against the mode in which it is commonly conducted, than against the exercise itself. I certainly admit that, in regiments where the com-

---

wise to be appointed for that purpose; and it is particularly necessary that a recruit be quartered with a good comrade, who must exercise him frequently, and help as it were to train him up.

10th. A recruit is not to mount a guard, or do any duty, in less than six weeks after his enlistment, in which time he must at least have learnt to perform his exercises so as to be able to do duty. He must be taught every thing by gentle methods, and without any ill language and abuse, so as not to become at first disgusted and afraid, but rather to imbibe an early impression of love and affection for the service; neither is he to be harassed with too severe exercising, much less beaten or otherwise ill treated, especially if he be simple or a foreigner.

11th. That a man may learn his exercise in play as it were, and get soon rid of the clown, the officer, non-commissioned officer, or comrade, who is to instruct him, must first teach him the proper position of head, body, and feet, without a firelock; how to march, and to perform the facings.

Afterwards how to carry a firelock upon his shoulder, to rest, order, ground, and shoulder again.

After that, how to perform the facings with presented and shouldered arms.

Then how to secure his firelock, to carry it high in the right arm, and to club;

And, lastly, how to perform the loading, and other motions in the Manual.

pany

pany drill has been wholly neglected, and officers, without previous preparations, are, by the direction of the general, or by the whim of the moment, ordered to turn out their companies, and permitted,

---

After a man is brought in this manner familiarly to understand the Manual Exercise, he must proceed to learn the firings in a method proportionably gradual.

'Tis a gross error to shew a recruit the whole exercise at once, which it is impossible for him either to comprehend or retain; but, as soon as he has learnt one part must unavoidably forget another.

12th. Recruits who join a regiment in the months of exercise, must be exercised alone in the manner above directed, and not with their companies, till they are able to perform their exercise alone; otherwise it will be to no purpose to put them into the ranks with the old soldiers. They are, in like manner, first to practise the firings frequently alone, so as not to be afraid of powder; and must learn to manage their arms with dexterity, and to load properly.

13th. Those who have had furloughs, and join their regiments in the months of exercise, must first practise their exercise alone, and perfect themselves in what they may perhaps have forgotten, The first time the companies march out to exercise, the Manual must be performed by word of command, by ranks; and all false motions and mistakes clearly explained and rectified, that the men may become again quite perfect, and learn to dress well with their firelocks in the performance of every word of command, and to know how many motions are contained in each.

14th. After the companies have been exercised some days by

 uncontrolled,

uncontrolled, to instruct their men in what, for the want of practice, they are not always masters of themselves, no great advantage can possibly be expected to result from it; and if, as will generally

---

ranks, they must be drawn up together and perform the Manual, first by word of command, and afterwards without.

15th. After the companies are perfected in the Manual, they must proceed to the loading motions, man by man, by files, by two files, by three files, by a whole platoon, and lastly by a whole company.

When the men have continued to exercise a few days by companies, and can perform the loading motions well, they must then load and fire, first man by man, afterwards file by file, but not too soon by entire companies.

16th. As soon as the companies can exercise readily, can load, fire, and march well, they are to exercise by divisions, and must load and fire again file by file; they must afterwards, before they load and fire by divisions, practise the motions only in the manner they are to be performed in battalion.

17th. After the men can exercise perfectly well by divisions, they must form in battalion, and that they must continue to practice till they are able to form, size, and dress themselves with the greatest propriety and expedition, in the manner directed in the forming of battalions in the first part of these Regulations.

N. B. When the men exercise by battalion, the Manual must be always performed without word of command; but they must first go through the motions for some time before they begin to fire.

be

be the case in such regiments, instead of the system they have carried on being amended, it is done away with, as soon as the want of principle and uniformity it must unavoidably occasion is observed, the above reflection may appear just and well founded; but it can hardly be brought to bear where those kinds of drill being rightly understood, and properly established in a corps, they take place under the immediate eyes of the field-officers; and where, under the same principles and system of discipline, they are regulated by officers who, from their first entrance into the service, have been regularly trained to the per-

---

13th. During the months of exercise the companies must exercise every other or third day, and are never to be kept out above three hours. In warm weather they must march out early, and return from the field about nine at furthest. No man shall be exercised in the afternoon who was out in the morning; and all such whose names have been taken down on account of bad behaviour, must be ordered out the next day; at which time they are to be particularly informed of the errors, and taught to do better.

After the men become so perfect as to form in battalion, they must exercise twice every week by battalion, and once by divisions, by which means a regiment, without any extraordinary fatigue, can and must be brought into proper order in one month's time; neither will the number of sick be so great as usual.

formance of this most important branch of their duty.

The method of allowing soldiers, indifferently trained, to join the ranks, is erroneous, and incompatible with the the true maxims of drill, as will be soon observable when the prodigious number of faults that must both occur and pass unnoticed, in a battalion consisting of individuals so liable to err, is reflected on, and when it is considered how impracticable it must be, in so extensive a body, to correct even the few mistakes discovered.

Men thus embodied may, I will allow, in the space of time, acquire a certain habit of acting together, and, in one way or another, be made to go through the evolutions; but a deficiency of principles in the separate movements must indubitably prevail thoughout. Such a battalion, therefore, will never be equal to what it might have been made capable of in the field, where, in action, amidst the surrounding noise, the confusion, as well as the numberless obstacles which are continually to be encountered; it is only on its correct acquaintance with the true rules of discipline, and the respective knowledge possessed and deeply imprinted on the mind of each individual, that a battalion can depend

for

for the maintenance of order, and the prompt and exact execution of its movements*. It would discover but slight acquaintance indeed with what occurs on service, as well as with the human heart, to imagine it possible for a moment that the manœuvres can be performed in the presence of an enemy with the same precision and coolness with which they are exhibited on parade. It will therefore demand no trifling degree of attention at home to attain perhaps even an indifferent performance in the field.

Instances of regiments which have not kept up the drill in such great perfection, but have, nevertheless, shone most conspicuously when employed on actual service, and distinguished themselves in presence of an enemy, furnish another ground of

* It is not to be supposed that the movements of a considerable line, performed as they are on service, under every disadvantage of an ill-chosen ground, and frequently at an accelerated step, can be executed throughout with the desirable, nay, even always the required degree of exactness; but, provided that order may at all times be instantaneously restored, and provided that, at the giving of the caution *to be particularly exact*, the intended operation is executed with the utmost steadiness and precision, this is all that is required and can be expected from discipline; but to attain to this perfection it is absolutely necessary for every man to be thoroughly impressed with the rules of the movements, and to have acquired beforehand a great habit of steadiness.

argument

argument frequently adduced to prove the inefficacy of discipline, and which is therefore particularly calculated to operate against the mode laid down in this Treatise; but, without inquiring minutely into the events and causes which might have led to the reputation of certain corps, and examining how far they are deservedly acquired, or discussing the justice of the principle which arbitrarily establishes, that as a fixed principle the conduct of particular regiments may be correctly inferred from the number of men they have lost in action,—and admitting that the valour of the men (a quality so truly characteristic of the British soldier) might, on particular occasions, supply the want of proper instruction, should the inability of instruction be altogether inferred from this? and is it not natural to suppose, that, far from being less brave and less successful, a knowledge of their profession and a habit of steadiness would have led to an increase of their confidence, as well as to still more exalted notions of their superiority? Battalions which are well drilled, will answer the purpose of attack as well as of retreat, and will perform their operations, particularly when of the latter description, at much less expense of blood, than battalions which, admitting their equality in every other respect, prove, nevertheless, inferior to them in this particular.

particular. Discipline, thus considered, is not merely a military object and a considerable saving to the state; but, by preserving the lives of a number of our fellow-creatures, an object which equally invites the peaceable philanthropist, as well as the statesman and the soldier, to unite in its support.

The third observation, which we shall now adduce, notwithstanding the great similitude it bears to the preceding (because, by being applied to a whole army instead of a particular corps, it assumes a different position, and consequently demands a different reply), is, that, if discipline, and the exact performance of the movements, be of such considerable importance, how comes it that armies possessing a great degree of superiority in these respects are frequently worsted by troops infinitely inferior to them in those important points?

But this mode of reasoning, though plausible, will, however, on examination, prove so little calculated to answer the object it was intended to illustrate, that, far from counteracting, it will rather display, the incumbency of a due attention being paid to the instruction necessary for the several branches which constitute an army.

To

To evince this, it will be necessary to remark, that the excellence of an army does not merely consist in the existing degree of precision obtained by its different descriptions of troops, viz. artillery, cavalry, and infantry, in the performance of their respective movements and duties, which are the objects of discipline; but also in the skill of its engineers, the knowledge and experience of its staff, and, above all, in the abilities of the person or persons invested with the supreme command; it is not therefore to the degree of superiority acquired by one of these, but also to the knowledge possessed by each, as well as, on the grounds of judgment and experience, the relative proportion in which they stand to the chiefs of the opposing army, that with any safety may a conclusion be drawn respecting the success or reverse of a campaign.

It would be absurd to deny, how great soever might have been its interior defects, that, whenever an army has been led by military characters of considerable eminence, victory has seldom failed to hover faithfully o'er its banners. This military axiom, the justice of which is proved both by the history of ancient and modern wars, clearly

evinces

evinces of how much importance it is for governments to be select in their choice of the person intrusted with the chief command of an army, and particularly so, as (which is highly deserving of attention) in the absence of those consummate commanders, and where they have not appeared on the stage of events, the fate of campaigns have still invariably depended on the comparative skill of the opposed generals *. It is no more the rapid torrent, which impetuously carries along all that ventures to obstruct its progress; but it is that stream of the two, the rapidity of whose waters approximates nearest to its velocity.

Although a happy discrimination, and both a careful as well as an impartial judgment amongst the individuals of every rank in the army, and a due notice paid to talent, united to zeal and particular attention to the service, wherever and whenever they display themselves, may materially assist in the discovery of those chosen few capable of leading troops to triumph; it must nevertheless be

* Two generals, when opposed in the field, may, with some reason, be compared to two chess players, of which the most able, provided he adheres to the rules, and does not venture too much, is certain of the game.

allowed

allowed that this is far from being altogether practicable and within our power.

Hence the greatest object of all being thus left to chance, or rather to Divine Providence, does it not obviously point out the peculiar attention which should be paid to those whom it has pleased Omnipotence to leave within our reach, and the great care which ought to be taken in rendering the officers composing the staff, the engineers, as well as the artillery, the cavalry, and the infantry, as perfect in their respective duties as circumstances will permit; since it is to these, although of an inferior consideration, that the state is to look for its defence whenever those insuperable warriors happen to head their foe? And let it not be said that they are of no moment, when, among the multiplicity of examples with which history is replete in support of their importance, we see a handful of Greeks, through the superiority of discipline and knowledge of war, baffle the stupendous efforts of Darius and Xerxes to enslave them; as well as, in the second Punic war, the Roman discipline offer a check to the genius of Hannibal, one of the greatest warriors the world ever produced, and protract a war, which, without it, would in all probability have terminated in the destruction of that common-

wealth

wealth long before Scipio took the lead of her armies. And may not the military position Austria was allowed to preserve after her struggles with France, notwithstanding her numberless defeats, with some degree of reason be likewise ascribed to the same cause? And is it not likely to suppose that the French chief* would not have so willingly subscribed to it, had the wreck of its armies not still presented such an obstacle to his ambition as to induce him to accede to those advantages victory offered, without seeking for greater in the continuance of a war the result of which was uncertain?

In conclusion of what we have alleged in behalf of discipline, it appears proper here to notice the considerable improvements, which of late years have taken place in the British army, in this as well as in every other respect, through the Regulations so wisely established by H. R. H. the Duke of York: and to observe the share those improvements must have had in promoting the views of the Duke of Wellington, and in enabling that illustrious commander to achieve so gloriously the deliverance of

* Buonaparte.

the

the Peninsula, which so happily led to the deliverance of Europe.

Previous to dismissing the reader, I shall close this Preface by submitting a few remarks respecting the Treatise I here venture to offer to the public, and in extenuation of its bulk,—which probably will strike others, since I must own I was struck with it myself,—I shall only remark, that, on re-examination, I was resolved to lop it of every exuberance and superfluity, and reduce the work to as narrow a compass as the subject would admit; but I soon discovered that a book which treats of the first elements of military instruction could not easily be curtailed without weakening its utility; and that the expunging of a few observations, however trifling they may appear, would necessarily influence the whole; neither could any sufficient reason be adduced for erasing one part in preference to another, and consequently it became useless to say *any* thing unless *every* thing was noticed; between the two evils I have therefore chosen what *I* considered the *least* (the reader will judge whether or not my conclusion has been correct), and allowed the work to remain at its present size.

It must be admitted, that as the recapitulation of the

the Attentions in the Instructor, which close each movement, are only a repetition of what has been said before, they might have been done away with; but it is presumed, that the advantage which must result from the Rules being thus collected, will plead in behalf of this arrangement, and protect it from a censure it might otherwise be liable to.

As to the attentions required in the commandant of a battalion, although they do not appear to be closely connected with the drill of the recruit and exercise of the company, they are, however, not so remote from the exercise in general as to be excluded from a work which, like this, delineates the rules and principles for the instruction of the infantry; they will, besides, as a further excuse for their admittance from a useful selection of remarks, both in respect of the works of command as well as the mode of execution of the movements, and, as such, assist the memory of officers when in charge of a battalion.

Considerable time as well as trouble will be spared by adopting the different slow methods proposed for practising at first the oblique step, the filings, the wheelings, &c.; I shall therefore particularly recommend their use to all persons engaged

gaged in drilling recruits, squads, or platoons; and I can safely assert that I have frequently experienced, in the latter exercise, that a few steps thus performed, or a half wheel, when the latter movement was the operation intended, were sufficient to restore order and precision where confusion and irregularity were prevailing; which seems easily accounted for in the facility those slow methods afford for discovering the particular mistake incurred by each individual, and consequently for applying the proper correction.

The little attention which is sometimes bestowed to the instruction of the troops, and the greater attention which generally might be paid to it, have, in addition to the erroneous system on which I conceived it to have been frequently conducted, induced me to collect the few observations which a small experience in that particular branch of the duty had permitted me to make, and daily suggested. As any officer might, with the same design, have performed this not only as well, but probably much better than I have done, I can only claim the merit of having made the attempt. Should, however, any success attend my endeavours, and should I add, even in the most trifling degree, to the general improvement which daily takes place

in

in the British army, I shall consider the time my military avocations have permitted me to bestow on the subject, to have been most happily employed.

In classing the different materials, I have followed the order in which the movements are laid down in the Rules and Regulations; which arrangement, I considered, would render this book more useful than if I had pursued a different method. The same motive has likewise strongly impressed upon me the necessity of strictly adhering in every respect to the rules and principles directed for the movements by authority; nor, I must confess, should I have felt, even without this, the least inclination to deviate from them and alter a system, which, notwithstanding the cognation which prevails amongst the different European armies, is superior to all those I have ever compared it with *; and as for those deviations, which, under the appellation of improvements, are daily attempted, to the great

* Very just observations respecting the superiority of British Regulations over the French, in regard of quickness of time, are to be found in the Preface to Russel's Tactical Regulator, and in the definitions and necessary recollections of the same book.

detriment

detriment of uniformity, I hope I shall not give offence by asserting that I have always been at a loss to discover either the reason for their introduction, or what advantages could possibly result from them; and not unfrequently discovered, on examination, that they were perfectly inconsistent with the principles of the very movement the execution of which they were intended to promote.

TREATISE

ON

THE BRITISH DRILL,

AND

EXERCISE OF THE COMPANY.

INTRODUCTION.

BY the word "Drill" is understood the necessary instruction which is given to the recruit, to render him adequate to act in the ranks with other soldiers; a knowledge he will most effectually attain by being, at first, initiated singly into the principles; and when grounded in them (and only then), proceed to that part of his instruction which has in view his acting with others, and give him the necessary habit so to do. This latter part, however, is not obtained by indiscriminately assembling a number together, but by taking at first a few recruits on a single rank, and at open files; which files being afterwards closed, and some well-trained soldiers added to it, form what is called a *Drill Squad*, which drill squad, in proportion to its progress, is placed on two and three deep, and

and successively increased to the extent of a platoon or company; at which period, as it is to be supposed that every individual thus attached to it is sufficiently grounded in the principles of his exercise to act with a certain degree of precision and steadiness, the various movements required from the company in the field-exercise of the battalion are practised; this instruction of the company being a preparative to their being formed into a battalion, or part of it acting as such, for the purpose of performing the movements laid down in His Majesty's Regulations.

It is in this exercise of the battalion that the instruction relative to the movements is particularly to be given to the officers and non-commissioned officers. As to the men, it is to be viewed in a different light, and only to be considered as putting into practice what they have been taught before at the drill, and drill of the platoon. However, the degree of perfection they have there acquired will be fully displayed when the battalion, or part of it, is thus assembled to practise its movements.

When battalions are correct in their field-exercise, they may also be advantageously collected and manœuvred together into brigades, which, by giving the troops thus assembled the habit of acting together, must undoubtedly prove beneficial. However, when it is considered that every battalion, though in line, performs its movements within itself, and as a separate body,—and that the preservation of the general line

and

and relative position of the corps, as well as the small deviation the execution of the movements of some particular battalions may here require, solely depend on officers whose high situation in the army implies a knowledge in military affairs, and a practice which cannot always be expected from officers of inferior rank,—the advantages to be derived from the exercises of the brigade and the line, notwithstanding their great utility, can never be compared with those to be acquired from the battalion exercise, nor be regarded as so indispensably necessary. The training of the men, therefore, to the latter, may be justly considered as the principal object aimed at by the infantry drill.

Well drilled and regulated battalions will seldom be deficient in line, nor on any other occasion where their services may be required; and their state of discipline, order, and regularity, are generally the safest criterions for ascertaining what is to be expected from the body of infantry they compose.

The great necessity of having the battalions thoroughly instructed in the performance of their movements, which we have already so obviously displayed, at once points out the unremitted attention indispensably requisite in the drill, and drill of the platoon, as it is utterly impossible that a battalion can be capable of going through its manœuvres with any degree of accuracy so long as the companies which compose it are deficient within themselves, and

unable

unable to execute correctly the respective movements which are there required from them; and no less absurd to imagine that any regularity can exist in a company consisting of individuals indifferently trained to the use of their arms, their position, the dressing, marching, &c., which form the object of the First Part of the Drill.

PART

PART I.

Sect. 1. *Drill of the Recruit.*

THE first instructions given to the recruit are thus denominated. They consist in giving him the proper position without and with arms, and in teaching him the facings, the different kinds of step and cadence of march, the dressing, and the handling of the firelock, which latter is almost wholly comprehended in the manual and platoon exercise.

The drilling of the recruits is the peculiar province of the adjutant, who is to be answerable to the commanding officer for their progress in improvement; and should any glaring deficiency of principles become perceptible amongst the men, on their joining the company or battalion, in any of the points immediately connected with the drill, it is to him the blame is to be attached for the neglect which must have taken place at their instruction.

Beside the serjeant-major, the adjutant is to be assisted in this very essential part of his duty by a certain number of non-commissioned officers, purposely appointed to act to that effect under him, and subject to his immediate control. These non-commissioned officers are to receive their instructions from the adjutant, and to be checked and corrected by him, should they either be defective in the part they are to teach, or in the method of imparting their information; but, however qualified they may be for the object here intended, it ought to be an invariable rule for the serjeant-majors (provided no other duties interfere) to be present, and superintend the drill in the absence of the adjutant, whose frequent presence, nevertheless,

nevertheless, is likewise sufficiently secured by the responsibility already attached to his situation.

The method of instructing the recruits at first separately is not only enjoined by Regulations, but will also be found the only secure method of obtaining any degree of accuracy amongst the men; and, though apparently slow in progress, the quickest method to be resorted to,—the time thus bestowed in imprinting them carefully with the true notions of position, marching, &c., being amply regained afterwards when the company or the battalion is assembled, and where, particularly in the latter, a deficiency in those very points, even only amongst a part of the men, will both cause delay in the movements, and render the attainment of any perfection in their performance absolutely impossible.

The only objection which may with some propriety be advanced against this individual drill, and which appears particularly applicable to our army, is where regiments, on their return from the East or West Indies, are sometimes quickly filled up, and where, on two or three hundred recruits, &c., joining at once, there seems to be some difficulty in their being trained singly. However, when it is considered that regiments so situated must (provided any principle of drill and discipline ever took place in the same) still be capable of mustering thirty or forty non-commissioned officers and men, capable, under the immediate eye of the adjutant or serjeant-major, to give instruction in those cases of emergency, and, by repeating the lesson, teach separately each at least two a day, the objection appears greatly obviated; yet, should former neglects deprive a regiment of the above advantage, and the number of persons supposed qualified to be employed at the drill, or other reason, induce to depart from the common rule by collecting immediately a number together for instruction, that number should, at any rate, never exceed four or five, as it would become impossible for the instructor

to

to bestow the proper attention to more men at a time, or to prevent their falling into false habits, which, if once contracted, will be found exceedingly difficult to be got rid of, and, while existing, altogether debar the individual from attaining any perfection in his exercise.

S. 2. *Instructor.*

THE desirable qualifications in the instructor appear to be a perfect knowledge of the object he is to teach; to be clear and precise in his explanations, exact in his words of command, and to possess the two sister qualities of patience and good temper. He ought to be perfectly aware, that, notwithstanding the facility with which we can comprehend all matters relative to a science we are familiarized with, and how easy they appear to us, they are viewed in a very different light by those who have not yet acquired any knowledge whatever of such science; and that the leaving out of a word which appears immaterial to the teacher may frequently be absolutely indispensable to the learner, to enable him to comprehend what was intended to be explained to him. The driller will generally find that, the exhibiting of the motion or position, after explaining it, will meet with success; but, should both prove ineffectual, he is immediately to endeavour, by the addition of some fresh words, to render himself more explicit; and he should be perfectly aware, that, however clear his first explanation seemed to him (which, notwithstanding his thinking so, will not always be the case), it was not so to the person instructed, whose difficulty in conceiving what was meant in this instance will by no means be alleviated, but rather be increased, by the driller forgetting himself so far as to make use of abusive language, or by his throwing himself into a passion

passion, which will, if any thing, only add to the confusion the recruit is already labouring under.

The great discretion, which is at all times necessary to be used in regard to punishment, seems peculiarly recommendable for the drill, where an untimely severity would become exceedingly prejudicial.

Soldiers, and particularly young ones, will rarely err intentionally; however, as the occurrence of mistakes is more frequently to be ascribed to their not bestowing proper care, this requires to be strictly guarded against. All instances of neglect in the men must therefore be checked as soon as perceived; and should a few harsh words fail of producing the desired effect, other means must be immediately resorted to, for the purpose of enforcing due attention.

The strict adherence to His Majesty's Regulations, so essential in every officer, is particularly required from those intrusted with the important branch of Instruction. Were a latitude of innovation once admitted, it is impossible to calculate where it it might terminate; and though alterations for the better would seldom be offered, the system would be continually liable to undergo some change or other, and the army, in time, be altogether deprived of the great benefit arising from the established uniformity in its movements,—an advantage no partial improvement, however excellent in itself, can ever compensate.

S. 3. *Position of the Soldier (directed by Regulation as follows).*

R. R. Part I. *S.* 1.—" The equal squareness of " the shoulder and body to the front is the first and " grand principle of the position of a soldier. The " heels must be in a line, and closed; the knees " straight, without stiffness; the toes a little turned " out, so that the feet may form an angle of about

" sixty

"sixty degrees. Let the arms hang near the body, "not stiff; the flat part of the hand and little finger "touching the thigh; the thumbs as far back as the "seams of the breeches; the elbows and shoulder. "to be kept back; the belly rather drawn in, and "the breast advanced, but without constraint; the "body upright, but inclining forward, so that the "weight of it principally bears on the fore part of the "feet; the head to be erect, and neither turned to the "right nor left."

As a stiff and awkward position is at first likely to proceed from the foregoing, the recruit will not be kept too long in it, but permitted to resume his former attitude, and from it be directed to endeavour to replace himself into that described for the soldier; and, while attempting it, he will be apprised by the driller, that, in bringing his shoulders back, he is to allow the whole of the weight of the upper part of his body to rest on his hips, which will naturally advance the breast. He should likewise rest his hips on the whole of his feet, and not on his heels only, which would throw him backwards. The instructor is also to pay particular attention that, in resuming the regulated position, the recruit holds his head erect, and exactly to the front, and also places his feet to the ordered angle of sixty degrees, which latter will be readily obtained by placing the angular form, *Fig.* 1, between them. It is to be observed that this exact position of the head and feet is, in most people, of so great an influence on the other parts of the body, that they are almost naturally brought into their true attitude as soon as the head and feet are properly situated.

When the recruit shall have thus assumed the carriage of the soldier, and the most defective parts of his position have been somewhat corrected, the angular form being taken away, he will be ordered to lean forward, and, raising his heels, to balance twice or thrice on the fore part of his feet before he drops

 again,

again, and to remain perfectly steady as soon as he feels the hind part of his shoe-sole touch the ground, so as to preserve the position he will then stand in, which will be nearly the same as that in which he was placed while balancing forward, and at the same time the position required from the soldier.

This method of habituating the recruit to his position, which experience will generally prove successful, is peculiarly calculated to counteract his leaning back,—an error the young soldier is very liable to fall into, which should therefore be cautiously guarded against at the first period of his instruction.

A few repetitions of the foregoing will be advantageously followed by the dumb-bell exercise, until the recruit appears fatigued, when he may be allowed to rest.

Too much pains cannot be taken in rendering the recruit perfectly master of his position, no precision being ever attainable in any part of the exercise so long as the soldier is defective in this essential point. The instruction, therefore, until the recruit is thoroughly grounded in his position, is altogether to be confined to this object; and the two hours allotted to the drill*, both in the morning and afternoon, should be employed successively in—

1st. Placing the recruit as directed by the Regulations; and, after keeping him a few seconds in that position, permitting him to resume the one he held before.

2d. From this latter, with the assistance of the teacher, he should endeavour to replace himself in

* Were more than two hours employed at a time, it would probably fatigue the instructor as well as the recruit, and induce both the one and the other to be less attentive in the latter part of the drill, which is carefully to be avoided, and seems unlikely to take place when the lesson is reduced to two hours.

the

the position directed for the soldier; and, when corrected as previously mentioned, balance twice or thrice on the fore part of his feet.

3d. After having thus balanced five or six times, proceed to the dumb-bell exercise, and continue it until the recruit appears fatigued. He may then be allowed to rest.

4th. The lesson is again resumed by the ordered position, and in the succession here laid down, concluded with the *Rest*, and this be repeated until the two hours are elapsed *.

The time allowed to rest may be most advantageously made use of in explaining to the recruit the several reasons to be adduced in support of the prescribed directions of the position, and the advantage to be obtained therefrom, as well as the great benefit he will derive in his future instruction from being perfectly correct in it, which latter appears here particularly requisite, as without this information, the recruit will probably feel himself greatly annoyed by being kept so tediously at a matter, which, for want of knowing better, he will only deem of mere parade.

S. 4. *Dumb-Bell Exercise.*

THE use of the dumb-bells being recommended in the foregoing section, it appears necessary, previous to proceeding to the following instruction of the soldier,

---

* The backboards, *Fig.* 2, may be advantageously used to throw the shoulders and upper part of the body into their true position, and should therefore be frequently in the hands of the recruits, during the intermediate time left between the hours of drill.

to

to annex the method in which the recruits are to be exercised with the same, which is as follows:—"The "dumb-bells * being placed one on each side of the "recruit, and himself in an erect steady posture, on "the word—*Raise Bells*—he will take one in each "hand, and, by a gentle motion, raise them as high as "his arm will suffer him above his head; then gradually "sinking them with stretched arm, as much behind "him as possible, he will form a circle with them, "making the circle complete by causing the backs of "his hands to meet behind his body; this will be re- "peated, according to his strength, five or six times.— "*Extend Bells*—The bells being raised to the shoulder, "they will be forced forwards, keeping the same height, "then brought back in the same manner; this will "throw the chest forward, and force back the neck and "shoulders;—this must be frequently repeated.— "*Swing Bells*—The top part of the bells to be made "to meet together in front, the height of the breast; "then forced backwards with an extended arm, and "be made to touch behind; in doing this, the palm of "the hands must be uppermost, and the elbows well "down. This circle must be repeated fourteen or "fifteen times: the circle performed in two seconds.— "*Ground Bells*—The recruit will let fall the bells by "his sides, and remain steady and firm."

S. 5. *Standing at Ease.*

THE instructor, who hitherto has not enforced any constraint on the recruit during the time allowed to rest, and, in order not to divert his attention by new

---

* This exercise of the dumb-bells is taken from James's Dictionary, and there mentioned to be extracted from a work entitled Military Instruction.

instructions,

instructions, has permitted him to do so in the position he thought the most commodious to himself, will now, as soon as he perceives that he has acquired some knowledge of his position, direct him to rest, at the command, *Stand at Ease*, in the regular mode prescribed by Regulations; and when the lesson is to be resumed at the word *Attention*, he must be taught to replace himself smartly in the posture already described, and to remain perfectly steady in it, ready to comply with any direction which may be given. The mode ordered to stand at ease is as follows:—

R. R. Part I. *S.* 2.—" On the words *Stand at Ease*, " the right foot is to be drawn back about six inches, " and the greatest part of the weight of the body " brought upon it; the left knee a little bent; the " hands brought together before the body; but the " shoulders to be kept back and square; the head " to the front, and the whole attitude without con- " straint."

In performing the above the instructor will observe,

1st. That in drawing his right foot back, although he is to do so along his left heel, he brings it rather to the rear. Were he to place it too much to the left, it would naturally throw back his right shoulder, and thereby derange the squareness of shoulders to the front, here particularly recommended.

2dly. Whether the left knee is bent, which will naturally bring the weight of the body on the right foot. The obedience to this latter direction will be easily ascertained by ordering the recruit, while standing at ease, to bend the advanced knee (which is already a little so) rather more, and enough to raise the right foot from the ground, and observe whether in doing so he preserves the position he was standing in before, as it would be impossible for him not to deviate from it materially were the weight of the body not previously brought on the right foot.

3dly. That during this movement the left heel is not moved, this being requisite to enable the soldier,

at the word *Attention,* to replace himself on the identical spot on which he stood when he was ordered to stand at ease.

4thly. If any open space is left between the right foot and the left heel; which will at once shew, that, in bringing his right foot back, he did not draw it along his left heel; as it would necessarily touch it if that direction had been duly attended.

R. R. Part I. *S.* 2.—" At the word *Attention,* the " hands are to fall smartly down the outside of the " thighs; the right heel to be brought up in a line " with the left; and the proper unconstrained posi- " tion of a soldier immediately resumed."

The instructor is to be particularly careful here, that, at the word *Attention,* the recruit resumes instantly his position, and remains, whether right or wrong, perfectly immoveable in it, without attempting the least correction. In mentioning this the driller will likewise inform him that any slight defect in his position (which will generally be here that the right foot is not properly brought up) might hereafter be insensibly corrected; whereas any movement at the immediate resuming of the position will appear extremely unsteady, and besides render his mistake obvious to every spectator at that instant watching his motions.

S. 6. *Eyes to the Right, Eyes to the Left, and Eyes to the Front.*

THE directions given to the eyes in the foregoing being frequently for the purpose of wheeling, dressing, &c. deviated from, the recruit will be taught (*R. R. Part* I. *S.* 3.), " on the words *Eyes to the Right,* or " *Eyes Right,* to glance the eyes to the right with " the slightest turn possible of the head; at the words " *Eyes to the Left,* or *Eyes Left,* to cast the eyes " in

" in the like manner to the left; and on the words
" *Eyes to the Front*, or *Eyes Front*, to look and turn
" the head to the front, the habitual position of the
" soldier."

The fault generally committed by the men being here to turn the head too much, and, in doing so, to carry the shoulder with it so as to make a half-face towards the side they are ordered to look to, the instructor is to pay particular attention, and see—

1st. That the position of the head to the front is no more deviated from than the movement absolutely requires.

2dly. That the position of the body is not altered, and that the shoulders remain square to the front.

S. 7. The Facings.

THE recruit being first apprized, that, in going through the facings, he is to incline his body rather forward and keep his knees straight, his further instruction may be proceeded in :—

" *To the Right Face.*

(R. R. Part I. *S.* 4.*)*—" 1st. Place the hollow of
" the right foot smartly against the left heel, keeping
" the shoulders square to the front.

" 2dly. Raise the toes, and turn to the right on both
" heels.

" *To the Left Face.*

" 1st. Place the right heel against the hollow of
" the left foot, keeping the shoulders square to the
" front.

" 2dly. Raise the toes, and turn to the left on both
" heels.

" *To the Right about Face.*

" 1st. Place the ball of the right toe against the

" left

"left heel, keeping the shoulders square to the "front.

"2dly. Raise the toes and turn to the right about "on both heels.

"3dly. Bring the right foot smartly back in a line "with the left.

"*To the left about face**.

"1st. Place the right heel against the ball of the "left foot, keeping the shoulders square to the front.

"2dly. Raise the toes and turn to the left about on "both heels.

"3dly. Bring up the right smartly in a line with the "left."

It is to be observed, that, as the position of the soldier cannot admit of any open space being left between the heels at the conclusion of the facings, some regard must be had to persons indifferently shaped, to give them at first, without materially deviating from the above-mentioned direction, the habit of placing, in the first motion of those facings, their right foot before or behind the left one in the mode their formation will more particularly require, to cause their heels to join while turning, and to be perfectly closed when the change of front is effected.

The chief objects of attention in the driller are,

1st. To see that, in going through the facings, the left heel never quits the ground it stands on; otherwise, if ordered to resume the former front, the soldier will not be posted in his proper place, and consequently the dressing will be lost after each facing.

2dly. That the men remain perfectly steady until

* The purpose effected by a left-about face being at all times answered by facing to the right about, this motion, with all due submission to His Majesty's Regulations, seems superfluous, and liable, if made use of in the future exercise, to confuse the men, by causing them to err, at the words *Half Front*, in coming round to the left instead of the right about, which has a very awkward appearance.

the

the whole of the command is given; and only after the delivery of the last word, *Face*, commence the directed change of front by placing their right foot before or behind the left, according to the alteration intended.

3d. To see the body inclined forward, the knees kept straight, and the body going round smoothly, and not by a sudden jerk.

4th. To observe that the several motions of the facings are performed in the cadence of the ordinary time, the words *Two*, and *Two*, *Three*, being at first given, and repeated until the recruit becomes master of the regulated time.

5th. That the recruit, whether right or wrong, remains steady after the conclusion of those movements, any slight defect of position being easily corrected afterwards; whereas any attempt to do so immediately would appear extremely unsteady, and render obvious a fault which, without this untimely correction, would have probably remained unnoticed.

6th. To apply the angular form after the performing of each facing, in order to ascertain whether the position of the feet and angle of sixty degrees has been properly preserved *.

* It is hardly necessary to repeat, that, at the teaching of the *Standing at Ease*, as well as future instruction, the explaining and shewing of a motion, or movement, is invariably to precede the direction to the recruit to attempt his performing it himself; and that likewise the person who drills is never to omit, when imparting a direction, to accompany it with the reason for which it is ordered, displaying at the same time the results which would attend from the rule being departed from.

S. 8. Marching.

THE recruit having acquired some steadiness in his position, and obtained some knowledge of the several turnings of the eyes and facings, will now proceed to the marching. A soldier, to be capable of marching with others, must not only be master of his position, and able to preserve it while advancing, but likewise have it in his power, in bringing his foot to the ground, to place it at the very moment and precisely on the spot he intends, as it would otherwise become impossible for him to perform at a pace perfectly correspondent with that of his neighbours, nor could he correct an error committed in a preceding step by lengthening, shortening, or quickening a succeeding one; and this precision being only attainable by constantly bringing the weight of the body on the foot which is posted, the recruit must be particularly ordered to attend to this direction, as well as be apprized that any neglect of it would frequently compel him to shorten and quicken his pace to preserve his balance, whereas a strict attention will both render him master of the cadence and length of step, and likewise enable him to raise one foot the instant the other is brought down, which is here also required.

These preliminary explanations will be followed by the ordered directions, the reason of each being added in support of their utility, and the whole being further illustrated by the instructor performing himself a few paces, stopping at the two balancing positions hereafter described, the attention of the recruit being principally drawn to the manner in which the body, following the motion of the leg and thigh, is brought to rest alternately on each foot the instant it is placed on the ground; and this being perfectly understood, the recruit is next to be instructed in the balancing pace; and therefore, after being placed in the exact position described in pages 8 and 9, he should be directed

rected, at the word "*March*," to advance his left foot straight forward *, without carrying the shoulder with it, keeping the body perfectly erect, the knees straight, the toe a little pointed outwards, the shoulders square to the front, and the whole weight of the body bearing on the right foot. In this, the first balancing position, he is to remain for a short time, in order to become perfectly steady in it, when, at the word "*Left*," the advanced foot (here the left) is brought forward to the spot it is to rest upon, and there placed firmly, the toe touching the ground a little before the heel, the body, which has accompanied the movement of the leg and thigh, being, at the very instant it is placed, brought perpendicularly to rest on it, and the right foot at the same time lifted up, the toe pointed to the ground, the knee somewhat bent, and advanced in the position of a person just raising his foot to perform a pace, which, being the second balancing position, the recruit is likewise to be kept at it until it is thought proper to give the word "*Two*," when the right foot, without occasioning the least improper motion or change in the position, is to be thrown forward, and the knee, being gradually stiffened, brought into the attitude described for the left one in the first balancing position. The recruit, being again kept for some time in this attitude, is, at the word "*Right*," to complete his pace with the right foot, and to raise his left in the manner explained before for the right, and thus successively continue the advance at the words "*Right, Two*," "*Left, Two*," &c. remaining for a certain time at each balancing position, until he has acquired sufficient steadiness, when he will gradually proceed quicker from one position to the other, and finally be

* The first step at the word *March*, (with the only exception of the side-step to the right) is invariably taken with the left foot.

directed

directed without any further pause, throwing his body rather forward, regularly to march at the words "*Left, Right*," which words are on no account to be discontinued until the mind of the recruit is thoroughly imprinted with the true time, as otherwise he would unavoidably contract the habit of a false cadence.

During the above the instructor is to see the arms kept steady, without stiffness, no opening being left between them and the body; and, to improve the recruit still further in these balancing positions, the driller will make him, while standing on one leg, move the other to the front and rear, and repeat this alternately with each leg, the body being the whole of the time kept steady, and the motion of the legs springing from the haunches without constraint.

The directions given by authority in respect of the march are,

R.R. Part I. *S.* 5.—"In marching the soldier must "maintain as much as possible the position of the body "as directed in *S.* 1."

Were this rule deviated from, he would not be able to keep his balance while in motion.

"He must be well balanced on his limbs; his arms "and hands, without stiffness, must be kept steady "by his side, and not suffered to vibrate; he must "not be allowed to stoop forward, still less to lean "back."

In leaning back he will not only prevent the pace being taken at full length, but also, by keeping the weight of his body too long on the foot placed in the rear, prevent its being brought forward in proper time.

"His body must be kept square to the front, and "thrown rather more forward in marching than when "halted, that it may accompany the movement of the "leg and thigh, which movement must spring from "the haunch; the ham must be stretched, but with-"out stiffening the knee; the toe a little pointed,

"and

"and kept near the ground; so that the shoe-soles
"may not be visible to a person in front."

Were the feet lifted up more than required, it would occasion unnecessary fatigue, as well as more or less influence the degree of quickness by rendering the march slower, and tend to counteract the uniformity of step, as it would by no means prove an easy task to accustom the men to raise their legs all to the very same height.

"The head to be kept well up, straight to the front, "and the eyes not suffered to be cast down."

This position of the head and eyes is of the utmost consequence, and must, therefore, be attended most carefully to, the squareness of the position to the front, and perpendicular direction while in motion, being altogether dependent on it, as no degree of accuracy in the march can be attained by an individual so long as he is in the habit of casting his eyes down.

"The foot, without being drawn back, must be "placed flat on the ground."

Were the heel placed the first, it would naturally, by drawing back the foot and shortening the pace, occasion delay in the march, as well as additional fatigue; and these effects would be much increased in heavy sandy roads.

S. 9. *Length of Step.*

R. R. Part I. *S.* 6.—"The length of each pace from "heel to heel is thirty inches, and the recruit must "be taught to take seventy-five of these steps in a "minute, without tottering, and with perfect steadi-"ness. The *Ordinary Step*" (which is the name given to this pace) "being the pace on all occasions what-"ever, unless a greater celerity be particularly or-"dered, the recruit must be carefully trained and

"thoroughly

" thoroughly instructed in this most essential part of " his duty, and perfectly made to understand that he " is to maintain it for a long period of time together, " both in line and in column, and in rough as well as " in smooth ground, which he may be required to " march over."

The use of the skip, *Fig.* 3 *, appears peculiarly calculated to accustom the men to the regulated length of step, and is infinitely preferable to the methods where the steps are marked on the ground intended to go over, or where they are pointed out on a cord stretched along the same; which are both very liable to promote, amongst the men, the habit of looking down, and are consequently very objectionable; however, as the continual application of the skip would divert the attention of the instructor, and thereby prevent his bestowing the proper care on the recruit, an orderly should regularly attend with this instrument, and, after opening it at thirty inches, the ordered length of step, follow the recruit during his advance, and while he is moving, verify each pace he takes, by applying the skip the instant it is per-

* The skip, *Fig.* 3, consists of two branches, one of about four feet, and the other only three, which are joined at C, so as to open and move in the same manner as a pair of compasses, both branches being rather pointed at the end. At D, on the branch A, is attached a cross bar of iron, of about an inch breadth, which being likewise moveable, is brought through an opening made purposely in branch B, and there, by means of a screw, fastened at the lines E, F, or G, which lines are so marked on the cross-bar, that when this E is under the screw, the distance H, I, between the extremities of the branches A, B, is exactly twelve inches, the length of the side-step; that when it is F, this distance H, I, becomes thirty inches, the ordinary pace; and, when it is G, thirty-three inches, the lengthened step taken by the outward wheeling man, while wheeling, and by every individual when the command is given to step out.

Fig. 4, exhibits a skip of the above description, opened at thirty inches, the ordinary pace.

formed

formed. Should the same prove incorrect, he is to apprize both the driller and the recruit of it, and express in what respect, as well as to what degree, the Regulation was deviated from.

A few repetitions of this may be advantageously followed by the recruit being made to march on two given objects, or *points de vue*, in a space of ground measured before, which, at first being only ten or twelve paces, will be gradually increased to fifty, or upwards. While the recruit is thus advancing, the driller, who is giving the time by the words *Right*, *Left*, is to place himself sometimes in his front, sometimes in his rear, to discover any mistake the recruit may be still labouring under. The orderly, in addition to his occasionally and frequently applying the skip, may here assist in counting the number of paces taken, and see if they correspond with those measured before.

The attentions requisite in the driller, while instructing his men in the march, are,

When in Front.

1st. That, on the command *March*, the advance is prepared by the body leaning somewhat forward, and that the first step is taken by the left foot, at the true length, without stamping *.

2d. To see the foot brought flat on the ground, toe a little before the heel, without noise (or, as the drill-serjeants generally call it, without telling).

3d. To observe, while the foot is brought forward, whether the shoe-sole is seen by a person standing in front.

4th. That during the march the body remains steady, the shoulders square to the front, and that no constraint appears in the position.

---

* The book of the Manual and Platoon; Attention of the Soldier.

5th

5th. To see the step made well out from the haunches, the body following the movement of the leg and thigh.

6th. That the arms, without stiffness, hang down without vibrating.

7th. To observe whether the eyes are the whole of the time kept to the front, as directed, and not cast down.

When placed behind.

8th. To observe if the shoulders are kept square to the front, the falling back or advance of a shoulder being more perceptible from the rear than from the front.

9th. That the direction of march is properly observed.

Cadence of the Ordinary Time.

The next object which comes into consideration is the cadence, or time of march, which, as already mentioned, is seventy-five steps in a minute for the ordinary time, and to this should the instruction be confined until the recruit is pretty accurate in it, without any attempt being made to drill him to the quick and quickest movement, which, if prematurely proceeded in, would only tend to embarrass and confuse him, and probably prevent his getting into the habit of any of the directed cadences, particularly the ordinary, which, in general, is not imprinted on the mind with the same facility as the quicker movements.

The giving of the words *Left, Right,* already so strongly recommended for the drill, if delivered in proper time, will seldom fail insensibly of habituating the men to the different ordered times of march. The following method, also, seems admirably calculated to promote this knowledge amongst the soldiers:—Let the instructor assemble a certain number of men in the form of a half circle, placing a drummer in the centre, who will be ordered to mark time in the ordinary

nary cadence at the word *March*, and taps of the drum are given in the exact time of the swing of a plummet. After repeating this for about half a minute, they will be directed to turn about, still continuing to mark the step, notwithstanding their change of front and the ceasing of the drum, which will be ordered to stop as soon as seven or eight strokes have been heard, after facing outwards, keeping the plummet still vibrating, in order to ascertain the degree of improvement which, by the foregoing practice, has taken place amongst the men, who, of course, remain in motion till the word halt is given. As the occasional assistance of the drum may be of much utility, a few strokes at a time may be allowed, to re-imprint the true cadence when required.

When this drill is resumed from the *Halt*, the men may at first, while guided by the drum, be permitted to face it, the taps being, as before, discontinued shortly after they have turned about, but this indulgence of facing inwards is not to be repeated any longer, when it is presumed that, by the frequent repetition of the above practice, the cadence is become more habitual; and ultimately they are to be totally deprived of the help of the drum, and accustomed, at the delivery of the word *March*, to mark the step in the regulated time, this being the degree of accuracy here indispensably required in every soldier, who is not to expect taps of the drum, nor any other assistance, to precede his advance; but instantly, at the word *March*, to be capable, at full length of pace and true time, to proceed to the front. The same practice may be afterwards employed for the quick and quickest step, those cadences being then only substituted for the ordinary; and should the proposed mode of training the recruits to the time meet with success, and be approved of, the companies of the battalion may likewise advantageously be thus exercised once or twice a month, to fix the attention

attention of the men to those different movements of March *.

---

* The method here suggested can by no means be considered as contravening the direction given in the Rules and Regulations, Part 3, S. 78, as this only refers to the music or drum being made use of to regulate the march, and in no degree applies to either the one or the other, being merely employed to render the men familiar with the different ordered cadences; an assistance which, far from being disallowed, is even recommended in S. 31 of the same book, where it is said, "Strong taps of the drum, if in just "time and regulated by the plummet, are also directed to be "given immediately before the word *March*, thereby to imprint "the acquired measure on the mind of the recruit; but they are "on no account, or in any situation, to be given during the "march;" which completely establishes the use of the drum, provided it be directed by a plummet, to acquire the habit of the time,—the sole object intended by the present exercises where no marching takes place.

However, to illustrate the above still further, and to display more fully the causes which have led to the prohibition of music or drums in regulating the march, it will not be improper to introduce here another motive for their discontinuance, exclusive of those exhibited in S. 78, and which consists in the sound not being so instantaneous in its progress as might generally be supposed,—a circumstance which will easily be observed by standing at some distance from a body of troops headed by a band of musicians or drummers, where the men wil lapparently march out of time, although on the spot they are eaally stepping with the music; and this being perceptible in the front of a battalion, nay, even a half one, such aid, as it is very properly remarked, must indubitably be but ill suited to regulate the march, and will be found not only to counteract the very end it was intended to promote, but also to create noise and confusion. It is probably to obviate this latter defect, that, by the Orders and Observations issued in 1804, it has been permitted to bands, when marching past in review order, to wheel out to the left after passing the Reviewing Officer, and face him till the regiment has passed.

It is almost needless to observe that the proximity of the men to the drummer in the proposed exercise renders any application of the above-mentioned defect in music to regulate the march altogether here out of the question; and that, even in the battalion,

S. 9. *Halt.*

R. R. Part I. *S.* 7. "On the word '*Halt*' let the "rear foot be brought upon a line with the advanced "one, so as to finish the step which was taking when "the command was given."

This is generally pretty well executed when the word is given so as to be heard the very instant the advanced foot is placing on the ground, the other being then only brought up to it; but is not always so properly performed when the command is delivered during the taking of the step, the men being in that case, in order to comply the sooner with the direction, very apt to hurry and shorten the step which is not finished. The driller should therefore carefully explain to the recruit, that, whenever the word *Halt* is heard while he is in the act of taking a pace, this pace is not to be effected by it, but, without hurry, to be finished at true length and in correct time, precisely in the same manner as if that direction had not been given, its compliance only commencing when the advanced foot is placed *on the ground* by the other being brought next to it; and, to render this still more habitual, he should frequently and intentionally give the command *Halt* while a pace is not completed, and even often deliver it, so that it may be heard the very instant the foot is raising in the air to commence a pace.

In the performance of the halt the instructor is to

---

were the regulating drummer posted on its flank, the strong taps directed to be given prior to the delivery of the word *March*, to imprint the time, would perfectly answer the proposed end; as, notwithstanding that the man placed on the opposite flank to the drummer would not hear the taps the very instant they are audible by those situated nearer to him, the interval left between would be perfectly alike for all, and therefore the object here intended would be perfectly attained.

 observe;—

observe;—1st. Whether the step which was taking when the command was given has been properly finished at true length and in correct time; and whether, as soon as the advanced foot is placed, the rear one is instantly brought in a line with it.

2d. That the instant the rear foot is brought up no movement is perceived, and the recruit, right or wrong, remains perfectly still, as any unnecessary motion immediately following the halt would inevitably give a very indifferent and unsteady appearance to its performance.

S. 10. *Oblique Step.*

The recruit is to be taught the *Oblique Step* in a manner pretty similar to the method already detailed for the instruction of the March to the front. He must, therefore, be first made acquainted with the nature of this latter March, and informed that the only material difference which exists between it and the former consists in the peculiar manner in which the feet are placed *in order* to obtain the oblique direction. The position and squareness of shoulders to the front being equally the same and equally important in both, he will be shewn by the person who drills the manner in which those oblique paces are performed, and then proceed to their execution. However, as the position of the shoulders is of considerable importance in this march, and the turning of the same so as to perform a half-face and front, the diagonal moved on is the prevailing fault among the men, when ordered to deviate from the perpendicular, the recruit should previously be particularly cautioned against this mistake, and recommended, while inclining towards a flank, to keep rather to the rear the shoulder on the other side he is moving, which circumstance, if properly attended to, will, by counteracting

counteracting the defective position above described, preserve the parallelism to the front, and greatly facilitate the execution of this movement. This will be followed by the recruit being directed *(R. R. Part I. S. 8.)* " at the words *Left Oblique, March,* without " altering his personal squareness of position, to step " with the left foot, point and carry it forward nine- " teen inches in the diagonal line to the left" (from L. 1. to L. 2, fig. 6), " which gives about thirteen " inches to the side and thirteen inches to the front*," and perform this without moving the other foot, which, in this instance, on account of the short distance the left has been placed from it, may, without any inconvenience, be kept on the spot it occupied before. The

---

* This distance to the front seems, however, more correctly ascertained at fourteen inches than at thirteen, as it will be easily perceived by observing that the triangle M. N. O. fig. 6. being a triangle rectangle, it is required, by the 47th proposition of the first book of Euclid, that the squares of M. N. and N. O. taken together, be equal to the square of M. O. the side which subtends the right angle; and this is much nearer attained by supposing N. O. fourteen inches than by only taking it to be thirteen, as the following will soon evince:

Square of M. N. $13 \times 13 = 169$
Square of N. O. supposed $13 \times 13 = 169$

338

Square of M. N. $13 \times 13 = 169$
Square of N. O. supposed $14 \times 14 = 196$

365

And where the total 365 is a number approaching nigher to $19 \times 19 = 361$, the square of M. O., than 338, the total, when N. O. is only supposed to be 13 inches.

That the distance of N. O. is better ascertained at 14 than 13 inches may likewise be proved by the triangle M. N. Z. formed by the second pace, the square of M. Z. which subtends the right angle $30 \times 30 = 900$, being a number not so distant from 898, the squares of the sides M. N. and N. Z. the part

recruit,

recruit being thus situated, the orderly will apply the skip, fig. 5,* and the driller examine the last taken pace, as well as the position, and observe whether the shoulder opposite the inclining (here the right one) is well kept back.

At the word *Right*, or *Two*, the recruit will " bring " his right foot," which, as already explained, has

---

N. O. of the latter being considered 14 inches, than 845, the total of those two squares, when the part N. O. is only taken to be 13 inches.

Square of M. N.		$13 \times 13 = 169$
Square of N. Z.	considering the part N. O. only 13 inches	$26 \times 26 = 676$
		845

Square of M. N.		$13 \times 13 = 169$
Square of N. Z.	considering the part N. O. 14 inches	$27 \times 27 = 729$
		898

* The skip, which is made use of for the oblique step, fig. 5, is of a construction very similar to that already described for the regular march, only it consists of three instead of two branches, which, when asunder, are at the following distance.

The branches B. C. from N. to O. 13, or better 14 inches; see the above note (*); which gives between the branches A. C., from N. to O., 19 inches, the length of the pace which is obliquely taken.

With a view to illustrate more clearly the manner in which this measure is to be applied, the letters M. N. O. at the extremities of the branches in fig. 5, have been added in fig. 6, to shew the place where each branch is to be brought on when the oblique is performing.

As the foot which is moving forward in this march is to perform its pace of 30 inches to Z. fig. 6, by being carried 13 inches in front of the one already posted at O., the exactness of this latter step may easily be ascertained with the present skip, by its branches A. B. fig. 5, being applied on O. Z. fig. 6.

not

not moved until that last word was heard, "thirty "inches" (from R. 1. to R. 2.) "forward, so that "the right heel be placed thirteen inches directly "before the left one;" the body being at the same time brought forward, so as to rest on the advanced leg, and the left heel raised up, without, however, the toe leaving the ground, fig. 7*. In this position he will again remain until any error in his pace or carriage is corrected; when, at the word *Left*, he is to take a second step obliquely to the left, and thus continue the march at the words *Left*, *Right*, or *Two*, a pause taking place between each step, the skip being regularly applied every time to point out the corrections, and particular care being paid throughout (the oblique being to the left) that the right shoulder is well kept back.

A few repetitions of the above may be followed by having the same practised to the right, when the oblique steps will be performed by the right leg, while those in front will be taken by the left one, the particular attention to keep the upper part of the body opposite to the inclining rather to the rear being now removed from the right to the left shoulder. However, as the first step is the oblique, as well as in the perpendicular march, is invariably taken with the left foot, it is to be observed, that, when the former march is directed from the halt to the right, the first pace is to be performed thirty inches to the front, as if the motion was intended forward, the inclining commencing only at the second pace, fig. 8.

When, by the foregoing, the recruit has obtained some steadiness and knowledge of the oblique, he

---

* Were the feet here kept both on the ground, as in the first position, it would occasion constraint; and, by throwing the body backwards, give false habits to the men. The attitude, fig. 7, has therefore been substituted for it, and, by not removing the fore part, sufficiently displays the ground on which the rear foot was placed.

will

will gradually proceed quicker from one position to the other, till, at last, he will perform this step without any pause in the cadence of the ordinary time, and be directed to move, while executing it on a ground previously measured off, at first, about ten paces, and latterly increased to forty or upwards; and, while on the march, accustomed, at the delivery of the words *To the right* or *left oblique*, to place the foot on the side the inclining is ordered every time it is advanced, in the manner described, and to continue to bring it firmly in the like position until the word *Forward* is given, when both feet are again thrown to the front, and direct march resumed.

It is hardly necessary to add that during the above every attention is required from the instructor; and that, as heretofore, he will be assisted by the orderly, who, besides applying the skip occasionally, will reckon the paces, to ascertain whether they agree with those known before.

R. R. Part 1. *S.* 8.—" From the combination of " these two movements" of the legs before described, the general obliquity gained " will amount to an angle " of about twenty-five degrees."

" Whether the obliquing commences from the halt " or on the march, the first diagonal step taken is by " the leading foot the side inclined to when it comes to " its turn after the command is pronounced." At the word *Forward* the obliquing ceases, and the march is continued to the front.

The attention in the instructor, besides those enumerated at the position of the soldier and march to the front, are—

1st. To see the feet placed as ordered, and steps performed at true length.

2d. That, whether the oblique is to the left or to the right, the first pace is always taken by the left foot.

3d. To see the parallel position to the front duly observed, the shoulder on the opposite side of the inclining

clining being rather kept back, in order to prevent the men from turning towards the diagonal they are proceeding on, which fault requires to be guarded against, as being the most likely to occur while obliquing.

In the manner described is the recruit to be trained singly in the principles of the foregoing sections, which form the basis of all military movements, and therefore should not be hurried over, but be carefully imparted; the time here bestowed, however long it may appear, being always amply regained in the future instruction, where a deficiency in these very first elements will not only cause considerable delay, but likewise debar the individual, as long as he is not perfect in them, from attaining any accuracy in his exercise.

R. R. Part 1. *S.* 8.—" Three or four recruits will " now be formed in one rank, at very open files."

S. 11. *Dressing when Halted.*

Four or five recruits being placed in one rank at open files, the driller will proceed to the instruction of the dressing, and direct that on the word *Dress*, *R. R. Part* 1. *S.* 9, " each individual will cast his " eyes to the point to which he is ordered to dress" (which is generally from the side the word is heard, and consequently that on which the officer stands who gives it), " with the smallest turn possible of the head, " but preserving the shoulders and body square to " the front."

2d. The whole person of the man must move as

 " may

" may be necessary, and bending backward or for-
" ward is not to be permitted."

3d. " He must take short quick steps, thereby " gradually and exactly to gain his position, and on " no account be suffered to attempt it by any sudden " or violent alteration, which must infallibly derange " whatever is beyond him," and very likely cause his overstepping the line of dress, a fault which requires to be particularly avoided, as being either productive of a progressive error, or, if corrected, *occasions* a great loss of time, as an individual who has thus overshot the line will generally be obliged to fall back to the rear of the alignement, to place himself in his true position.

4th. " The faces of the men, and not their breasts or " feet, are the line of dressing. Each man is to be " able just to distinguish the lower part of the face of " the second man beyond him."

5th. " That the faults to be avoided, and generally " committed, by the soldiers in dressing, are passing " the line; the head too forward and body kept " back; the shoulders not square; the head turned " too much."

The above principles being properly understood, the instructor will order the right-hand man to take three steps to the front, and, after placing him *exactly* in the intended line, ascertain a distant object, B. fig. 9, and on his right post in the line A. B. as points of appui for the future dressing, an orderly at C.; the whole of which being accomplished he will follow it by successively ordering the others to come up, beginning with the second from the right, who therefore, at the delivery of the words *Right, Forward, Dress,* is immediately to take two paces to the front, and then to advance into the line by short, quick steps until he sees the lower part of the face of the second man beyond him (here the orderly C.); and, with the assistance of the driller, thus gain his position, in which he is fixed by the word *Steady,* given

given by the said driller, both as a direction to this second to remain in his present position, and as the signal for the third to advance into the line, which is executed by this latter in the manner explained for the second; and he being likewise halted by the direction *Steady*, the fourth moves at the last word, and so on till the whole have entered the line, when, at the command *Eyes front*, eyes are cast to the front, and every individual remains perfectly still; this command, by which the dressing is invariably concluded, implying, besides the order which the meaning of the words convey, that, the required alignement being obtained, no further movement is necessary; therefore all motions perceived after its delivery are perfectly inconsistent with the true principles of the exercise.

A few repetitions of the above are to be succeeded by the same being executed with greater promptitude; and as soon as the right-hand man A., the orderly C., are placed, as well as distant object B., ascertained by the whole, at the command *To the Right, Forward, Dress*, although successively, quickly, and almost at once moving up and entering the line by short, quick steps, and in conformity with the direction laid down, as well as the aid of the instructor, placing themselves in their position; when the dress is completed, on the words *Eyes front*, every man, as before, looks straight forward and remains perfectly immoveable, ready to comply with any new direction.

The men being thus accustomed to dress by the right, they will be likewise practised to perform the same from the left. The left-hand man, instead of the right, being therefore advanced in the new line at A., fig. 10, a person thrown out or distant object, B. taken, and likewise the orderly posted at C., as a point of appui, the other, commencing by the left, will be ordered to the front, first one by one, when called for, and lastly on the command *Left, Forward, Dress*,

Dress, in the quick succession in which it is executed when performed in the battalion; the lining, whether it take place singly or by the whole, being, as heretofore, invariably concluded by the delivery of the words *Eyes front*.

In the mode already detailed for dressing forward will the recruit likewise be trained to execute the same backwards,—a movement which is nearly similar to the former, and only differs from it by the line of dress being here brought to the rear, which, however, greatly increases the difficuly, the entering of an alignement by the back step being a movement but little to be depended on. This mode of dressing might, however, be much facilitated by permitting the man, when stepping back, to pass over the line of dress, and, when in its rear, to re-enter and take post in it, as if the movement was taking place to the front.

This dressing, which is executed by the right as well as by the left, is performed on the words *By the Right backward Dress*, or *By the Left backward Dress.*

The attentions in the instructor while dressing are—

1st. Never to attempt to dress a rank or a body without a line being determined, or at least supposed, on which it is to be formed, and therefore without either the outward flank man offering an object, or a point beyond him being provided to point out such a line.

2d. Always to dress gradually and progressively from the point of appui towards the distant flank, each man successively, though quickly, being brought up into the true line, so as to become, the instant he is posted, a new point, whence the future correction is to proceed from.

3d. To remember that the faces of the men only, and not their breasts nor feet, form the line of dress.

4th. To be careful, while dressing, to be himself always with his person, or at least his eyes, in the true line.

5th. That, in entering an alignement, the men gain their position by taking short, quick steps, and never go beyond, but rather keep to the rear of, the line of dress, till they are properly posted.

6th. To prevent their moving abruptly into the line, which will generally cause their passing it, and consequently occasion unnecessary delay.

7th. To see, while dressing, that the men neither advance their heads nor keep back their bodies, but preserve their shoulders square to the front; and that the opposite side to which they are looking be not drawn to the rear, and still less advanced.

8. To notice whether the men glance their eyes towards the dressing point, and without turning the head too much,—an error they are very likely to commit, and which, unless prevented, will not only derange their position, but, by carrying their outward shoulder to the front, occasion their presenting a false point to those who are to dress on them, and thereby cause the whole of the line which is still to come up to be thrown to the front*.

The several movements known before, which are

* The whole of the instructions relative to the dressing being comprehended under the head of the present section, it will not be improper to remark here that the attentions directed for the driller are likewise those to be observed on all occasions by a person dressing a rank or body, whatever may be its extent, additional care being however taken when the files are closed, that in applying the corrections, he is always, by a rapid glance of the eye along the line, to discover the men through whose neglect the mistakes have occurred, which unless very carefully looked into, will readily escape notice, errors in dress being seldom conspicuous in that part of the line where they originate, the palce where the alignement is visibly deviated from being generally removed a few files from where the mistake actually commenced, and consequently from the person by whose false position it was produced.

now

now repeated together by being thus practised, must undoubtedly have the effect of gradually accustoming the recruit to act in body. However, the preserving of the line should not at first be much insisted upon; but if any man thus drilled should prove defective in his position, or in the mode of executing any of the motions he has been previously instructed in, and a few words be insufficient to recall to his memory the principle he has deviated from, he must be sent back in order to be drilled singly in the part of his exercise he appears defective in, and, until he has acquired a better knowledge of it, he must not, on any account, be suffered to act with others, whose progress would be greatly retarded by the frequent repetition of the same movement, which his presence would render indispensable; exclusive of which he would himself, probably, from the driller having his attention divided, and being thus prevented from constantly watching his motions, contract false habits, which, without considerable trouble, he could not afterwards get rid of. This rule, of never permitting soldiers indifferently trained to remain attached to a rank or drill squad, is likewise strictly to be attended to in the future instruction, where, as it will naturally occur, a repetition of what was taught before is daily and in every lesson to be intermixed with the motion lately imparted.

S. 12. *Step Out.*

R. R. Part 10. *S.* 1. At the command *Step out,* "the recruit must be taught to lengthen his step "thirty-three inches, by leaning forward a little, but "without altering the cadence."

This pace, which is made use of whenever a short distance is to be gained to the front without altering the cadence, and therefore, amongst other instances,

employed by a battalion to move up when to the rear of a general line, will be rendered familiar to the men by their being, when once made acquainted with this step, while on the march, occasionally and at times unknown, directed, at the command *Step out*, to lengthen their pace, and thus to move for about forty or fifty yards and until the common step is ordered to be resumed by the word *Ordinary*. The orderly, as in the foregoing, opening his skip at thirty-three inches, is to ascertain during the above whether the advance was kept up by the feet being brought at the proper distance. Should, however, a still greater degree of accuracy be deemed necessary, this increased step may be practised on a space known before to contain the exact number of lengthened paces intended to be performed; attention being only had, in that case, to pronounce the words *Step out* and *Ordinary* so as to be heard the very instant the men enter and leave the ground thus measured.

A direction, obedience to which should be particularly recommended to the recruits in this as well as in every instance where the ordinary pace is broken from or retaken from any of the other steps, is, invariably, at the command which implies these alterations in the march, to turn their eyes to the dressing point, and keep them fixed to it, the four or five first steps taken according to the new directions, or until the advance is performed with the degree of steadiness which will admit their being cast to the front, the true position of the soldier. Another attention, which seems likewise well calculated to promote both steadiness and uniformity in the performance of all directions which have in view any alteration in the pace, is to apprize the men, that, except the words *Step out*, *Step short*, *Mark Time*, *Change Feet*, or *Ordinary*, are heard precisely and at the very instant the foot is brought to the ground, but delivered during the taking of a pace, that pace is not to be affected by it, but completed at the length and mode in which they were moving before,

before, and only the following step is to be performed in the manner prescribed, the eyes are, however, immediately glanced to the dressing point the instant the word is heard by which the change was ordered. A due attention to the above directions will, it is presumed, in a great measure obviate the unsteady manner in which those changes in the pace are commonly executed, as well as the wavering and floating which they generally occasion in the line.

The attentions in the instructors are—

1st. To see that, at the command *Step out*, the eyes are instantly brought to the dressing point.

2d. That, in case the word is not given the instant the advanced foot is placing to the ground, the step which is taking is finished according to the mode in which they were moving before, and only the next lengthened to thirty-three inches.

3d. That, while advancing by this pace, the full length of thirty-three inches is carefully observed, and executed without any alteration in the cadence they were before proceeding in.

4th. To observe whether the directions recommended in the march, as to the position, motion of the legs, toe to be pointed to the ground, &c., are duly attended to.

5th. That, while stepping out, the body is somewhat advanced, which position here becomes necessary on account of the foot being thrown at a greater distance to the front.

6th. To see that, at the word *Ordinary* (if not already so), the eyes are immediately fixed to the dressing point, and the ordinary pace resumed. If, however, the command was pronounced while the feet were elevated and advancing, the pace then performing must be completed at the same distance as the preceding ones, viz., thirty-three inches, and the following step must be taken at the ordinary length.

S. 13. *Mark Time.*

THE obviating of the very contrary fault to this alleged for stepping out, and where a battalion or body too much advanced is to wait the coming up of others in their rear, is the reason to be adduced for the use of the *Marking Time*, which movement is performed as follows:—

R. R. Part I. *S.* 11.—" On the words *Mark Time*, " the foot then advancing completes its pace," just as if that command had not been given; " after " which the cadence is continued, without gaining " any ground, but alternately throwing out the foot," and bringing it back on the identical spot it was moved from, " square with the other. At the word " *Ordinary*, or *Ordinary Step*, the usual pace of " thirty inches will be taken."

The recruits must be made to understand that they are to mark time with the same exactitude and degree of correctness with which they march to the front, the soldiers, without this precaution, being very apt to perform this movement rather in a careless manner, considering it of little moment how they move their legs, provided they keep the cadence, and remain on the exact spot they occupied when the direction was heard, which, although both materials and even the principal objects in marking time, are, however, not to be adduced as an argument for neglecting the minor rules, a strict attention to which can alone prevent the motion from being performed in a slovenly manner.

Marking time is to be practised from the halt as well as from the march, on the command *Mark Time*. At the word *Ordinary* the advance commences again by each man stepping thirty inches to the front.

The instructor's attentions are, in this movement,—

1st. To see that, at the giving of the word *Mark Time*, the eyes are (if not already so) immediately cast towards the dressing point.

2d. To be careful, should the above direction take place while on the march, that the pace which was begun when it was pronounced is finished without hurry, in the exact time and length the men were moving in before.

3d. To observe that, while marking the time, the position to the front is duly preserved; that the legs are smartly raised up and thrown forward, as if an ordinary pace was intended; the toe pointed; the body erect, and rather inclining to the front, so as to prevent their leaning back, which is the fault commonly committed by the men when they mark the pace.

4th. That the leg which is raised be briskly replaced to the ground, without hurry, and in the exact cadence of march in which the body was previously proceeding.

5th. At the word *Ordinary*, to observe whether the eyes are fixed to the dressing point; and, should the command be heard while a foot is in the air, to ascertain whether this foot is brought back as if the direction to move forward had not been delivered, and the next pace is taken thirty inches to the front.

S. 14. *Stepping Short.*

For a purpose similar to that adduced for marking time, and where, without altering the cadence, a momentary delay in the progress to the front is required from a battalion in line, or division in column, is this step peformed, "on the command *(R. R. Part* I. S. 12.) "*Step Short,*" when, according to the Rules and Regulations, "the foot advancing will "finish its pace, and afterwards each recruit will step "as far as the ball of his toe, and no further, until "the word *Ordinary Step* be given, when the usual "pace of thirty inches is to be taken."

The

The recruit must be taught and accustomed to execute this step without altering the time they were marching in before, the command being delivered unexpectedly, while they were moving to the front.

The attentions in the instructor are, while stepping short,—

1st. That, at the word *Step short*, eyes are turned to the dressing point, and so kept during the four or five first shortened paces, or until the degree of steadiness in their performance will admit the men again to look to the front.

2d. To see the step which was taking when the command was heard completed at thirty inches, and the following one diminished as above directed.

3d. To observe, while stepping short, whether the legs are smartly brought to the front, toe pointed, and foot placed in the manner and distance explained in the foregoing.

4th. To be particularly careful, during the performance of this pace, that the time of march in which the body was before proceeding be duly preserved.

5th. That, on the word *Ordinary*, eyes (if not already so) are instantly turned to the dressing point, the step which was commenced at the delivery of the command taken as before, and the next performed at the usual length of thirty inches.

S. 15. *Changing the Feet.*

R. R. Part I. *S.* 13.—" To change the feet in
" marching, the advanced foot completes its pace; the
" ball of the other is brought up quickly to the heel
" of the advanced one, which instantly makes another
" step forward, so that the cadence may not be lost.
" This may be required of an individual, who is
" stepping with a different foot from the rest of his
" division;

" division; in doing which he will, in fact, take two " successive steps with the same foot."

However, as by an untimely command, or by the correction of a false step taken up by the divisions more a-head of a column, &c., it may become necessary to have it performed in body, the whole at once, it ought likewise to be thus practised and executed in perfect cadence and dress, without affecting in the least the progress to the front at the command *Change Feet* given, at times unknown, during the advance*.

The instructor is here to observe—

1st. That the individual, or every individual (if it is to be performed by the whole at once), casts his eyes to the dressing point at the hearing of the direction to change the feet.

2d. That the foot which is risen while the command is pronounced be brought to the ground without hurry, and in the true time and length the body is moving in.

3d. That the cadence is not altered by changing the feet; that the march is continued; and that the pace which follows it is performed at proper length and in correct time.

---

* Should the recruits experience any difficulty in the change of the feet, their instruction will be greatly facilitated by placing them in the first balancing position (page 19); and, when so posted, directing them at the word *Two*, and the instant the advanced foot is brought forward and dropped on the ground, without any further command to bring the rear one behind it, and, as soon as this is performed, at once to raise again the foot which is in front, so as to place it in the very position it was removed from by the word *Two*; and thus, at the same command *Two*, take twenty or thirty steps to the front by advancing always the same leg, and perform this with the right as well as with the left one, which, by keeping the men a short time in the balancing attitude, will soon give them a correct notion of this change of the feet, as well as speedily enable them to execute it on any, what occasion soever it may be requisite, without deviating from the cadence in which they are marching.

S. 16. *The Side or Closing Step.*

R. R. Part I. *S.* 14.—" The side or closing step is
" performed from the halt, in ordinary time *, by the
" following commands :—

" *Close to the Right—March*
" *Close to the Left—March.*"

---

* This step, notwithstanding the above direction of the Rules and Regulations, is performed by some regiments in the quick movement; and as the time gained by it even for thirty paces (the utmost number of those closing steps to be taken at one time) does not amount to eight seconds, and therefore can hardly be produced as an argument in behalf of this practice, and no other reason can however be possibly alleged in its support; it will not be improper to introduce here, so as to display and render obvious how little those innovations are generally calculated to answer their intended purpose of improvement, the reasons which may be advanced in favour of the cadence those steps are ordered to be taken in; which are—

1st. In all movements, where the degree of celerity acquired by the quick time is unimportant and of no advantage, the ordinary should be preferred, because it more clearly exhibits the motions of the men, and enables the instructor to prevent their neglecting themselves or contracting false habits, mistakes being more easily detected in the slow performance of the movements than in their quicker execution.

2d. That all movements, whose object is only correction, being generally looked upon by the soldiers as less important than those forming part of the manœuvre intended to go through, and therefore seldom executed with the same care; unless some greater advantage is obtained by a greater celerity, they should, in order to ensure the requisite regularity in their performance, always be practised in the ordinary cadence; and to those two general principles may be added one particularly applicable to the closing step, which is—

3d. That, its use being generally confined to the correction of false intervals, the ordinary time is far better calculated to counteract the tendency to hurry which must naturally prevail in a movement, the immediate object of which is the correction of an error.

Though it may appear but of little moment whether the

" In

"In closing to the right, on the word *March*, eyes "are turned to the right, and each man carries his "right foot about twelve inches directly to its right "(or, if the files are closed, to his neighbour's left "foot), and instantly brings up his left foot, till the "heel touches his right heel; he then pauses, so as "to perform this movement in ordinary time, and "proceeds to take the next step in the same manner; "the whole with perfect precision of time, shoulders "kept square, knees not bent, and in the true line on "which the body is formed. At the word *Halt*, the "whole halt, turn their eyes to the front, and are per-"fectly steady."

The use of this step is thus defined in the Rules and Regulations:—

R. R. Part II. *S.* 43.—"The side or closing step "must also be frequently practised; it is very neces-"sary and useful on many occasions, when halted, "and when a very small distance is to be moved to "either flank; as, for instance, to open or close files; "to join one division to, or open it from, another; to "regain an interval in line," and consequently to correct improper chasms between the divisions after wheeling into an alignement; "to move a whole bat-"talion or parade twenty or thirty paces to a flank; "to regulate distances between close columns before "deploying. Alterations made in this manner are

---

closing steps are performed in the slow or in the quick movement (and it is certainly not of so much importance as many other deviations that are practised), the above observations will not altogether, even on the present occasion, be deemed useless, when it is considered that the latitude of altering the side step from the ordinary to the quick time must naturally imply and authorize the introduction of further innovations, which, founded on principles as erroneous as those assigned for the change of the cadence in the closing step, will, however, prove considerably more injurious by their results, and their tendency to destroy the principles on which the whole system of the infantry movements have been so wisely established.

"imper-

" imperceptible from the front, and better made than " by facing and file marching. The words of com- " mand must be decided and strong."

In the instruction of the closing step the orderly attending with the skip will, as before, ascertain the correctness of the paces, as to the length; and the men must be particularly guarded against advancing the outward shoulder, which, without great care, they will be very apt to do while closing to a flank, and thereby both derange their dress, and cause their moving to the rear of the prolongation of the line which they ought to have pursued, as will be easily perceived by taking a view at *Figs.* 11 and 12.

The instructor's attentions in the side or closing step are—

1st. That the directed length of twelve inches is observed in its performance; and that, as soon as the foot by which the steps are taken is brought to the ground, the other is instantly placed next to it.

2d. To see the pause ordered after each step observed, so as to establish the proper time amongst them, namely, seventy-five in a minute.

3d. That, in moving to either flank, the line pursued is in the exact continuation of the alignement the body is formed on; and, to effect this,—

5th. That the shoulders are kept square to the front. The fault the soldiers are here generally liable to is to advance that one the other side to this they are closing, as well as looking to.

6th. To observe that, at the word *Halt*, the eyes are turned to the front, and that every individual remains perfectly steady.

S. 17. *Back Step.*

Part I. *S.* 15.—" The back step is performed in " the ordinary time and length of pace from the halt.

" On

"On the command *Step Back, March,* the recruit must
"be taught to move straight to the rear, preserving his
"shoulders square to the front, and his body erect.
"On the word *Halt,* the foot in front must be brought
"back square with the other."

The men, while moving to the rear by the above steps, being rather inclined to shorten their pace, the driller is here to pay particular attention, with the assistance of the skip, that the feet are properly thrown back at their true distance of thirty inches. However, as this march is only applicable to a body which is to remove a short distance to its present rear, consequently but few of those back steps can be required at the time. Were it intended, in the latter part of the recruit's instruction, to have it performed on a ground paced before, the number thus measured should never exceed twenty.

During the performance of the back step eyes are constantly kept to the dressing point.

To the want of attention in rendering the recruits perfect in the several steps treated of in Sections 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, and 17, may be ascribed the very unsteady and careless manner in which they are so generally executed. This neglect at the drill must, however, prove exceedingly dangerous; and, exclusive of its immediate result, which is to spread confusion throughout the ranks the instant the common pace is deviated from, must, by admitting irregularities in the exercise in one instance, inevitably influence the degree of order in the whole, particularly as the soldiers are but little inclined to bestow the proper attention unless they are impelled to it by the utmost regularity being insisted on in the movements*.

---

* The execution of this step will be somewhat facilitated, and the true length acquired, by the legs, in lifting up, being thrown a little to the front, and at once brought to the rear at their proper distance, the body moving back while the pace is taking, so as to rest continually on the foot which is placed.

[library stamp]

S. 18. *The Quick Step.*

R. R. Part I. *S.* 16.—" The cadence of the ordi-
" nary pace having become perfectly habitual to the
" recruits, they are now to be taught to march a quick
" time, which is 108 steps in a minute, each of thirty
" inches, making 270 feet in a minute. The com-
" mand *Quick, March*, being given with a pause be-
" tween them *; the word *Quick* is to be considered as
" a caution, and the whole to remain perfectly still and
" steady ; on the word *March*, they step off with the
" left feet, keeping the body in the same posture, and
" the shoulders square to the front ; the foot to be lifted
" off the ground, that it may clear any stones or other
" impediments in the way ; and to be thrown forward,
" and placed firm ; the whole of the sole to touch the
" ground, and not the heel alone ; the knees are not
" to be bent, neither are they to be stiffened, so as to
" occasion fatigue or constraint. The arms to hang
" with ease down the outside of the thigh ; a very
" small motion to prevent constraint may be permitted,
" but not to swing out, and thereby occasion the least
" turn or movement of the shoulder ; the head is to be
" kept to the front, the body well up, and the utmost
" steadiness to be preserved."

The person who drills, after illustrating by a few steps the above directions, will order the recruits to move in this cadence, and observe, by the orderly applying the skip, whether or not this difference in the time has any improper influence on the length of the pace ; which being ascertained, he will imme-

* The interval left between the words *Quick* and *March* should be so kept as to cause them to be pronounced in the exact cadence implied by this command, which will thereby imprint on the mind of the men by its very delivery the time it is intended they should proceed in.

diately have this march repeated on a portion of ground previously prepared of about twenty or thirty paces at first, but afterwards increased to eighty or upwards; and, while they are thus advancing, he will conduct himself in the manner he did before for the instruction of the ordinary time; and, by placing himself sometimes in front and sometimes in the rear, endeavour to detect any trifling mistakes the men may be still liable to, as well as by occasionally pronouncing the word *Right, Left,* imprint this new time on their ear.

When, by the above mode of instruction, some firmness has been obtained in this quick movement, the recruits must likewise be practised in stepping out, marking time, stepping short, and changing feet, in this cadence, and accustomed at the hearing of any of those commands, without altering the time of march, to perform the named pace at the rate of a 108 in a minute, the attentions in the instructor, as well as in the instructed, being, in those cases, the same as when they are performed in the ordinary time, some regard being had, however, in the nature of the step made use of in each cadence, which chiefly consists in the knee not being altogether kept so straight, and the feet not being thrown so much to the front, on the present occasion. A considerable alteration is still derived therefrom in the mode of marking the time, which, in the quick movement, consists in successively lifting up each foot (by bending the knee) perpendicularly over the ground it stood upon, and replacing it in the same position. The other circumstances attending those alterations in the pace, viz., fixing the eyes to the dressing point at the delivery of the command by which it was directed, and finishing the step commenced when the word was heard in the mode they were moving in before, &c., are perfectly similar in both cadences.

R. R. Part I. *S.* 16.—" This quick pace is to be " used" in all filings of divisions from " line into

" column,

" column, or from column into line; and by bat-
" talion columns of manœuvre, when independently
" changing position. It may occasionally be used in
" the column of march of small bodies when the route
" is smooth and no obstacles occur; but in the march
" in line of a considerable body it is not to be required,
" and very seldom in a column of manœuvre; other-
" wise fatigue must arise to the soldier, and more time
" will be lost by hurry and inaccuracy than is attempted
" to be gained by quickness."

" The word *March* given singly at all times denotes
" that the ordinary time is to be taken; when the
" *Quick March* is meant, that word will precede the
" other," and is only in that case considered as the caution, at which every body remains perfectly steady, awaiting for the second word *March* to move with the left foot, and proceed to the front.

The attentions in the instructor are, in the quick movement—

1st. To see that every individual remains steady at the first word (*Quick*) of the command, which is only to be considered as a caution.

2d. That at the last word (*March*) the whole step off together with the left foot, advancing the body a little to assist the movement.

3d. To observe whether the squareness of the shoulders to the front, as well as the whole of the position, is preserved.

4th. That the movement of the legs and thighs springs well from the haunches, and that the body follows their motion.

5th. To observe, while taking the step, that the feet are well lifted up, and the shoe-sole not seen in front in advancing the feet.

6th. To notice whether the foot which is brought down is firmly placed without noise; and so that the whole of the sole touches the ground, and not the heel only.

7th. To ascertain if, during the advance, the cadence as well as the proper length of step is kept throughout.

8th. That the knees are neither bent nor stiffened, and that the arms do not swing out so as to derange the position of the soldiers, a small motion being only permitted, to prevent constraint.

9th. To see that heads are kept up, and eyes not cast down, but thrown either to the dressing-point or front.

When in the Rear—

10th. That the shoulders are properly placed, and that the intended direction of march is truly pursued.

When a Change takes place in the Face—

11th. To observe, at the commands *Step out*, *Step short*, *Mark Time*, *Change Feet*, or while stepping out, &c., whether on the command *Ordinary Length* *, the eyes are immediately turned to the dressing point, and whether the step which was commenced has been completed in the manner the men were previously moving in, and the following one taken according to the alteration intended.

12th. To be careful that with the exception of the time, which is here 108 steps in a minute, and the difference required for the accelerated movement, (which is, that the knees are not kept so straight nor the feet lifted up so high as in the ordinary cadence,) the attention recommended in Sections 12, 14, and 15,

---

* The word *Ordinary* denoting at all times the ordinary cadence as well as the ordinary length, in order to avoid any mistakes the command *Ordinary Length* should always be given, when it is intended, while moving in the quick time, to retake the common pace of thirty inches.

are

are duly attended to in stepping out, stepping short, and changing the pace.

13th. To observe, while marking time in the quick movement, whether, by bending and straightening the knee, the feet are alternately risen perpendicularly, the toe pointed over the spot where they stood, and again brought down to the same place; and whether this is effected at the rate of 108 steps in a minute.

S. 19. *The Quickest Step.*

THE quickest or wheeling time, which is 120 paces in a minute, being performed by the same kind of step as the quick march, it may be practised in like manner; however, as its use is rather confined to the purpose of wheeling, doubling divisions when passing an obstacle in line, moving them up again when it is cleared, and either increasing or diminishing the front of division in column, there appears to be no great necessity in training the men to step short, or mark time in the quickest cadence.

The attentions in the instructor are exactly the same as those enumerated for the quick movement, with the exception, that, in the quickest time, 120 paces instead of 108, are to be taken in a minute.

S. 20. *Different Times of March.*

The three different times of march directed by the Rules and Regulations are the Ordinary, the Quick, and the Quickest March *, which must suffice for every purpose required, and therefore to them, and no more, must the recruits be trained. The plummets, which vibrate the required times of march in a minute, will prove of great utility in preventing or correcting uncertainty of movement, and must be in possession of, and constantly referred to, by each instructor of a squad, who in giving the words *Right, Left,* should generally be guided by one.

* The following Table, by displaying the number of steps and ground gone over in a minute, as well as the time required to perform a mile, and the distance marched in an hour, by each cadence, may perhaps be deemed of some utility.

Different time of March.	Number of Steps taken in a Minute.	Ground gone over in a Minute.			Time required to perform a Mile.			Distance marched in an hour.		
		Yards.	Feet.	Inches.	Minutes.	Seconds.	Thirds.	Miles.	Yards.	Paces.
The Ordinary	75	62	1	6	28	9	36	2	230	0
The Quick March ..	108	90	0	0	19	33	20	3	120	0
The Quickest March	120	100	0	0	17	36	0	3	720	0

The number of yards in a mile are 1,760; and the number of paces of thirty inches, required to move over the same distance, 2,112.

Part I. *S*. 17.—" The several lengths of plummets, " swinging the times of the different marches in a mi- " nute, are as follows :"—

	Steps in a Min.	In.	Hund.
" Ordinary time.............	75	24	96
" Quick time...............	108	12	03
" Quickest, or Wheeling Time	120	9	[illegible]

" A musket-ball, suspended by a string which is " not subject to stretch, and on which are marked the " different required lengths, will answer the above pur- " pose, may be easily acquired, and should be fre- " quently compared with an accurate standard in " the adjutant's or serjeant-major's possession. The " length of the plummet is to be measured from the " point of suspension to the centre of the ball *."

S. 21. *File Marching.*

" Six or eight recruits will now be formed in rank, " at close files, having a steady well-drilled soldier on " their flank, to lead."

The difficulty which is generally encountered in the execution of this march being chiefly owing to the non-observance of the Rules laid down, or the neglectful manner in which they are attended to, the driller will precede its instruction by the following directions, and, in recommending them to the particular attention of the recruits, strongly impress on their minds that their observance is not only abso-

---

* Should the method recommended in Sect. 9, page 24, be deemed useful for accustoming the men to the cadence, the quick and quickest movements may, as soon as instructed at the drill, be likewise introduced during this practice, and, with the ordinary, relieve each other, so as to prevent the one from having an improper influence on the other, and thus rendering them all familiar.

lutely

lutely indispensable in the performance of the file-marching, but that it will also considerably tend to facilitate this movement, and render it as easy of execution as any of those previously instructed in. They are,—

1st. *That at the word* March, *the whole step off together, gaining at the very first step thirty inches, and continue so without any increase of distance taking place between the files.* Were the front files to step short or to mark time, as is sometimes very improperly ordered, the rear files, by advancing the full pace, would unavoidably crowd on those immediately before them, and, in order to correct this mistake, as well as to regain their distance, they would naturally take their next steps rather shorter, and that, probably, at the very instant when those a-head are beginning to step out, which must unavoidably occasion a loss of distance between the files, as well as be the means of diffusing throughout, at the very commencement of the march, an indecision as to the length of pace intended to proceed in. The direction to the head files to step short or to mark time (above alluded to), however ill-timed it may be in the commencement of this march, when the men, by having only faced, must certainly be at their true distance of about twenty-two inches, is not better calculated to promote regularity in this movement when given while on the march*, or just before the halt, as a preparative to

* There seems to be only one instance where the stepping short or even marking time of the front files appears necessary, which is where a body marching by its flank meets in its progress a broken or marshy part of the ground, or any obstacle which may prevent the rear files from keeping up. However, in those cases, so as to obviate as much as possible the irregular execution of this movement, it would be preferable to allow the head files to move on until at a distance equal to the extent of the body from the obstacle, or bad ground, and there to halt until the whole are properly arranged, when they will, at the words *March*, or *Quick March*, proceed again at the full length

front,

front, when, in the latter case, in addition to the evils already enumerated as resulting from this injudicious instruction, it will, by giving the men the certainty of being always in time to repair their loss of distance, and to lock up before they are ordered to *Halt, Front*, naturally cause them to be careless about keeping up to their front men, and consequently promote the identical fault which is most to be guarded against while marching in files.

2d. *That every man is to lock up, and bring his advanced foot, in placing it down, eight inches beyond the spot from which the man in his front has lifted up his* *; this being necessary on account of the pace, which is thirty inches, and the distance between the files only 22. If, therefore, the man in the rear were to step to the very ground left by the one immediately before him, an extension would inevitably occur amongst the files, and, beginning at the very first pace between the leading and second one, the error would, successively and at each step, spread from the head downwards throughout the whole, until all the files would have opened at a distance of thirty inches, and consequently the body would be lengthened out as many times eight inches as there are files composing it, the front file excepted.

---

of pace; but should existing circumstances not permit the delay the above must necessarily occasion, it would, when thus situated, the better, instead of ordering the head files to step short or mark time, to allow them to continue the advance in the proper cadence and length of step, and by stepping out, hurrying the pace, and even running if required, make the rear files regain their lost distance.

* This step, where the man in the rear, while advancing, brings his foot beyond the spot from whence the man in his immediate front has taken up his, is called the *Lock Step*, and probably on account of the principle use of the movement intended to be performed by it, denominated by General Saldern the Deploy Step. It was first introduced into the British army by Lord Heathfield, the gallant defender of Gibraltar, who, while he commanded that fortress, had it practised by the garrison.

3d. *To cover exactly, and therefore to look along the neck of the man immediately before him, so as to be prevented by him from seeing those placed in his front*, which, by placing the men exactly behind each other, will obviate altogether the great apprehension they entertain, while moving by files, of treading on the heels of those posted before them, or of being trod and kicked by those in their rear, which becomes impossible as long as they attend to the present direction, and follow the exact track laid out by their front leader, both the right as well as the left foot of the whole being always advanced at the same time, and therefore, if in a precise line behind each other, constantly kept at the same distance of twenty-two inches, and neither liable to approach, nor still less to come in contact. Were the men allowed to look down, increase of distance, as well as improper interference amongst the files, must take place, and the soldiers would thus expose themselves, through the fault of principle, to the very thing they were attempting to avoid; and this would again be the case whenever they cast their eyes to the right or to the left, as both extension and wavering in the line must become the unavoidable consequence of those latter deviations from the present rule.

4th. Not to lean back nor bend the knee, which, by shortening the pace, will increase the distances, and be apt to throw the body proceeding in files into confusion, —a circumstance which is also likely to occur whenever any of the directions relative to the march to the front is not properly attended to.

The driller will follow these instructions by facing the recruits either to the right or left; and after observing whether the same has been properly executed, as well as (by placing himself opposite the head file) whether the files cover, and the leading man has taken his object to march on, he will direct the advance, ordering this however to be performed, at first, step by step, and therefore, at the command *March*, only

to

to bring the left foot thirty inches to the front, without lifting up the fore part of the right, the body leaning forward and resting on the advanced leg in the position nearly described for the advanced pace of the oblique march, *fig.* 7, and thus remain, till, at the word *Right*, this foot is advanced in the same manner as the left has been, the same attitude being again preserved until the word *Left* is heard, when the left foot moves forward, and so on, each leg being alternately thrown to the front at the command *Left*, *Right*, given by the driller, and so delivered as to leave a sufficient pause between them, to enable him to inspect individually the performance of the last pace before he pronounces the word which directs the next one to be taken.

When, by the above mode *, some firmness has

* Fifty paces performed as explained at the words *Right*, *Left*, being fully sufficient to answer the intention, which is here to give the recruits a true notion of the file movement, and prevent their contracting false habits in it, this number of steps might immediately be followed by this march being practised in the ordinary and quick time; but if, while they are thus moving, any irregularity to be observed, they should instantly be halted, and, in order to enable the instructor to detect the defaulters as well as to apply the remedy which the existing faults require, be directed to execute a few steps in the first mentioned slow method, and this should be repeated whenever at the drill or the exercise of the company any deviation from any of the principles takes place in the file movements. These several slow methods recommended to precede the instructions of the movements, and where they are performed step by step at the words *Right*, *Left*, with a pause after each, will, by narrowly watching the performance of a few paces, prove wonderfully adapted to render habitual to the men both the rules as well as the proper mode of executing what is required from them, and consequently alleviate considerably the trouble taken at the drill, a circumstance experience will soon evince, and which is easily accounted for when it is reflected, that however difficult it may appear, and very often is, to comprehend what is intended to be explained to us, and even frequently to imitate what we see exhibited *before us*, the magic ceases as soon as we been

been acquired, those file marchings will be practised on a ground measured to that effect, first in the ordinary, and then in the quick time, the appropriate command *March*, or *Quick March*, being given, according to the movement intended, as well as the proper cadence ensured by the occasional repetition of the words *Right, Left;* but, as nothing is better calculated to draw the attention of the men to the principles of this march than keeping them in the constant expectation of being halted and fronted, the direction to *Halt*, or *Halt, Front*, should be frequently and unexpectedly heard during the advance, and particular attention had, when delivered, that, at the same, the halt is properly performed, every one remaining (right or wrong) perfectly immoveable, without attempting any correction; or, if ordered to front, in addition to the above, that each man fronts in the very spot he halted, and keeps perfectly steady as soon as he has done so.

The orderly, as hitherto, will attend with the skip, and give the assistance previously explained at the instruction of the various steps and marches already described.

The use of this march, and the necessity of the men being perfectly drilled to it, is thus described in Regulations:—(*R. R. Part* I. *S.* 33.)—" The accuracy of the march in file is so essential in all deployments into line, and in the internal movement of the divisions of a battalion, that the soldier cannot be too much exercised to it. The whole battalion, as well as its divisions, is required to make this flank movement without the least opening out or lengthening of the file, in perfect cadence and equality of step; and," it further adds, with a little attention

---

have been made once capable of performing it ourselves, the motion being once known, there appears no great difficulty in its being repeated as often and in what cadence the performance of the movement may require.

" and

" and practice, this mode of marching, which ap-
" pears so difficult" (alluding to the method above-mentioned, to perform it with the lock step), " will be
" found by every soldier to be easier than the common
" method of marching by files, when on every halt the
" rear must run up to gain the ground it has unneces-
" sarily lost."

The attentions of the instructor, while advancing in files, are—

1st. To see the facings regularly performed, as directed in Sect. 7.

2d. In no instance to give the word *March* before he sees the men covering exactly, the files placed at their proper distance, and the leading man provided with his two objects or points-de-vue to march on.

3d. To observe that the whole step off together the full length of pace (thirty inches) at the very first step, and continue to do so.

4th. To see, during the march, whether the files cover, and whether each man looks straight in the neck of the man in his immediate front, and neither to the right nor left, nor much less down, this latter being the most prevailing fault amongst the men while moving in files, and which, above all others, is the most likely to create disorders in this movement.

5th. That, while in motion, the files do not open out, but keep at their proper distance of twenty-two inches.

6th. To observe that the carriage of the soldier continues unaltered, and that no leaning back takes place.

7th. To see whether the steps be properly performed, without bending the knees more than is customary while marching by ranks; and whether the feet be brought flat on the ground, the toe a little before the heel.

8th. To observe whether the direction of the march be

be not altered by the leading file neglecting to move on the taken objects.

9th. To notice if, at the word *Halt*, the step which was taken is finished in correct time and at true length; and if, as soon as the advancing foot is thus placed, the other is brought up to it without any further movement, or any attempt of correction being visible; or, should the word *Front* have been added to it, if the men face at the identical spot they halted on.

S. 22. *Wheeling of a single Rank from the Halt.*

The difficulty which is encountered in wheelings being generally owing to the nature of this movement not being sufficiently understood, particularly amongst the recruits, its instruction will probably be greatly facilitated by their getting an insight of it by means of a figure, similar to *fig.* 13, being shewn to them, representing a rank A. G. here supposed of ten men, wheeling to their right, and where the circumference A. B. C. D. displays the ground gone over by the outward wheeling flank man, who leads the movement, and the lines Pace 1, Pace 2, Pace 3, &c., the different positions of the rank A. G. after the number of paces marked down at each have been taken *; and this should be followed by an expla-

* This figure would perhaps still better display the nature of this movement by a line, K, *fig.* 14, representing a rank of soldiers being placed along the line A. G., and only fastened at G. so as to be moveable round about it, and, by being brought to any of the radii marked p. 1, 2, 3, &c., exhibit the intended wheel in the precise manner in which it would have been performed by the number of men the above rank K is supposed to consist of.

nation

nation of the several directions to be observed in this movement; which are—

1st. *At the caution to the right or left wheel, the pivot man (that is, the person on whom the movement is made*, viz., the right-hand man when the wheel is to the right, and the left-hand man if to the left) *is to face regularly* * *to the side the wheel is directed on*, which in wheeling *forward is always to the outward hand, and in the same manner continue to face the quarter circle every time he perceives that the rank which is moving round overshoots his line of dress till the command* Halt *is given.*

2d. *On the word* March *eyes are glanced (and not before) to the wheeling flank; and the whole, except the pivot man, who has faced on the caution, step off together, the outward wheeling flank man (the man on the left when the wheel is to the right, and the man on the right when the movement is to the left) lengthening his paces to thirty-three inches, and the others shortening theirs in proportion as they are nearer to the pivot;* this being necessary on account of the ground gone over by each man, being less the further he is posted from the wheeling flank, *fig.* 13, although the number of steps and time taken to perform them are perfectly the same for all.

3d. *That the eyes, which are turned at the word* March *to the wheeling or outward flank, are so kept the whole of the time the circular motion is continuing, each man while moving round fixing his eyes constantly to the lower part of the face of the second man from him, and shortening or lengthening his pace according as he sees this second man either too much or not enough.* The reasons which have induced the

---

* Those facings, if not carefully watched, are generally very much neglected by the pivot men, who, instead of going through the directed motions, only turn the necessary part of the circle, and thereby are frequently thrown out of the spot they should properly occupy.

dressing,

dressing, while wheeling, to be directed from the outward, in preference to the inward flank, are obvious, and easily assigned in the difficulty which would naturally be experienced by the line being ascertained on the almost imperceptibe motion which takes place at the pivot flank as well as in the established length of pace ordered for the outward wheeling man, which therefore must both lead and guide the advance of the whole while going round.

4th. During *the wheel, the outward flank man in bringing the whole round, is to look inwards,* in order to judge the better whether or not he pursues the true circular he is to go over, and that he may be able to apply the sooner, by inclining to the right or to the left, the correction required, should he observe that he has deviated from it by a crowding or opening out having taken place among the men while in motion.

5th. *Always to touch lightly, and never to relinquish their neighbour on the standing flank,* a strict attention to this rule being requisite both to preserve the position in the line as well as the direction of march while wheeling.

6th. *That although the movement is conducted by the wheeling flank, and the dressing takes place from it, the men are on no account to follow the motion of their neighbour on that side, should he open out, but allow him to go off, and remain as directed by the last mentioned Rule 5th, close to the person on the pivot side.* Were they, instead of adhering to this principle, to keep to their wheeling-side neighbour while he is thus deviating from his position and direction of march, or to open the arms (what the soldiers are very apt to do here, under the supposition of assisting the movement by it), they would not only err themselves, and consequently increase the mistake, but debar the person in error of the only means he has to find out his having diverged from the path he ought to have pursued, and, by feeling his arm on the standing flank

flank touched as before, his eyes being at the same time directed towards the other side, occasion his continuing to widen out.

7th. *That all pressures from the wheeling flank are to be strongly resisted: and therefore, should the neighbour on the wheeling side, instead of opening out, close to, he is to be opposed, and even as far as the regularity of the movement will permit, be pushed off, so as to oblige him to remain on his proper ground.* This rule, the observance of which is necessary for the very reason already assigned for the two last mentioned, though generally very much neglected is peculiarly calculated to promote steadiness and firmness in the performance of the wheelings, and should therefore be particularly attended to, as well as recommended to the recruits *.

8th. *On the word* Halt, Dress, *the whole halt immediately, without jumping forward or making any false movement; but turning their eyes to the point* (if not already cast towards that side), *from whence the direction is heard*, the dressing as well as the correction at the conclusion of the wheel always taking place from the flank at which the officer stands

* This direction, which is commonly omitted in the instructions of the wheelings, is, however, so very important in its execution, that frequently a certain degree of precision is at once obtained in a body rather indifferently going round, by the attention of the men being called to this rule, which is very likely owing to the great influence it has in removing the two great apprehensions the men entertain while wheeling, namely, either of opening from or crowding to the standing flank, which generally causes their falling into the contrary fault to the one they are avoiding, and which are both greatly done away by this direction; for, by causing the men to be strongly resisted when closing too much upon the pivot, and consequently apprizing them the instant they are doing so, they will naturally feel less fearful in approaching their neighbour towards that side and again by being informed whenever they deviate from the line they ought to move on, by feeling the touch of the wheeling flank neighbour either too much or not enough, you give them a confidence which without this practice they would be deprived of.

who

who gives the word, and which, according to circumstances, may be either the right, the left, and the pivot, as well as the wheeling side.

The prevailing error in this movement being to stoop forward, and for those near the pivot to take their steps too long, the driller must pay particular attention to prevent those faults and carefully explain to the recruit, in order to obviate the tendency generally shewn to hurry over the ground, that it is not the man who arrives first in the new line who has wheeled the best, but the person who, constantly remaining dressed while in motion, only enters his new position the very instant the word *Halt* is heard.

When the recruits have been made acquainted with as well as shewn the nature of the foregoing directions, they will be trained to the execution of the wheelings, and therefore, after the rank has been properly dressed, receive the caution *To the Right Wheel*, at which the right-hand man (here the pivot) faces outwards in the line G. B., *fig.* 13; and the driller, after apprizing the others, that, at the word *March*, they are with the left foot to take one step to the front, and instantly to bring the right foot up to it, as if the wheel was intended to be of one pace only, delivers that command, which being obeyed as explained, he rectifies any small error of position or dress, which latter he corrects from the wheeling flank, and follows it by giving the word *Right*, which is the signal for the second wheeling pace to be made by the right foot; and this being executed in the same manner that the first was by the left, the left foot being also brought in a line with the right one in the halted posture the instant it is placed on the ground, the correction of this pace will likewise take place. At the word *Left*, a third step (the second taken by the left foot) will be performed, this brings the whole of the rank, with the only exception of the pivot man, into the line marked p. 3. *fig.* 13. In this manner, by

by alternately advancing each foot, and immediately assuming the halted position after the taking of each pace, is the wheel to be performed, step by step, on the words *Right*, *Left*, the correction of the last invariably preceding the word by which the performance of the succeeding one is directed, and this continued until the circle is completed, at which period every individual composing the rank will find himself on the identical spot from which he started; the pivot man, in conformity to the fore mentioned Rule 1, p. 63, having faced to the right at the taking of the 11th, 21st, and 31st steps, those being the paces at which the rank successively passed his line of dress.

This complete evolution of the circle might thus advantageously be repeated eight or ten times to the right, and as many times to the left, the situation of the men in the ranks being altered at each or every second going round, so as to accustom them to act wherever they may be posted in the line; and the above slow performance should be followed by the wheels being first attempted in the ordinary, and lastly in the quickest or wheeling time, which is the proper cadence of this movement. At the word *Halt*, which, in wheeling, is always to be given unexpectedly to recruits, the whole are to stop at once, and the driller is particularly to mention that he delivers it purposely without the word *Dress*, which is always added to it in practice, in order to prevent any motion whatsoever from taking place after the word *Halt* is heard,—a measure which, in the instruction of the wheeling, is absolutely necessary, for the detection of those who have not been regular in its performance; and as each man in moving round should the whole of the time preserve his lining from the outward flank, the driller, to notice whether the dress has been truly observed, should invariably, while teaching the wheeling, give the direction to cease the movement from that point, notwithstanding that in practice,

tice, and in the manœuvre of a battalion or exercise of a company, it is frequently heard from the pivot side.

Another observation, which is more particularly connected with the pivot man, is, that when the command *Halt* is unexpectedly given; as it will seldom be precisely heard the instant one of the four quarters of the circle is approached, he is not to try to line himself with the others in case the movement should have ceased previous to the line coming up to him, but await for the direction *Eyes front* to do so, as, by attempting it before, he would put himself in the way, and embarrass the correction; and, were the teacher by mistake to consider him as the point to dress on, probably give a false direction to the line.

Part 1. *S.* 19.—" Nothing will tend sooner to enable " the recruit to acquire the proper length of step, ac- " cording to his distance from the pivot, than conti- " nuing the wheel without halting for several revolu- " tions of the circle, and also giving the word *Halt,* " *Dress,* at instants not expected, and when only a " sixth, eighth, or any smaller proportion of the circle " is completed."

The orderly may be advantageously employed, while training to the wheeling, in applying the skip, now opened at thirty-three inches, to the paces taken by the outward flank man, and in counting the number of steps performed, to see whether they agree with what the part of the circle gone over ought to have required, which is, for each quarter of the circle, as many steps as there are men in the front rank (the pivot man included) of the body which is wheeling *.

* This knowledge is obtained by the means of geometry †, by which we are informed that the diameter of a circle is contained nearly thrice in its circumference, or (what is the same) that

† For those who are not acquainted with geometry it will not perhaps be unnecessary to explain that a circle is a figure where a line A. E. F. G. H. I. K., *fig.* 15, turns above a point called centre, B, so as to be every where equi-distant from it; therefore a line

The

The attentions in the instructor during the wheeling are—

1st. To see, before the movement begins, the rank or body which is to wheel correctly dressed.

---

the half of the circumference is equal to three times the half of the diameter or radius, and consequently the quarter of the circumference to a radius and a half radius. This being once ascertained, it will not be difficult to find out the number of paces requisite to accomplish the performance of a quarter wheel; all bodies, while wheeling, *fig.* 13, describing a circle of which the body itself A. G. is the radius, and the ground gone over by the outward wheeling man the circumference; and that therefore the circular line described for the quarter wheel A. B. must be equal to one and a half of A. G. the ground occupied by the body which performs it.

Now as A. G. is supposed to contain ten men, and twenty-two inches are the number allotted for each in the rank, the line A. G. is necessarily equal to $10 \times 22 = 220$, to which adding its half, 110 will give 330 inches for the quarter of the circumference A. B., which the wheeling flank man steps over in the quarter wheel and as each step he takes is lengthened out to thirty-three inches, it will be easily determined in how many paces he will have moved over the line A. B. by finding out the number of times 33 is comprehended in 330, which being 10, shews the quarter wheel was performed by the rank A. G. in ten paces, the very number of men it is consisting of,—a circumstance which must always prove the case on account of the existing proportion between the quarter of the circumference and the radius, as well as the paces performed by the outward wheeling man (thirty-three inches), and the ground occupied by each soldier in the ranks (twenty-two inches), which are both the same, and as one to one and a half. It may therefore be established as an invariable principle, that the number of paces required to perform the quarter circle, or ninety degrees, is equal to the number of men posted in the front rank, or (what means the same) to the number of files the body consists of; and, consequently,

That twice that number are necessary to describe a half circle, three times the same to perform the three-fourth of the

A. B., which moves round about one of its extremities, here supposed B., must produce that figure of which the exterior circular line A. E. F. G. H. I. K. is called the circumference, all lines which are drawn from the circumference to a other part of the same passing through the centre, like E. H. F. I. G. K. diameters, and those extending from the centre to the circumference, B e, B f, B g, B k, &c., radii (singular, radius). Now as every radius is equal to A. B. it is obvious that they are all equal amongst themselves, as well as the diameters, which each contain two radii.

2d. That the pivot man faces as directed, and not by a sudden jerk; and that he continues to do so every time his line of dress is passed by the wheeling body.

3d. To observe whether, at the word *March*, and not before, eyes are glanced to the wheeling flank.

4th. To notice, while in motion, if the outward wheeling man steps out the full length of pace, thirty-three inches, if he looks inward, and towards the standing flank; and also whether he pursues the true circular line he is to pass over, without either opening out from the pivot or closing upon it.

5th. To see that the men, in moving round, constantly feel their neighbour on the pivot side and on no account relinquish the touch of his arm; and that, in the event of their neighbour on the outward flank opening out, they do not follow his motion, but allow him to go off.

6th. That the position of the soldier, as defined in Sect. 3d, be preserved throughout; and the arms, as there directed, kept along the body, and on no account widened out.

7th. To observe that all improper closings towards the standing flank are strongly resisted, and nobody thrown out of the line without making the due resistance previous to its yielding to the pressure which must have preceded and caused it.

8th. To prevent the men from looking down or stooping forward; and to see that they remain the whole of the time in perfect dress.

9th. That the precise number of paces required to describe the part of the circumference are gone over,

---

circle and four times the number of files requisite to complete it.

And also that

				Degrees.		
For the	6th	of the circle	or angle of	60	the 2-3ds	Of the Files of which the front consists are necessary.
———	8th	....	or	45	the half	
———	16th	....	or	22½	1-4th	
———	32d	....	or	11¼	1-8th	

and

and neither more nor less taken; and that they are performed in the proper cadence of 120 steps in a minute.

S. 23. *Wheelings on the March.*

This movement, although perfectly similar to the preceding, by being on the present occasion performed during the advance, demands the additional attentions in the men to change immediately and together the step into the quickest time as soon as the direction of the march is altered by the command *Halt, Right,* or *Halt, Left, Wheel,* which the rank receives while moving in the ordinary time and at which the named flank man halts, and instantly faces outwards into the new position, while the rest of the rank, turning their eyes to the wheeling flank, as directed in the preceding Section, immediately change the step together to wheeling time. As soon as the portion of the circle to be wheeled is completed, the words *Halt, Dress,* will be given (a pause of two or three seconds may be made), and then *March,* on which the whole rank steps off together at the ordinary time.

The method which appears the most eligible to accustom the recruits to the above is to mark out a square or oblong of about thirty or forty paces, or of that length by twenty or thirty in breadth, and, marking out the four corners by camp colours, halberts, or any visible objects, direct the ranks to move in the ordinary time along the sides of this figure, and at the proper command to wheel at its four angles at first in the ordinary cadence, and afterwards in the quickest or wheeling time; the march along the square being so directed as to cause those wheels to be practised to the left as well as to the right.

The faults the soldiers are the most liable to, and which therefore are the most to be guarded against, in

in wheeling on the march, are, for the men placed on or about the wheeling flank, instead of stepping out and quickening their pace, to run, and for those posted near the pivot to make their steps too long. As both these mistakes, as well the hurry the men appear in during this movement; are derived from the erroneous opinion entertained by them, that the time appropriated for its execution is not sufficient, it is absolutely necessary to rectify that idea, and to remove it by carefully displaying how the time gained by the increased celerity, as well as the lengthened pace taken by the outward wheeling man, will enable him to describe the circumference he is to go over within the allotted period.

The duties of the orderly in this instruction is to apply occasionally the skip, and see that the wheels as well as the sides of the square are performed by the true number of steps. To ascertain the latter the teacher is frequently to permit the rank to proceed a whole side in the ordinary pace, though at other times he is unexpectedly, during its progress, to give the word *Step out, Step short, Mark Time*, and *Change Feet*.

Those wheels should also be practised on the march, the word *Halt, Dress*, being pronounced at times unknown, and when either a greater or smaller portion than the fourth of the circumference is described; and again while the rank is moving in the quick time, in which latter case it is, however, to be observed, that, although the degree of swiftness which would be required to go over the ground in wheeling exceeds the cadence of 120 steps in a minute, yet no running is to be allowed on the outward flank, where the leading man is, by preserving his lengthened pace of thirty-three inches, and only by accelerating the same to the degree of quickness required, to bring the whole round, and perform the wheel within the time.

* That, in a column advancing in the quick time, the alteration in the march by the quarter wheel, should be performed

Attentions in the Instructor.

They are the same as those already enumerated for the wheeling when performed from the halt, with the additional care—

10th. That the men on the wheeling flank move round without running, and those placed near the standing point do not take their paces too long, but the rank remains the whole of the time in perfect dress, the outward wheeling man stepping out thirty-three inches, and the others gradually decreasing their pace in proportion as they are nearer to the pivot.

11th. That the whole, at the word *Wheel*, change their pace, at once and together, into the wheeling time, and continue to move firmly in the same cadence until the word *Halt* is heard.

S. 24. *Wheeling Backwards.*

The rules which guide the wheeling forward are equally applicable when this movement is taking place to the rear; some alteration being however necessary in the direction relative to the facing of the pivot man, who performs this always inwards, and so as to face the rank of men, when the wheel is backwards; whereas he faces outwards, and from the rank, when the motion is to the front.

1st. On the caution *On your Right or Left backwards Wheel, the named pivot faces inwards, fronting the line of men who are going to wheel* (and therefore, if on the right, the right-hand man faces to the left; and if on the left, the left-hand man faces to the right);

---

by the divisions at a quicker rate than 120 steps in a minute, is clearly proved by what follows.

right) ; *and repeats the same every time the rank, in moving round, passes his line of dress, until the word* Halt *is given.*

2d. *At the word* March, *eyes are glanced to the wheeling point, and so kept while in motion and until the command* Halt *is heard, every one keeping constantly in view the lower part of the face of the second man from him towards the flank he is ordered to look to.*

3d. *At the same command* March *the whole step off together, the outside man lengthening his pace to thirty-three inches, and the others gradually decreasing theirs as they are placed nearer to the pivot; the whole taking, however, the same number of steps, and in the same time.*

4th. *During the movement the wheeling man looks inward towards the line; and, in bringing the whole round, carefully pursues the circumference he is to go over, without opening out from the pivot, or closing too much upon it.*

5th. *Always to feel the light touch of the neighbour on the standing flank.*

6th. *To allow, without opening the arm, the neighbour on the wheeling flank to go off, should he depart from his line of march, and open out from the pivot.*

7th. *Strongly to resist all pressure towards the standing flank.*

8th. *Not to bend forward nor to look down, and neither to run nor to hurry the step.*

9th. *Instantly to halt when the command for so doing is given.*

The wheeling backwards is thus described in the Rules and Regulations :—

R. R. Part I. *S.* 21.—" At the words *On the Right* " *backwards Wheel,* the man on the right of the rank " faces to the left: at the word *March,* the whole " step backward, in wheeling time, dressing by the " outward wheeling man ; those nearest the pivot " man making their steps extremely small, and those " towards

"towards the wheeling man increasing them as they "are placed nearer to him. The recruit, in this "wheel, must not bend forward, nor be suffered to "look down; but, by casting his eyes to the wheeling "flank preserve the dressing of the rank. On the "word *Halt* the whole remain perfectly steady, still "looking to the wheeling flank till they receive the "word *Right, Dress.*"

The mode already recommended for training the men to wheel forward, will likewise be made use of in the present instance, and the rank in succession made to wheel first by the proposed slow method, step by step, at the word *Left*, *Right* (the halted position being accomplished in this case by bringing back the advanced foot the instant that which is performing the pace is placed to the rear), then in the ordinary time, and lastly in the quickest time, the command *Halt* * being as before given unexpectedly, and from the outward flank † in order to discover the better any mistake of dress which might have occurred while in motion. The prevailing faults, while wheeling to the rear, are to hurry as well as to shorten the pace,

* The word *Halt* will be given here, as before, singly, and the men told that it purposely has been substituted for the proper command *Halt, Dress*, in order to prevent their attempting to line themselves, and by remaining in the position they stood, facilitate the detection of those who have erred while going round.

† It being of material consequence, in training the recruits, to be very precise in the correction of the dress which takes place after the conclusion of the movements, and only to move forward, or order back those who have actually deviated from their position in the line; this correction should invariably at the drill be applied from the point to which the eyes were fixed, and by which the lining was guided while in motion; therefore, notwithstanding that, in practice, the dressing, after the wheeling backwards, is always corrected from the standing point, it should, while teaching this movement, as well as that of the wheeling to the front, invariably take place from the outward flank.

 and

and to look down, which latter will infallibly derange the dress, and consequently prove particularly injurious to the performance of this movement.

The attentions in the instructor in wheeling back are—

1st. To observe, previous to delivering the caution, whether or not the line is properly dressed.

2d. That, at the caution, the pivot man faces as directed, and repeats the same every time the rank which wheels passes his line of dress.

3d. To see that, at the word *March*, and only then, the eyes are cast to the wheeling flank.

4th. That, during the movement, the outside wheeling man makes his paces of thirty-three inches, looks inward, and traces out the true circular line he is to pass over.

5th. To observe in going round, that the men feel constantly, and never quit their pivot-side neighbour, and, without opening their arms, allow the neighbour on the wheeling flank to go off, should he open out.

6th. To see whether any one is thrown out of the line without making a due resistance to the pressure which must have occasioned it, and also whether those who approach too near to the pivot open out the instant they feel that they are resisted and pushed off.

7th. To be particularly careful that no looking down, stooping forward, nor running, nor hurrying the pace, takes place; and that the dress is properly maintained during the wheel.

8th. That, at the command *Halt*, the whole stop immediately, and remain perfectly steady, no motion whatsoever being observed.

9th. To take notice that the cadence of 120 paces in a minute, is observed, as well as that the exact number of paces are performed which the proportion of the described circle required.

S. 25.

S. 25. *Wheeling Backwards, by facing about.*

When the division which is to wheel backwards exceeds sixteen or eighteen files, and the ground is uneven, as there is some difficulty attending the performance of this movement by the back step, it is directed that a division thus situated should first face about, and, after wheeling (the rear rank leading), resume its front. To this, therefore, the recruits should likewise be practised. However, as this movement is perfectly similar to the wheeling forward, and only differs from it in the additional facings about which precede and conclude it, a few repetitions in the quickest or wheeling time will prove fully sufficient to answer the intention. This wheel is performed as follows:—

On the words *To the Right about face* the whole change front to the rear; and when this is executed, and at the caution *To the Right* or *Left wheel* (by which the present right or left is to be understood) the pivot man faces inwards, fronting the line of men, in the same manner as when the wheel is performed by the back step. At the word *March*, the whole, except the pivot, march off in the wheeling time, observing the directions mentioned for the wheeling forward, and proceed thus until the part of the circle wished for being accomplished, the words *Halt, Front, Dress,* are heard, when every individual instantly halts, faces about, and dresses, turning his eyes towards the pivot, where the officer stands who has given the command.

The instructor's attentions in this case are the same as those enumerated for the wheeling forward, with the additional care to observe—

1st. That the facings be properly performed.

2d. That, at the commands *Halt, Front, Dress* (which ought to be given without any interval being left

left between them, and as it were one word of command), every individual fronts to the right about (some being very apt to do it by the left), and, the instant he is fronted, glances his eyes to the pivot side, and dresses in the line.

S. 26. *Wheeling on a Moveable Pivot**.

THESE wheels, which may be performed the right as well as the left flank conducting the movement, and, in either case, the directing flank marching over the larger as well as the smaller circle, being, under those four circumstances, guided by the very same principles, the rules to be observed with regard

---

* This shoulder forward not being, in general, sufficiently distinguished from the alteration in the direction of the march when executed on a fixed pivot, and therefore often improperly used on occasions which ought to have required the regular wheel, it may prove of some utility to introduce here and exhibit the differences which exist between those two movements.

In the regular wheel, or that on a fixed pivot, one flank remains fixed while the other performs a circular line or wheel round about it, and the old and new position of the rank or body before and after the conclusion of the wheel form an angle, *fig.* 19, of which the pivot man (or rather, in fact, his left heel) is the summit A; whereas,

In the wheel performed on a moveable pivot both flanks keep in motion, and describe each a similar arc of concentric † circles; consequently the one smaller than the other, and the rank or body previous and after the movement is concluded, A. B. and C. D., *figs.* 20 and 21, are separated by the arcs of the circles which have been moved on, A. C. and B. D. which have a common centre, F, always removed at a short distance from the spot the moveable wheel took place, and outwards of the flank which traced out the smaller circumference.

† Concentric circles are those which are so situated, one within another, as to have all a common centre, B. *fig.* 22. Were various lines, A. B. C. B. D. B. E. B. so placed as to have each of them one of their extremities on a certain point, B. common to them all and round which they were all moving, they would describe concentric circles of which B. would be the centre.

to

to them are here blended together, the trifling differences which occur by the pivot tracing out the larger or smaller circle being, however, adverted to.

The principles of this movement are—

1st. *That the proper pivot flank in column, or place where the officer stands, is invariable the directing flank when wheeling on a moveable pivot.*

2d. *That, when the change in the direction is towards the pivot side, the pivot or directing flank marches over the smaller circle, and outward shoulders are ordered to the front; and that, when the change in the direction is on the reverse side of the column, it is the flank which conducts the movement which traces out the larger arch, and inward shoulders are ordered forward.*

3d. *That whether the directing pivot man, who leads the motion, steps over the larger or smaller circumference, he is not to change his cadence nor length of pace of thirty inches in which he was advancing before; but, at the command* Right or Left Shoulders forward, *without altering either his time or common pace, he is to move, according to the shoulder which has been ordered forward, along the greatest or smallest arch.*

4th. *When the flank pivot man describes the circumference of the lesser circle, he must make his sweep from the old to the new position not only considerable, but sufficiently so to prevent any degree of hurry on the opposite flank.*

5th. *While wheeling on a moveable pivot the dressing must always take place from the directing flank, towards which the eyes are consequently turned.*

6th. *Always to feel, and never to relinquish, the touch of the neighbour on the pivot side; and, without opening the arms, to allow the one on the wheeling flank to go off, should he open out;* this being necessary, as well as in the wheel on a fixed pivot, to prevent extension of front.

7th. *When the directing pivot is on the inward flank,*

flank, and traces out the smallest circle, the men, in proportion as they are further from the pivot, must lengthen their pace and quicken their march, in order to keep up and preserve the dress.

8th. *When the pivot is on the outward flank, and describes the larger arch, the cadence is preserved throughout, and the dress maintained, by each individual diminishing the length of his pace in proportion to his distance from the leading pivot man.*

9th. *In wheeling on a moveable pivot, particular care must be had when the leading flank man marches over the smallest circle from opening out; and, when he moves over the larger circumference, from crowding upon the pivot.* These being the errors the men appear the most inclined to during the performance of the present movement.

R. R. Part I. *S.* 22.—" When the wheel is to be " made by the directing pivot flank (suppose the left), " the rank, marching at the ordinary pace, receives " the word *Right Shoulders forward*; on which the " pivot man, without altering either the time or length " of his pace, continues his march on the circum- " ference of the lesser circle; and tracing out a " considerable arch, on the principle of dressing, " gradually brings round his rank to the direction " required, without obliging the other flank, which " is describing the circumference of a larger circle, " to too great a hurry. On the word *Forward*, shoul- " ders are squared, and the pivot marches direct to his " front."

" When the directing pivot is on the outward flank, " and has to describe the circumference of the larger " circle, on the word *Left Shoulder forward*, he will, " without changing the time or length of his pace, " gradually bring round the rank to the required " direction, so as to enable the inward flank to describe " a similar arc of a lesser circle, concentric to the one " he himself is moving on. During both these wheels " the

"the rank dresses to the proper pivot; and when he "describes the smaller circle of the wheel, the other "flank, which has more ground to go over, will quicken "its march, and step out. When the pivot describes "the greater circle of the wheel, the other flank, which "has less ground to go over, will step shorter, and "gradually conform. In the first case the recruit "must be cautioned against opening out from the "pivot, and, in the latter, from crowding on him." *Fig.* 17.

A repetition of the foregoing takes place when the right flank, instead of the left, conducts the movement. The dressing, however, in that case, takes place from the right; and the command *Right Shoulders forward,* is given when the change in the direction of march is intended to the reverse flank, and the pivot passes over the larger circle; and the words *Left Shoulders forward* when the alteration is towards the pivot side, and the pivot or leading flank moves over the smaller arch. *Fig.* 18.

The recruits are to be trained to these wheelings on a moveable pivot, precisely after the manner in which they were drilled to the regular wheel. They must therefore be first directed to perform it step by step, *fig.* 16, at the words *Right, Left,* the rear foot being brought up and placed next to the advanced one in the halted posture after the taking of each pace; and the movement must be thus continued, the ordered shoulder being the whole of the time well kept to the front, until the accuracy acquired by this method permits its being executed without any cessation, at first in the ordinary and afterwards in the quick movement; the rank in either case proceeding, previous to the delivery of the command, in the intended cadence for the moveable wheel, as no alteration in the time should take place whenever the change in the direction of march is effected by this movement.

These wheels on a moveable pivot should be prac-

 tised

tised by the recruits methodically*, and also in the ordinary and quick step, the right as well as the left being the conducting flank, and, in either case, the directing one describing the larger as well as the smaller circle, the men being likewise often displaced in their position in the line. However, as accuracy in the performance of these wheels chiefly depends on the leading pivot, it is directed by authority, *(R. R. Part I. S. 22.)* "that a well-drilled soldier should "at first be placed on the flank named as the proper "pivot, and changed occasionally †." The skip may also be applied regularly, to ascertain whether the pivot man moves at his proper length of step, thirty inches.

During the performance of these wheels, the person who drills, in order to watch their execution, should generally post himself a little to the front, and out-

---

* To avoid the repetition of unnecessary explanations, the name of Methodical has been affixed in future to those slow methods proposed for the first practice of the movement, where they take place either pace by pace, at the words *Right*, *Left*, or where the performance of each step is succeeded by a halt, and which are recommended at the oblique step, file marching, different kinds of wheels, shoulder forward, &c.

† Although the posting of a well-drilled soldier on the flank intended to lead will greatly facilitate the execution of these wheelings, a still greater accuracy may be obtained by directing the pivot man to hold in his outward hand (the right hand if he be on the right, the left hand if he be on the left flank) a string, the other extremity of which is held so as to be well stretched, by a person purposely placed on the centre of the concentric circles to be described by the movement.—*Fig.* 23 represents this taking place, the pivot (here the left) marching over the smaller circumference; and in *fig.* 24 it is exhibited the leading flank (here likewise the left) passing over the larger. The cord in both figures is shewn by the line A. B.; and as, when the pivot traces out the larger arch, the men are placed between the centre and the pivot man, this method has in this latter case the advantage of marking out also the line of dress, as a view of *fig.* 24 will clearly display.

wards

wards from the pivot or leading flank, which here becomes requisite on account of the advanced position of the shoulders.

The instructor's attentions, while changing direction on a moveable pivot, are—

1st. To ascertain, before he orders the necessary shoulder to the front for the purpose of effecting the intended alterations in the direction, whether the rank is properly dressed, and moving in its true line of march.

2d. To be careful that, at the command *Right* or *Left Shoulder forward*, the named shoulder is brought to the front, and kept advanced the whole of the time the movement continues, and until the word *Forward* is heard.

3d. That the pivot man moves on the exact arch he is to go over without changing either the time or the length of his pace (thirty inches); and that, when he describes the smaller circle, he does not enter into the new position too abruptly, so as to hurry those on the opposite flank.

4th. To see that, while moving round, the dressing of the line or rank is correctly preserved.

5th. To prevent the concurrence either of any improper crowding upon, or opening out from, the pivot man.

6th. That, at the command *Forward*, shoulders are instantly squared to the front, and the march straight forward resumed; the pivot man, without altering his length of pace or time to perform it, taking immediately his points-de-vue to proceed in the perpendicular direction.

S. 27. Of the different Kinds of Wheeling.

THE method of imparting the different kinds of wheeling having been treated of in the foregoing Sections,

Sections, it now becomes necessary to display their various applications, as well as the several advantages to be derived from them in practice. Commencing, therefore, with the wheel performed on a fixed pivot while halting, it will be discovered that its principal use consist, 1st. in breaking the division of a line into an open column, and re-forming it from open column into line; secondly, in placing the divisions of a line into the echelon position, and resuming the line from echelon; and, thirdly, in converting a column or columns into a square, and reducing it into open column or columns, as before.

In the formation of the column from line, and line from column, it is a general rule, whenever the ground permits, that the companies or smaller divisions of a line should always wheel backward from line into open column, and forward from column into line; and as this direction, as far as it relates to the wheeling backwards into column, is particularly advantageous, —the covering of the pivots, as well as the true distance between the divisions, being preserved by it *,—

* To understand what is mentioned about the wheels in the following, it is necessary to be acquainted, that, when the several divisions of a line, instead of being placed one next the other, are brought in each other's rear, this is called a column, and named an open column, when, *fig.* 25, the distances between the divisions are equal to their front, each division having immediately before it an open space capable of containing the same; it is called a column at half distance, *fig.* 26, when this distance is only the half of the front of the divisions; and a close column, *fig.* 27, when the space left between them is only one pace (thirty inches).

In all columns the flank of the division on which they wheel up to re-form the line, preserving their natural order and proper front is the pivot flank. A. B. *figs.* 25, 26, and 27, and the opposite, C. D., the reverse flank. Hence it is easily concluded that the pivots are on the left in a column which has its right in front, and that they are on the right when the left wing leads.

From the foregoing it will naturally occur that a column which is to wheel into line must have its pivots A. B. covering exactly, as well as the true distance between its divisions; where

where divisions exceed eighteen files, and the ground is uneven, to obviate the difficulty which, under these circumstances, must naturally attend the pacing to the rear, they should invariably face about, and wheel by the method described in Sect. 25; and thereby derive, without the performance of the back step, every advantage resulting from the formation of the open column by the wheel executed by this pace.

---

otherwise were the space immediately before each division not equal to its front, and consequently not competent to contain it, either a chasm or a deficiency of room must take place on its wheeling up, as is easily seen by *fig*. 28, where those two mistakes have been represented, and where the front I. H. of the third division being less than I. K, the distance to the division in its front, an open space is left between them on their wheeling into line, whereas files of the fifth division in the same figure have been thrown to the rear on account of the distance M. N. being in this latter instance less than the front of the division N. O.; faults which are both carefully to be avoided.

Thence may be easily deduced the advantage derived from the formation of the open column by the wheeling back of divisions, which, by causing the movement to be performed on the proper pivot flank, does not remove those points from the very spot on which they stood in the line, and consequently preserves their dress as well as the true distance of the divisions, which each by this wheel leave in their front the very ground they occupied before. Such a column will therefore be instantly ready to re-form the line, were even its divisions of different strength; a circumstance which could not by any means have been the case had the divisions of the line wheeled to the front, as the proper pivot flank would then have been the wheeling one; and a column so formed would not have its line of pivots nor distance true, were even its divisions consisting of the same number of files, on account of the different size of the men, and much less so were the divisions unequal, *fig*. 29; consequently previous arrangements would be required, and the pivots made to cover as well as the divisions brought to their proper distance, before a column so situated could attempt to wheel up and form.

To prevent these inconveniences, it has been established as a general rule, that, wherever the ground permits, divisions are always to wheel back from line into column, and re-form the line by wheeling to the front.

Divisions

Divisions of a line wheel forward into echelon, and from echelon backward into line*.

Divisions of a column or columns may either wheel to the front or to the rear in forming the square or oblong, each division performing the contrary wheel in its reduction to that which it made in its formation, and therefore wheeling backward into column if forward into square, and forward into column if backward into square.

These formations of the echelon and square may frequently be required from a body while in motion.

The wheels which are practised on the march, and chiefly made use of for any alteration in the direction of the open column, are, according to circumstances, either executed on a fixed pivot, or by the shoulder forward. They are made on a fixed pivot whenever the circumference gone over approaches or exceeds the quarter of the circle; and by such wheels *(G. O. 1804, 35th.)* "should a column always enter on an "alignement on which it is to form, and indispensably "so if the necessary wheel exceeds one sixth of the "circle; for the acquired pause after the wheel "allows time for each division to step off from the "point of entry with exact precision of pace and "distance. In this case the pivot flank enters at or "very near the point of intersection."

In the wheel on a moveable point, or shoulders forward, "both flanks continue in motion; and it "applies to a small front and to a column of march "where the change of direction is not abrupt or very "considerable, and can be made gradually, without "altering the time, step, or distances of the pivot

* Echelon position partakes both of the line and of the column, and is formed from the line by the divisions wheeling apart of the circle less than the fourth, *fig.* 30. Should divisions so situated be wheeled so as to complete the quarter circle, it is easily perceived that the echelon position would be converted into a column.

"flanks"

" flanks" of the several divisions. " In proportion " to the front of the column so changing, and the " degree of change to be made, must be the sweep " made by both flanks; and in all cases the reverse " flank conforms to the pace and guidance of the " pivot flank, so as to be steadied and dressed by it " as soon as possible after entering the new direction. " In this manner the head of the column can never " enter at the point of intersection, but must begin " circling at some distance from it, and enter in pro- " portion at an advanced point of the new line, leaving " that of intersection behind it." And as this movement requires likewise sufficient room to permit both flanks to remain in motion, where this is wanting the change must again be operated, quick, and on a fixed pivot.

G. O. 1804, *35th.*—" In sharp transitions made in " straight lines from one direction to another, the " fixed wheels of division must take place. In wind- " ing situations of march the column is conducted " by shoulder forward; but can never enter on an " alignement of formation with the steadiness and " precision that attends wheeling into it."

The teaching of the wheeling and shoulder forward will conclude the drill without arms; and as it is to be presumed that, by the frequent practice which has daily taken place, the recruits are by this time completely master of the several heads of instruction contained in the foregoing Sections, they will now proceed to the Firelock Exercise, and be shewn how to handle their arms and make the proper use of them, as well as taught to perform on several ranks the different movements they have hitherto practised on a single one.

CHAP.

CHAP. II.

Drill with Arms, and on Several Ranks.

THE recruit, soon after his joining, will generally be provided with his arms and accoutrements; and, on receiving them, be shewn the manner in which the latter are to be cleaned and kept in proper order, as well as made acquainted with the various names given to the different parts of the musket and its lock, and the mode they are to be taken asunder and put together again. However, as the knowledge of those circumstances must precede the drilling to the Manual and Platoon Exercise, it should be imparted during the intervals of the foregoing instruction, which took place without arms *.

S. 28. *Position of the Soldier with Arms.*

THE recruits must be singly taught the position under arms; and therefore each, separately, after placing himself in the exact posture of the soldier, and balancing twice or thrice on the fore part of his feet, receives his firelock, and is placed in the shouldered attitude, which is thus defined in the

* However necessary it is, for the preservation of the arms, to take the parts of the firelock, as well as its lock, occasionally asunder, this, as far as it relates to the former, seems to be required but on particular cases, as after firing, &c.; and very seldom as to the lock, which latter should, besides, never be taken to pieces but in presence of a non-commissioned officer.

Rules

Rules and Regulations:—*R. R. Part* I. *S.* 23. "The "person of the soldier remains in the position de- "scribed (Sec. I.)*, except that the wrist of the left "hand is turned out, the better to embrace the butt; "the thumb alone is to appear in front, the four "fingers to be under the butt; the left elbow is a "little bent inwards, without being separated from "the body, or being more backward or forward than "the right one;—the firelock is placed in the hand, "not in the middle of the fingers, and carried in such "manner that it shall not raise, advance, or keep "back, one shoulder more than another; the "butt must therefore be forward, and as low as can "be permitted without constraint; the forepart "nearly even with that of the thigh, and the hind "part of it pressed by the wrist against the thigh; "the piece must be kept steady, and firm before the "hollow of the shoulder; should the firelock be "drawn back, or attempted to be carried high, in "that case, one shoulder will be advanced, the other "kept back, and the upper part of the body distorted, "and not placed square with respect to the limbs. "Each recruit must be separately taught the position "of shouldered arms, and not allowed to proceed "until he has acquired it."

The attention of the driller during the above, besides the direction therein contained relative to the carriage of the firelock, should be particularly directed to the position, which should the recruit in the least deviate from, the instructor is instantly, in order to prevent his contracting false habits, to direct him to ground or lay by his arms, and not, upon any consideration, to permit his retaking them until he sees the defective part corrected and the proper posture resumed. The instructor is likewise particularly

* For the Sect. 1, alluded to in the Rules and Regulations, see Sect. 3.

to

to notice that the left shoulder is not lowered,—an error which, on account of the weight of the firelock, the men are at first exceedingly apt to fall into, and which, by bending inwards the left side of their body, considerably alters their attitude.

Another method of readily ascertaining whether the recruit is firm and properly placed is to press the fingers twice or thrice against his chest, and to notice whether any improper motion in the upper part of the body is resulting from it, this being a sure sign that he was defective in his position.

When the recruit has acquired some steadiness in the carriage of his arms, he will receive the necessary commands to go through the facings, which, besides their proper execution, will require the additional attention here to see that, while moving round, the firelock is kept steady and near the body.

S. 29. *Different Motions of the Firelock.*

R. R. Part 1. *S.* 24. " The following motions of " the firelock will be taught and practised as here set " down, until each recruit is perfect in them; they " being necessary for the ease of the soldier in the " course of exercise:"—

" Supporting arms, carrying arms, ordering arms, " standing at ease, attention, shouldering from the " order *."

" The recruit must be accustomed to carry his arms " for a considerable time together; it is most essential " he should do so, and not be allowed to support " them so often as it is practised, under the idea " that long carrying them is a position of too much " constraint."

---

* These motions of the firelock are to be performed as described in the Manual Exercise.

The

The above different motions of the firelock concluding the drill on a single rank, a general repetition of the movement taught before should now take place with arms, preparatory to the future instruction. Ten, twelve, or more recruits, being therefore assembled on a single rank, and properly dressed, will, after going through the facings and turnings of the eyes, be moved both in the ordinary and quick time along the sides of a square purposely marked out, wheeling at its four angles, or on any ground paced before; and, while thus advancing, they will occasionally, and at times unknown, receive the words * *Step Short, Mark Time, Right or Left Oblique, Forward, Change Feet, Step Out, Halt ;* the skip being, as heretofore, regularly applied by the orderly, and the above movements followed by practising the back step, file marching, different wheelings both on a fixed as well as on a moveable pivot, &c., the rank being carefully dressed, every time it is put in motion, at the conclusion of each movement, as well as whenever, during the lesson, the *Attention* is resumed from the *Standing at Ease,* and arms shouldered. These corrections of the line, in order to obtain still greater precision, may frequently be executed by advancing or moving back the two right or left flank men two or three paces to the front or to the rear; and, after posting them properly, and taking the distant object, directing the others, according as the new position is either forward or backward, to enter or step back into the line.

On a principle similar to that already established in Sec. 11, which enjoins that no recruit should be per-

* To ascertain whether a side of the square or ground measured before is gone over by its proper number of steps, the ranks should sometimes be allowed to proceed along the same in the common pace of thirty inches, though at other times it should frequently deviate from it, and receive unexpectedly the necessary commands to that effect.

mitted

mitted to act with other men until he is perfect in the first rudiments of his instruction, which are directed to be imparted singly," is likewise that no soldier is to be allowed to act in several ranks until he is first capable of performing the movements on a single one. Were therefore some of the men, during the above repetition, found defective in any of the movements therein practised, they should continue to be drilled on a single rank, and not be permitted, until more expert in their exercise, to join the squad, where their presence, unless thus adequate, would, without proving in any way beneficial to themselves, only tend to debar those better informed from the advantages they would otherwise derive from their greater knowledge of the movements *. It is almost needless to remark, that, while practising these movements, the attentions previously recommended both to the instructor and the recruits, as well as the duties pointed out in the orderly during their performance, must be scrupulously adhered to by the driller, the men, and the person directed to attend with the skip.

S. 30. *Attentions in forming the Squad.*

R. R. Part 1. *S.* 25.—" When the squad or division (consisting of from six to eight files) is ordered " to *fall in*, each man, with carried arms, will, as " quick as possible, take his place in the rank, be-

---

* The above repetition of the movements on a single rank being chiefly intended to display the degree of correctness the recruits have attained in the performance of the movements by their former instruction, and how far they are qualified to proceed to the exercise on several ranks, in addition to what has already been established in respect of the frequent attendance of the adjutant at the drill, his presence seems on the present occasion to be particularly indispensable.

" ginning

" ginning from the flank to which he is ordered to
" form; he will dress himself in line by the rule
" already given, assume the orderly position of a
" soldier, and stand perfectly still and steady, until
" ordered to stand at ease, or that some other com-
" mand be given him."

Attentions of the Instructor.

They are thus specified in the Rules and regulations:—

1st. "Attention must be paid that the files are " correctly closed."

2d. "That the men in the rear rank cover well, " looking their file leaders in the middle of the " neck;"

3d. "That the ranks have their proper distance of " one pace (30 inches) from each other;"

4th. "That all the ranks are equally well " dressed;"

5th. That the men do not turn their heads to the " right or to the left; and that each man has the pro- " per unconstrained attitude of a soldier."

S. 31. *To take Open Order from the Halt.*

R. R. *Part* 1. *S.* 26—"The recruits being formed " in three ranks at close order, on the words *Rear* " *Rank take open Order*, the flank men on the right " and left of the centre, and rear ranks step briskly " back one and two paces respectively, face to the " right, and stand covered, to mark the ground on " which each rank is to halt, and dress at open order; " every other individual remains ready to move.— " On the word *March*, the dressers front, and the

" centre

"centre and rear ranks fall back one and two paces, "each dressing by the right the instant it arrives on "the ground."

To accustom the recruits to the above, as well as to qualify them for acting as right and left flank men of either the centre or the rear rank, the driller should place the whole squad on a single rank, and, when it is thus situated (commencing his instructions by teaching the duties of a second or centre right or left flank dresser), order each man in succession, and beginning by the right, to move a few paces to the front; and, when advanced, on the word *Rear Rank take open Order*, to step a full pace of thirty inches to the rear with the left foot, bringing the right foot back next to it in the halted position, and, the instant it is so placed, to draw the same foot behind the left (as directed in the first motion of the facing to the right), and face, and thus wait for the word *March* to front again. When fronted, the individual thus advanced is sent back in the rank, and his neighbour on the left ordered to move out, that he may perform the same, and so proceed until it has been executed throughout, each man in his turn having been brought to the front, and directed to resume his post in the line, after facing, on the word *March*.

A repetition of the foregoing will take place for the instruction of the duties of a dresser of the third or rear rank, when every individual, being likewise singly advanced, will be made to take (on the words *Rear Rank take open Order)* a pace of thirty inches to the rear with the left foot, a second with the right, and, when this latter is performed, to place the advanced foot (now the left) next to the right in the halted position, and instantly going through the motions of the facing, face to the right waiting for the delivery of the word *March*, to front again.

The above will be followed by advancing the whole again

again to the front, two by two, and placing the one behind the other, direct, *on the caution to take open order*, the one in front to behave as a marker of the second, and the other posted in the rear to conduct himself as a marker of the rear rank, and this being also executed by all, each having acted as a flank dresser of the centre as well as of the rear rank, the taking open order will now be practised by the whole rank together, first as if it were a centre, and lastly as if it were a third or rear rank.

The men being consequently properly dressed, and apprized that they are all to consider themselves as belonging to a centre or second rank, the right and left flank men will each take a pace to the rear, and face to the right at the delivery of the caution, and the others keep steady until the command *March* is heard, when instantly, and all together, they will glance their eyes to the right, and take a full pace to the rear with their left foot, bringing their right foot back to it, and remain perfectly immoveable as soon as the halted position is assumed *. When this is afterwards repeated for the third rank, two backsteps instead of one are to be taken by the markers at the caution, as well as by the rest of the men at the word

---

* The common practice of dressing the rear ranks by the right the instant they have taken open order, appears very objectionable, and by moving the men the instant they are posted, and thereby preventing the detection of those who have not performed their paces at the regulated length equally tends to promote unsteadiness and irregularity in the movement. It therefore seems preferable, were any lining of the rear ranks requisite after they have thus taken open order, to effect this correction in a regular manner, at the command *Rear Ranks, Right Dress*. These words, however, if made use of, should never be delivered before the whole are perfectly steady; and if the time permits, and invariably so at the drill, not before those through whose neglect the mistakes of dress occurred had been marked down, in order to be drilled accordingly.

March;

March; and as it is to be supposed that, by the foregoing, a complete knowledge has been obtained of this movement, and every individual is now capable of acting wherever he may be posted, the squad, being now replaced three deep will, thus formed, receive the necessary commands to take open order; the instructor is, however, in this latter performance, to take care that each rank acts successively as front, as centre, and as rear rank.

The men must be particularly cautioned, while acting in either of the rear ranks, that in opening the ranks, at the word *March*, they are at once and at the same time to turn their eyes to the right and step to the rear, and not first to turn their eyes, and then step back, which, by causing improper delay, would unavoidably occasion their falling back one after the other, and give a very awkward and unsteady appearance to the opening of the ranks.

The attentions in the instructor are, while open order is taking—

1st. That, at the delivery of the caution, the right and left flank dressers of both rear ranks step back one and two paces, placing the advanced foot next to that in the rear after the performing of the last; and that, as soon as the halted position is taken, the right foot is drawn back behind the left in the first motion of the facing to the right, and facing executed.

2d. To observe, at the caution (with the only exception of those right and left hand dressers), that no movement take place amongst the men of the rear ranks.

3d. To see that at the command *March*, the whole at once and together glance their eyes to the right, and take a full step of thirty inches to the rear; for should they first glance their eyes, and then step back, unsteadiness and disunion must occur in the movement.

4th. That the men belonging to the second or centre rank take one pace, and those of the third or rear two

two paces to the rear, and remain perfectly steady as soon as the halted position has been resumed.

5th. To observe whether the right and left hand markers of both the rear ranks front at the word *March*.

S. 31. *To take Close Order.*

R. R. Part. 1. *S.* 27.—" On the word *Rear Ranks* " *take Close Order*, the whole remain perfectly steady ; " at the word *March*, the ranks close within one pace, " marching one and two paces, and then halting."

The recruits may be drilled to this movement in the same manner as they were taught to take open order. The squad, being therefore previously formed in rank entire, will, at the delivery of the commands to resume close order, first be directed to act as a centre, and then as a rear or third rank, the men taking accordingly one or two paces to the front, and halting as above explained.

The attentions in the instructor, while taking close order, are, to see,

1st. That on the words *Rear Rank take close Order*, which are a caution, no movement is observed amongst the men of the rear ranks.

2d. At the command *March*, that one and two paces are taken to the front, as directed ; and that as soon as the foot in the rear, after the performing of the last pace, is brought up next to the advanced one in the halted posture, every body, whether right or wrong, remains steady in his position.

S. 32. Manual Exercise.

In the instruction of the different motions of the firelock exercise, the driller should invariably follow the explanation of a motion by exhibiting the same, and never allow the recruit to proceed to a second until a certain knowledge of the first has been obtained; the first being, however, always repeated when a second belonging to a same command is to be performed, and both the first and the second for a third, &c., till all the motions to be executed by the same word are gone through.

When the recruits by the above method have obtained some knowledge of the manual exercise, in order to confirm them in their position, and various directions respecting the mode of handling the firelock, they will be made to execute the same slowly, and only the first motion implied by each command being taken at its delivery, the words *Two* and *Three*, &c., being successively given for the others; this methodical performance being requisite to enable the teacher to watch minutely the motions, and to observe, after the performance of each and every one separately, whether the true position of the body is not deviated from, the firelock properly situated, and whether the feet, arms, hands, and even fingers, are placed as directed.

A few repetitions of the foregoing will be followed by the regular performance of the manual exercise, the ordered commands being given to that effect, and the different motions to be made by the same word, successively performed in the directed time and signal of the flugelman, the men handling their arms smartly, and the firelocks, by short and quick motions of the arms, hands, &c., being thrown into their proper position,

position, and moved as near to the body as the nature of this exercise will permit.

In going through the motions of the manual and platoon, where the line is not extensive, the person who commands the drill will generally find, that, by posting himself in front, somewhat to the right of the right flank, he will more critically observe the motions, and sooner discover any error during their performance, than if he were situated opposite the centre of the rank.

Four or five recruits formed on a single rank, and ordered to take the shouldered position, will now be instructed in the manual exercise.

"Secure Arms—3 *Motions."*

Book of M. P. Exercise.—1st. "Bring the right "hand briskly up, and place it under the cock, keep-"ing the firelock steady."

2d. Quit the butt with the left hand, and seize the firelock with it at the swell, bring the elbow close down upon the lock; the right hand kept fast in this motion, and the piece still upright.

3d. "Quit the right hand, and bring it down to the "right side, bringing the firelock down to the Secure, "under the left arm, and the hand rather below the "hip-bone."

"Shoulder Arms—3 *Motions."*

1st. "Bring the firelock up to the perpendicular "line, seizing it with the right hand under the "cock."

2d. "Quit the left hand, and place it grasping the "butt."

3d. "Quit the right hand, and bring it smartly "down to the right side."

" Order Arms—3 Motions.

1st. " Seize the firelock with the right hand at the
" lower loop, just at the swell."

2d. " Bring it down to the right side, to the trail,
" the butt as low down as the arm will admit without
" constraint, the muzzle a little advanced."

3d. " Drop the butt to the ground, placing the
" muzzle against the hollow of the right shoulder,
" and the hand flat upon the sling."

" Fix Bayonets—2 Motions."

1st. " At the word fix, place the thumb of the
" right hand, as quick as possible, behind the barrel,
" taking a gripe of the firelock."

" As soon as the word of command is fully given,
" push the firelock a little forward, at the same time
" drawing out the bayonet with the left hand, and
" fixing it with the utmost celerity. The instant this
" is done, return, as quick as possible, to the Order.
" as above described, and stand perfectly steady."

In grasping the handle of the bayonet, the left hand is, in this motion, to be turned so as to have the little finger upwards, the left elbow being at the same time bent, and kept in the rear of the neighbour on that side.

To accustom the recruits to the above, it will be preferable at first, and until a sufficient knowledge is acquired of this second motion *of the Fix Bayonets*, to divide and practise it as if it were two motions, the men being directed at the last words of command, while the pieces are pushed forward with the right hand, to seize the handles of the *Bayonets* with the left, placing the hands and arms as described, and to remain so, waiting for the word *Two* to draw and fix them on the firelocks.

" *Shoulder*

" Shoulder Arms—2 Motions."

1st. " As soon as the word *Shoulder* is given, take " a gripe of the firelock with the right hand, as in " fixing bayonets."

2d. " At the last word, *Arms*, the firelock must " be thrown with the right hand, in one motion, and " with as little appearance of effort as possible, into " its proper position on the left shoulder. The hand " crosses the body in so doing, but must instantly be " withdrawn."

The instructor must pay particular attention in this second motion that the recruits do not bring, but throw, the firelock into the shouldered position; and, to prevent the former, on no account permit the right hand in throwing the firelock to pass the line of jacket buttons.

" Present Arms—3 Motions."

1st. " Seize the firelock with the right hand, under " the guard, turning the lock to the front, but without " moving it from the shoulder."

2d. " Raise the firelock up from the shoulder to " the poize, by placing the left hand upon the sling, " fingers pointing upwards; the wrist upon the guard, " and the point of the left thumb of equal height " with, and opposite the left eye; the piece to be " kept perpendicular in this position."

3d. " Bring down the firelock with a quick mo- " tion, as low as the right hand will admit without " constraint, drawing back the right foot at the same " instant, so that the hollow of it may touch the left " heel. The firelock in this position, with the guard " to the front, to be totally supported in the left " hand, and opposite to the left thigh, the right hand " lightly holding the small of the butt; the fingers " pointing rather downwards; the body to rest entirely " on the left foot, both knees straight."

The

The driller, to ascertain in the third motion of the Present that the pieces are held as above directed, is, while the men are thus standing, to order them to quit with the right hand the small part of the butt, and drop them for a few seconds along the right side, which will soon display whether the firelocks are properly supported by the left hands or not.

"*Shoulder Arms—2 Motions.*"

1st. "By a turn of the right wrist, bring the firelock to its proper position on the left shoulder, as described above, the left hand grasping the butt, and bringing up the right foot at the same instant to its original position."

2d. "Quit the right hand briskly, and bring it down to the right side."

The recruits must, in the first motion of the shouldering from the Present, bring the firelock into its proper position with their right hands only, the left grasping smartly the butt, making, as the drill serjeants call it, the motion tell.

"*Port Arms.*"

"At one motion throw the firelock from the shoulder across the body, to a diagonal position, in which the lock is to be turned to the front, and at the height of the breast; the muzzle slanting upwards, so that the barrel may cross opposite the point of the left shoulder with the butt proportionably depressed. The right hand grasps the swell, close to the lower pipe; the thumbs of both hands pointing towards the muzzle."

"*Charge Bayonets.*"

"Make a half face to the right, and bring down the firelock to nearly a horizontal position, with the

" the muzzle inclining a little upwards, and right
" wrist resting against the hollow of the thigh, below
" the hip."

" Shoulder Arms—2 Motions."

1st. " Throw the firelock up to its proper position " on the left shoulder, grasping the butt with the " left hand, and at the same instant coming to your " proper front."

2d. " Quit the right hand smartly, and bring it " down to the right side*."

" Advance Arms—4 Motions."

1st. " Seize the firelock with the right hand under " the guard, turning the lock to the front, but without " moving it from the shoulder."

2d. " Raise the firelock up from the shoulder to " the poize, by placing the left hand upon the sling, " fingers pointing upwards, the wrist upon the guard, " and the point of the left thumb of equal height " with, and opposite the left eye; the piece to be " kept perpendicular in this position."

3d. " Bring the firelock down to the right side " with the right hand as low as it will admit without " constraint, slipping up the left hand at the same " time to the swell, the guard between the thumb " and fore-finger of the right hand; the three last " fingers under the cock, with the guard to the front."

4th. " Quit the left hand."

---

* In the first motion of the shouldering arms from charge bayonets, as well as in the second motion, when the same is performed from the advance, the firelock is (as it is explained when this position is taken from the present) to be placed on the left shoulder by the right hand only, the left at the same time grasping smartly the butt.

"*Shoulder Arms—3 Motions.*"

1st. "Bring up the left hand, and seize the firelock "at the swell."

2d. "By a quick turn of the right wrist, throw the "piece smartly to its proper position on the left shoul- "der, and grasp the butt with the left hand."

3d. "Quit the right hand, and bring it to the right "side."

"*Support Arms—3 Motions.*"

1st. "Seize the small of the butt, under the lock, "with the right hand, the thumb pointing upwards."

2d. "Bring the left arm under the cock."

3d. "Quit the right hand."

"*Carry Arms—3 Motions.*"

1st. "Seize the small of the butt, under the left "arm, with the right hand."

2d. "Smartly place the left hand grasping the butt, "the firelock kept steady."

3d. "Quit the right hand."

N. B.—"The position of Ported Arms is that "which the soldier will, either from the shoulder or "after firing, take, in order to advance on an enemy "whom it is intended to attack with fixed bayonets; "and the word of command for that purpose is *Pre- "pare to Charge*. The second position is that "which the front rank takes after a quick advance, "and when arrived at a few yards distance only from "the body to be attacked. The position of Ported "Arms is also that which sentries are to take when "challenging any person who approach their posts."

"In explanation of the 17th movement prescribed "in His Majesty's Regulations for the Inspection "and Review Exercise, it is to be clearly understood "that, whenever a battalion or line charges with "bayonets, the whole are in the first instance to port "their

" their arms, and advance at a firm quick step, or at " a steady run, if circumstances render it necessary, " but in the most perfect order possible, until they " reach the enemy."

" It is at that instant that the front rank are neces- " sarily to bring their firelocks down to the charging " position, and the whole are to press forward with the " utmost energy. The enemy being routed, it will " depend on the officer commanding to give the word " *Halt*, when the front rank will resume their position " of Ported Arms, and proceed as may be afterwards " directed; but the word Halt is on no account to be " given during a charge, or as preparatory to the front " rank bringing the firelocks down to the charging " position. It is therefore to be understood, that in " the charge or quick attempt upon the enemy with " fixed bayonets, either previous to, or after firing, " which is usually begun at a distance of 150 or 200 " yards, as the ground will admit, the charging posi- " tion of the front rank is to be assumed only at the " instant of attack or defence."

" In marching any distance, or in standing at ease " when supported, the men are allowed to bring their " right hand across their body to the small of the butt, " which latter must in that case be thrown a little " forward; the fingers of the left hand, being upper- " most, must be placed between the body and the " right elbows; the right hands are to be instantly " removed when the division halts, or is ordered to " dress by the right."

" *Time.*"

" The motions in the Manual Exercise are to be " performed, leaving three pauses of the ordinary " time of march between each motion, except that of " fixing bayonets, in which a longer time must be " given."

" The manual is not to be executed by one word " or signal, but each separate word of command is to " be

"be given by the officer who commands the body
"performing it.

"The Manual and Platoon Exercise will no longer "make a regular part of a review, but will only be "gone through when particularly called for by the re-"viewing general.

"The Platoon Exercise is always to be done with "ranks closed, except at the drill.

"Sentries, posted with shouldered arms, are per-"mitted afterwards to support, but not to slope them. "On the approach of an officer they immediately carry "their arms, and put themselves into their proper "position; which is not to be done at the instant he "passes, but by the time he is within twenty yards of "their post, so that they may be perfectly steady be-"fore he comes up.

"Corporals marching with reliefs, or commanding "detachments or divisions, are to be on the right, and "will carry their arms advanced, with bayonets fixed."

S. 33. *Several Motions of the Firelock, not comprehended in the Manual Exercise.*

When the recruits have obtained a sufficient knowledge of the foregoing motions, they are likewise to be taught the following, which, though not included in the manual exercise, are still of frequent use: their instruction will take place in the same manner as before described for the motions of the Manual.

"*Unfix Bayonets*—3 *Motions.*"

"(Arms being at the Order.)"

Book M. P. Exercise.—"The first and second mo-
"tions the same as ordered for fixing."

3d. "The left hand grasps the firelock above the "upper swivel, and with the right the bayonet is to "be struck off, and immediately returned to the scab-"bard, and the firelock to be placed quickly in its "original position at Ordered Arms."

Pile Arms.

The instructor, to teach this motion, will place three recruits one behind the other, as if three deep.

"The front and rear rank men of each file face to "the right, turn their lock outward, and cross the "muzzle and tops of ramrods. The centre rank man "places his butt about thirty inches to the left, the "lock outward, and crosses the muzzle of his firelock "with those of the front and rear rank men, so that "both the tops of their ramrods are placed across, "between the ramrod and barrel of the centre rank "man."

When a body is only placed two deep, it must be directed to take open order previous to receiving the word to Pile Arms, which is then executed as before, three by three, and successively by a front rank and two rear rank men, and one rear rank and two front rank men.

Trail Arms—2 *Motions.*

1st. Place the thumb of the right hand as quick as possible behind the barrel, taking a gripe of the firelock, as in the first motion of the Shoulder Arms.

2d. Raise the butt from the ground, slipping the firelock through the fingers, and at the same time place it in a diagonal position, the muzzle a little to the front, and the right arm fully extended.

Order

Order Arms, from the Trail.

Drop the butt on the ground, placing the muzzle in the hollow of the right shoulder, and the right hand flat upon the sling.

Trail Arms—(2 Motions) from the Shouldered position.

1st. Seize the firelock with the right hand at the lower loop, just at the swell.

2d. Bring the firelock down to the right side, to the trail, the muzzle a little advanced, the right arm fully extended.

Shoulder Arms—(2 Motions) from the Trail.

1st. Throw the firelock in the position of shoulder arms with the right hand, and grasp the butt smartly with the left.

2d. Quit the right hand smartly, and bring it down to the right side.

Recover Arms, from the Shouldered position.

Turn the piece by a quick jerk of the left hand, so as to bring the guard to the front, and the lock at the height of the left shoulder, both hands seizing the firelock as soon as it is turned, the right hand at the small of the butt, and the left above the lock, the left elbow being bent, and the part of the arm between this elbow and the hand placed close along the piece, both thumbs pointing to the muzzle.

It is in the position of Recover Arms that a soldier, when with his firelock, is at all times to address himself and speak to an officer; and it is likewise this position which is taken when the command *Recover Arms* is given as a preparative to the dismissal of a body of men; it differs from that described in the Platoon Exercise, and performed at the command *Make ready*, by the firelock being, in the present case, placed in the hollow of the left shoulder, whereas in the

the Recover used while firing, the piece is brought opposite the left side of the face. It is this latter Recover which is likewise taken when, while at the Present, after making ready, the steadiness of the men is tried by the command *Recover Arms* being given instead of *Fire*.

The instructor is, while the men recover, to see the firelock smartly thrown into the directed position, the guard to the front, both hands laying hold of the piece at once and at the same time, and not the one after the other, which, if not prevented, will generally be the mode in which it will be performed.

Shoulder Arms (from the Recover)—2 *Motions.*

1st. With the right hand place the firelock in its proper position on the left shoulder, grasping the butt with the left hand.

2d. Quit the right hand smartly, and bring it down to the right side.

Recover Arms (from the Order).

Should this motion be required, it is to be performed by briskly placing the right thumb behind the barrel, taking a gripe of the firelock, and throwing it as quickly as possible in the position of Recover Arms, as above explained, both hands at once laying hold of the piece in the manner there directed.

*Slope Arms**.

At the command *Slope Arms* the firelock is raised and brought a little to the rear, so as to rest entirely upon the shoulder, the butt being somewhat advanced, and the left elbow bent.

---

* Although this motion is not supported by any authority, and that even the only mention which is made of it in the Regulations is where it is forbidden, page 106, to sentries to carry their arms in this position, it has however been noticed here on account of the frequent use which is made of it while on a march.

Carry

Carry or Shoulder Arms (from the Slope).

The firelock is slidden down into its original position of Shoulder Arms. In doing this the elbow is to be kept close to the body, and not thrown outwards; an error which, without due care, the men are very apt to fall into.

S. 34. *Platoon Exercise.*

The instruction of this exercise will take place on the same principle as the Manual; and consequently, after the motions have been explained and shewn, they will be at first executed, by the words *Two* and *Three*, &c., being given, for each second and third motion belonging to the same command; this, as before explained, being requisite to enable the driller carefully to examine each separately, and observe with more precision whether every direction relative to it has been duly attended.

"1*st. Make Ready.*"

R. R. Part I. *S.* 29. *Book M. P. Exercise.*—"Bring "the firelock to the Recover* by throwing it briskly "from the shoulder, the guard to the front, and instantly cock as soon as the left hand seizes the "piece above the lock; the right elbow is to be "nimbly raised a little, placing the thumb upon the "cock, and the fingers open by the plate of the lock; "then drop the elbow as quick as possible, forcing "down the cock with the thumb."

---

* The Recover here intended differs from that described in page 108, only by the position of the firelock, which in the present instance is brought opposite the left side of the face instead of being placed in the hollow of the left shoulder, as it is there directed.

The

The instructor is to see, in this motion, that the men force down the cocks together*.

" 2d. *Present.*"

" Slip the left hand along the sling as far as the
" swell of the firelock; bring the piece down to the
" Present stepping back six inches to the rear with
" the right foot, and look steadfastly along the barrel
" of the firelock."

" 3d. *Fire.*"

" Pull the trigger firmly, and remain on the Pre-
" sent, looking steadily along the piece until the
" next word of command."

" 4th. *Load*—2 *Motions.*"

1st. " Bring up the right foot to the inside of the
" left heel, and at the same time drop the firelock
" briskly down to the priming position; the top of
" the cock opposite the right breast; the muzzle
" raised to the height of the peak of the cap, and
" pointing directly to the front, which will throw the
" firelock into the hollow of the right side; the left
" hand continuing to grasp the piece at the swell,
" holding it firm and steady; seize the cock with
" the fore-finger and thumb of the right hand."

2d. " Half-cock;—by drawing back the right elbow
" briskly, bringing it down on the butt of the fire-
" lock."

---

* A method which appears very favourable to assist the men to cock together, and ensure precision in this motion, is to direct them, as soon as the word *Ready* is heard, to reckon within themselves *one*, *two*, and to recover at *one*, and half cock at *two*. Were this approved of, the counting of *one*, *two*, might be computed at the rate of 150 in a minute, the half of an ordinary pace, and practised in the mode proposed for the different times of march, page 21.

"5th. *Handle Cartridge*—2 *Motions*."

1st. "Draw the cartridge from the pouch."
2d. "Bring it to the mouth, holding it between the "fore-finger and thumb, and bite off the top of the "cartridge."

"6th. *Prime*—3 *Motions*."

1st. "Shake some powder into the pan."
2d. "Shut the pan with the three last fingers."
3d. "Seize the small of the butt with the above "three fingers."

"*Cast About, or* (*as it is to be pronounced for the* "*sake of brevity*) *'Bout*—3 *Motions*."

1st. "Turn the piece nimbly round to the loading "position; the butt within two inches of the ground, "the lock towards the front, and the muzzle of the "piece near the breast; the right hand to be brought "on that part of the barrel on which the sight is "placed; both feet are to be kept fast in this po-"sition."
2d. "Drop the butt on the ground without noise; "shake the powder into the barrel, putting in after "it the paper and the ball."
3d. "Seize the top of the ramrod with the fore-"finger and thumb."
It must be explained to the recruits, that the performance of the first motion of this command will be greatly facilitated by the right hand in quitting the firelock, and without being perceived in front, giving a downward motion to the piece, which (the left arm being immediately extended, so as not to prevent it) will by its own weight then assume the position it is intended to be brought into.

"8th.

"8th. Draw Ramrods—2 Motions."

1st. "Force the ramrod half out, and seize it back-" handed exactly in the middle."

2d. "Draw it entirely out, and turning it with the "whole hand and arm extended from you, put it one "inch into the barrel."

In turning the ramrods the heads are to be brought to the front, otherwise they would come in contact.

"9th. Ram Down Cartridge—4 Motions."

1st. "Push the ramrod down, holding it, as before, "exactly in the middle, till the hand touches the "muzzle."

2d. "Slip the fore-finger and thumb to the upper "end, without letting the ramrod fall further into "the barrel."

3d. Push the cartridge well down to the bottom.

4th. Strike it two very quick strokes with the ramrod.

In returning the ramrods the points are to be brought to the front, so that the heads move about the lower part of the left ears. This is here likewise requisite, to prevent their clashing together.

"10th. Return Ramrods—2 Motions."

1st. "Draw the ramrod half out, catching it back-"handed."

2d. "Draw it entirely out, turning it very briskly "from you, with the arm extended, and put it into the "loops, forcing it as quick as possible to the bottom; "then face to the proper front, the finger and thumb "of the right hand holding the ramrod, as in the "position immediately previous to drawing it, and the "butt raised two inches from the ground.

"11th. Shoulder Arms."

"Strike the top of the muzzle smartly with the right "hand, in order to fix the bayonet and ramrod more "firmly,

" firmly, and at the same time throw it nimbly up, at
" one motion, to the shoulder."

" N. B. Though the butts are not to come to the ground in casting about, as accidents may happen from it, yet they are permitted, while loading, to be so rested; but it must be done without noise, and in a manner imperceptible in the front."

S. 35. *Explanation of Priming and Loading.*

When the recruits become perfectly acquainted with the Platoon Exercise, they will be taught, at the command *Prime and Load,* to go through the motions of loading as quickly as possible.

" *Prime and Load.*"

1st. " Bring the firelock down in one brisk motion to the priming position, the thumb of the right hand placed against the pan-cover or steel; the fingers clenched; and the elbow a little turned out, so that the wrist may be clear of the cock."

2d. " Open the pan, by throwing up the steel with a strong motion of the right arm, turning the elbow in, and keeping the firelock steady in the left hand."

3d. " Bring your hand round to the pouch, and draw out the cartridge."

" The rest as above described, excepting that, in loading, all motions are to be done with as much despatch as possible, every man shouldering or recovering, as soon as his ramrod is properly returned."

The recruits must be cautioned, that, notwithstanding the quickness which is here recommended, the loading should, however, take place without any appearance of hurry, the position being exactly pre-

served

served as well as the motions executed with coolness, and with the same precision as when they are performed in the Platoon Exercise."

" The priming position is the same for all ranks as " above described, with the top of the cock opposite " the right breast, and the muzzle raised to the height " of the peak of the cap, which will throw the firelock " into the hollow of the right side."

S. 36. *Of the Firings.*

THE same number of recruits which were previously assembled for the instruction of the Manual and Platoon Exercise, will now, placed as before on a single rank, proceed to the drilling of the several positions taken by the men of each rank while firing by battalion, wing, grand division, platoon, or files.

" Position of each rank in the firings by battalions, " wings, or grand divisions, front rank kneeling.

" *Ready.*"

Book M. P. Exercise.—" Bring the firelock briskly " up to the Recover, catching it in the left hand; and, " without stopping, sink down with a quick motion " upon the right knee, keeping the left foot fast, the " butt end of the firelock, at the same moment, falling " upon the ground; then cock, and instantly seize the " cock and steel together in the right hand, holding the " piece firm in the left, about the middle of that part " which is between the lock and the swell of the stock; " the point of the left thumb to be close to the swell, " and pointing upwards."

" As the body is sinking, the right knee is to be " thrown so far back that the left leg may be right up " and down; the right foot a little turned out; the " body straight; and the head as much up as if " shouldered; the firelock must be upright, and the

" butt

" butt about four inches to the right of the inside of " the left foot."

" *Present.*"

" Bring the firelock down firmly to the Present by " sliding the left hand to the full extent of the arm, " along the sling, without letting the motion tell; " the right hand at the same time springing up the " butt by the cock so high against the right shoulder, " that the head may not be too much lowered in " taking aim: the right cheek to be close to the butt; " the left eye shut, and the fore-finger of the right " hand on the trigger; look along the barrel with the " right eye, from the breech-pin to the muzzle, and " remain steady."

" *Fire.*"

" Pull the trigger strong with the fore-finger, and " when fired, remain looking on the aim while you can " count one—two; then spring up nimbly on the left " leg, keeping the body erect, and the left foot fast, " bringing the right heel to the hollow of the left; at " the same time drop the firelock to the priming po- " sition, half-cock, and proceed with the priming and " loading motions as before directed."

" *Centre Rank, Make Ready.*"

" Spring the firelock briskly to the Recover; as " soon as the left hand seizes the firelock above the " lock, raise the right elbow a little, placing the " thumb of that hand upon the cock, with the fingers " open by the plate of the lock; and then, as quick " as possible, cock the piece by dropping the elbow, " and forcing down the cock with the thumb: step*

* In making ready, were the method of telling *one, two* (proposed Note *, Sec. 34, page 111,) adopted, the men of the centre or second rank might, while counting *one*, both take their step to the right with the right foot, and recover; and, while telling *two*, cock their pieces together.

" at

"at the same time with the right foot a moderate "pace to the right, and, keeping the left fast, seize "the small of the butt with the right hand: the "piece must be held in this position perpendicular, "and opposite the left side of the face; the butt close "to the breast, but not pressed; the body straight, and "full to the front; and the head erect."

"Present;"

"As in the foregoing explanation for the front "rank."

"Fire;"

"As in the explanation for the front rank, with this "difference, that, as soon as fired, and after dwelling on "the aim as there directed, the firelock is to be dropped "briskly to the priming position; the left foot being "at the same time drawn up to the right, and, imme-"diately after the firelock is thrown up to the shoulder, "the men spring to the left*, and cover their file "leaders."

"Rear Rank, Make Ready."

"Recover and cock, as before directed for the centre "rank, and, as the firelock is brought to the Recover, "step briskly to the right a full pace†, at the same "time placing the left heel about six inches before "the point of the right foot; the body to be kept "straight and as square to the front as possible."

---

* The centre men, after shouldering, are attentively to look to the flugelman for the signal to spring to the left, which the instant it is given, they are all at once and at the same time to take a short step to the left, so as to cover their file leaders, no movement being perceived as soon as this is effected.

† In the event of the method proposed, Note *, Sec. 34, p. 111, being made use of while making ready, the men of the third or rear rank should be taught to recover and take a step to the right while counting *one;* and, on their telling *two*, both cock their pieces and advance their left heel in the position directed.

"Present;"

"*Present;*"

"As in the explanation for the centre rank."

"*Fire;*"

"As in the explanation for the centre rank; after "shouldering, the men step to the left, and cover their "file leaders* as the centre rank does."

"*Front Rank standing.*"

"In firing with the front rank standing, that rank "makes ready, &c. as specified in the article relative "to the Platoon Exercise."

"*Officers.*"

"N. B. In giving words of command, as well in as "out of the ranks, officers are to stand perfectly "steady, and in their proper position; their swords "held firmly in the full of the right hand, with the "upper part of the blade resting against the shoulder, "the right wrist against the hip, and the elbow drawn "back."

"In firing by grand divisions, the centre officer falls "back, on the preparative, into the fourth rank, and is "replaced by the covering serjeant."

"*Firing by Platoons.*"

"The officers, instead of giving the words *Make* "*Ready, Present, Fire,* are to pronounce the words "short; as, for instance, *Ready, P'sent, Fire.*"

"In firing by platoons or divisions, the officers "commanding them are to step out one pace on the

* The attention recommended in Note*, S. 36, p. 117, for the men of the second rank to fix their eyes to the flugelman after shouldering is likewise requisite in those of the third or rear rank, who are also, at the signal he gives, to spring altogether to the left, and cover their file leaders, remaining perfectly still after this is accomplished.

"close

"close of the preparative, and face to the left towards "their men; they then stand perfectly steady till the "last of the *General* is beat, as a signal to cease firing, "when they instantly step back into the proper in-"tervals.

"When a division has fired, the men prime and load, "and come to the Recover as quick as they individually "can, without any flugelman, who is not to be made "use of in any firing whatever.

"It is expected that, from the insertion of the "fourth command *Load* in the Platoon Exercise, the "troops will become so habituated to the pause after "pulling the triggers, which is requisite to ensure "precision and the full effect of their fire, that they "will invariably adopt it on all occasions; though in "the field they are not to expect any word of com-"mand after firing; but each man, after making the "pause which he feels to be necessary for the effectual "delivery of the contents of his piece, is to proceed to "prime and load.

"In all firing by platoons, divisions, or companies, "the first words *Ready*, *Present*, *Fire*, are to be re-"gular, and generally from centre to flanks of the "battalion, each wing independent, though circum-"stances may occasion it to commence from any other "part of the battalion that may be first formed; but, "after the first round, every company is, by com-"mand of its officer, to present and fire as soon as "loaded.

"No flugelman is to step out after firing to give the "time of loading and recovering; every man is to load "and recover as quick as he can. This is to be observed "in all firings by platoons or companies.

"No flugelman is ever to remain advanced from a "battalion except to give the time of the General "Salute, or during the performance of the Manual "Exercise.

"In all firing by platoons or divisions, after the first "round the firelock is not to be shouldered, but

"briskly

"briskly thrown up to the Recover, which will ren-"der the word *Ready* unnecessary, and reduce the "words of command to the following, viz., *P'sent*, "*Fire*."

"The positions of the several ranks to be as fol-"low:—

"*Front Rank*."

"The front rank man, being at the Recover, and "cocked, brings his piece down to the Present, step-"ping back six inches to the rear with the right foot. "After having fired, the right foot is to be brought "up to the left heel, preserving the quarter face to "the right; and the priming and loading goes on as "directed."

"*Centre Rank*."

"The centre rank man, being at the Recover, and "cocked, on the word *P'sent* regains his firing position, "by placing his left foot a moderate pace to the left, "keeping the right foot fast; and having fired, the left "foot is to be brought back to the priming position, "preserving the half face to the right."

"*Rear Rank*."

"The rear rank man, being at the Recover, and "cocked on the word *P'sent* gains his firing position, "by stepping six inches to the front, with the left "foot."

"When the rear rank man has fired, the left foot is "brought back to the right foot, and the priming and "loading goes on in that position, preserving the half "face to the right."

"*File Firing*."

"In file firing the same rules are to be observed by "the several ranks, without waiting for any word of "command."

R. R. Inspection or Review.—"In firing companies "by files, each company fires independent; when the "right file presents, the next makes ready, and so

"on.

" on. After the first fire, each man, as he loads, " comes to a recover" (as when firing by platoons), " and the file again fires without waiting for any other. " The rear rank men are to have their eyes on their " front rank men, and be guided by, and present with " them."

" Cease Firing.

Book M. P. Exercise.—" When the signal has been " made to cease firing, the men are to recover arms, " half cock (for which they will receive the word of " command), as well as to shoulder; when the centre " and rear ranks are to spring to the left and accurately " cover their file leaders.

" Pause upon the Present, after having fired.

" It is to be observed, that, in all firings, the soldier " is to be instructed to pay due attention to that order " which enjoins the regulated pause upon the Present, " after pulling the trigger."

When the recruits have been drilled to the foregoing motions of the firelock, as well as instructed in the execution of the different firings, the squad, consisting as before of about eighteen to twenty-four men, will be re-assembled on a single rank, and thus directed to go through the Manual and Platoon Exercise, the latter, as well as the Prime and Load, being performed and repeated, the rank acting as a front rank, both kneeling and standing, as centre rank, and as a rear rank.

The squad, being then replaced three deep, will likewise perform the Manual and Platoon Exercise, and proceed to the firing, the directions to fire by battalions, by wings, by grand divisions, by platoons, and by files, being successively given, so as to render the men familiar both with those commands as well as the mode of executing them, and this followed by the fire obliquely to the right and to the left, which only differs from the preceding by the

 pieces

pieces being brought in an oblique direction while recovering, the men at the word *Ready* making a quarter or half face to the side ordered, and preserving this oblique attitude until the firelocks are brought down in the loading position, when they replace themselves as explained in the Platoon Exercise, and proceed to prime and load as it is there prescribed.

It is to be remarked that the ranks, which, at close order, are at a pace (thirty inches) asunder, must lock up while firing, and that this likewise occurs every time a body in line advances to the front or wheels forwards; the person who drills is therefore, in the early part of the instruction, on several ranks, to pay due attention to accustom the men in the three above alluded cases, when posted in the rear ranks, to perform this decrease betwixt the distance of the ranks in a manner similar to that in which they were instructed from open to take close order; and consequently, at the delivery of the last word of the caution, which in this instance acts as a command of execution, to glance their eyes to the right, and take all together the necessary step or steps to the front to lock up, performing this with steadiness, every individual as soon as he has moved up into his proper position remaining perfectly immovable until the next word of command is heard.

Attentions in the Instructor during the Performance of the Manual and Platoon Exercise.

The attentions of the driller in the Manual and Platoon Exercise consisting chiefly in his observing whether the motions are performed as directed, they will be the best pointed out in their explanations of the motions, to which reference should therefore be had. The following are, however, a few selected amongst them:

1st. That, in the performance of the Manual and Platoon

[library stamp]

Platoon Exercise, the firelock is smartly handled; and, by quick and decided motions of the arms and hands thrown into its proper position.

2d. That each motion be performed as directed; and particularly, in shouldering from the order, that the piece be thrown into its position on the left shoulder, the right hand crossing no further than the row of buttons of the jacket, whence it must be instantly withdrawn.

3d. That the motions of the Platoon Exercise are executed as prescribed, and that the men recover and cock their pieces together at the command *Make Ready* as well as *Half Cock* in the second motion of the word *Load*, and shut their pans, at the second motion of the command *Prime*, all at the same time.

4th. That, at the word "*'Bout*," the firelock is at once brought down in the manner prescribed in the Platoon Exercise.

5th. To observe whether the centre and the rear rank men, after shouldering, look to the flugelman, and that, at the signal he gives, they spring at once and altogether to the left, to cover their front file leader, and remain perfectly steady afterwards.

6th. To see that, at the words *Prime and Load*, the men charge their pieces with quickness and regularity, but without any appearance of hurry; and that the motions are performed as explained in the Platoon Exereise.

While Firing.

7th. That, at the conclusion of the caution to fire, the rear ranks lock up.

8th. To notice, when the words *Make Ready* are given, if the men of each rank are placed in the directed position; if, at the word *Present*, they level properly, neither too high nor too low; and if they pay due attention in preserving the ordered pause after firing.

9th. To see that, in firing by battalion, wing, or

 grand

grand division, the men, after loading, come to the shouldered position ;—and,

10th. If they fire either by platoons or files, that they recover as soon as they have loaded their pieces. Should the signal to cease fire be given while they are thus loading, they are likewise to come to the Recover, and to remain so till they receive the commands *Half Cock* and *Shoulder Arms*.

11th. To observe, while firing by files, that the rear rank men are guided by their file leaders ; present and fire with them ; and, in the first round, that each file makes ready at the same instant that the one on its right presents.

12th. To see, when firing in an oblique direction, that the proper facing is performed in making ready ; the true direction given to the firelock at the word *Present* ; and, after pulling the trigger, and the ordered pause is observed, in bringing down the firelock, that the loading position described in the Platoon Exercise is taken, this as well as the following motions being performed as there directed, and as if the fire was taking place to the front.

S. 37. *Light Infantry**.

Book M. P. Exercise.—" In regiments of light in-" fantry, or in detached corps acting as such, and

---

* Though this method of firing appears properly to belong to the Light Infantry Exercise, it seems, however, to require a place at the drill of the recruits, its use being particularly applicable to any description of troops, which, posted on the declivity of a hill are to act against an enemy occupying the valley, as well as on all other occasions where, as here, the position of the two ranks kneeling is advantageous to render the fire more razant, and thus calculated to counteract the tendency the men have generally to level too high ; and as, besides this, the object of fire offered

" formed

" formed in two ranks, it may occasionally be expe-
" dient to prime, load, and fire, with both ranks kneel-
" ing. His Majesty has been pleased to sanction the
" occasional use of this mode of firing in corps of the
" above description; and to command that the follow-
" ing motions shall be adopted in the practice of it.
" The following regulations are therefore to be strictly
" attended to; and all light infantry corps and com-
" panies are immediately to be instructed and occa-
" sionally exercised in conformity to them."

" *Firing, two Ranks kneeling. Priming and Loading*
" *in that Position.*

" *Ready.*

" Both ranks sink down smartly on their right knees,
" and throw back their right legs. In the front rank
" the left side of the right knee is directly to the rear
" of the right side of the left foot; but the rear rank
" carries the right knee about four inches to the right.
" The left legs of both must be perfectly perpendicular.
" The front and rear ranks respectively bring their
" firelocks down to the priming position, as hereafter
" explained, cock, and replace their right hands on the
" small of the butt."

" From the left arm being brought across the body,
" the left shoulders of both ranks are brought for-
" ward in a small degree; but the body must be kept

---

to the enemy is likewise decreased by it, it seems to possess considerable advantage, whenever, as in the instance above supposed, it can, on account of the elevation of ground, be effected without incurring any danger; a circumstance which will soon be discoverable on examining the Tables which display the results of experiments made with ordnance or small arms on targets of different dimensions.

Were a body situated as above, directed to fire two ranks kneeling while formed three deep, the third or rear rank might be ordered to lie down, or brought to act as may be required.

" as

" as square to the front as possible, without producing " constraint."

Present.

" On the word *Present*, both ranks bring their fire-" locks to the Present, each man slowly and inde-" pendently levelling at the particular object which " his eye has fixed upon; and, as soon as he has co-" vered his object, each man fires of his own accord, " without waiting for any word of command. The " elbows must on no account be projected."

" *Load.*

" Both ranks keep their firelocks at the Present till " the word *Load* is given, which the officer orders as " soon as he sees they have all fired.

" Then the men come to the priming position, " which in this particular mode of firing is as fol-" lows:—

" The firelocks of the front rank are in line with " the haunches; and those of the rear rank are placed " about four inches above the haunches.

" The elbows of both ranks must be as close to the " body as possible. The front rank men, after prim-" ing, bring round their firelocks to the left side, and " throw the butts to the rear; so that the barrel may " be close to the left thigh, and the muzzle three in-" ches behind the left knees.

" The left hand moves the firelock from the right " side to the left, and the right hand is brought across " the body to accomplish the loading. After loading, " the firelock is raised, and advanced to the front by " the left hand, and the position for making ready is " resumed.

" The rear rank men, after priming, turn the body " to the right in a small degree, lean well to the rear, " and throw the butts to the front, so that the fire-" locks may be in contact with the right thighs of the " front rank men, and the muzzle in line with the

" hip-

"hip-bone. They then resume their original po-
"sition for making ready. On the signal to cease
"firing, the ranks resume their standing position, and
"shoulder."

S. 38. *Marching to the Front or Rear.*

THE squad being now replaced three deep, will proceed in its instruction, and be practised to march to the front as well as to the rear. The driller therefore, after dressing it carefully, and observing if the files are correct, the arms carried, and if each individual stands in his proper position, will place a well-drilled soldier on the flank which is to lead, and, providing him with the two objects to move on, deliver the caution, "*The squad or division will advance* *;" which caution being the command of execution to the rear ranks to lock up, the men of those ranks will at once and together take one and two steps to the front, as explained in the foregoing, where this diminishing of distance between the ranks is ordered as a preparative to the firing: and, to imprint the cadence, five or six strong taps on the drum, regulated by a plummet, being likewise given the instant the last word of the caution is pronounced,

---

* The caution acting on the present occasion as command of execution to the rear ranks to lock up, it is necessary for the same fully to determine the movement intended, a circumstance which being by no means implied by the command *Squad* or *Division*, as given singly in the Rules and Regulations, the words *will advance* have been here added. This, however, can hardly be considered as contravening the directions therein laid down, and so far from *militating* against the system of commands, therein established, is rather calculated to promote uniformity in it; the commands *The Battalion or Platoon will advance* or *retire* being the cautions pointed out by the above-named authority when those bodies are to proceed to the front or to retire to the rear.

this

this will be followed by the word *March*, at which the squad sets off, every one taking a full face to the front, and glancing his eyes to the directed flank *; performing this without turning his head, which would inevitably, by carrying the outward shoulder to the front, derange his position. After the performing of the third or fourth pace, and when the dressing is somewhat established, eyes are again brought to the front, and only occasionally, and when the elbow or arm is not touched in its proper place, for a few paces turned to the dressing point †. While on the march, the elbows must, without constraint, be kept steady, as both improper distance, and consequently waving on the march, must occur if they are either opened too much from the body, or too much closed upon it.

In addition to the attention required while marching, the men in the rear ranks are to be careful to cover exactly their file leaders, and preserve the pro-

---

* The instructor, before he moves the squad, should, by the words *Eyes Right* or *Eyes Left*, apprize the men of the flank which is to lead while in motion.

† It is of particular importance to explain carefully to the men, and make them understand, that, while marching as well as while halting, eyes to the front is the natural position of the soldier, and consequently, that although they are, at the word *March*, immediately to glance their eyes to the dressing point; yet that, after performing the third or fourth pace, and as soon as some steadiness is established in the line, they are to look to the front, and chiefly to depend while in motion on the light touch of the elbow or arm towards the directing flank, casting their eyes to the dressing point only when this touch of the elbow is not felt on the same place it was before, and occasionally to ensure the greater precision.

All alterations in the pace being calculated to produce an improper influence on the line, the men must be taught invariably, at the hearing of a command which has in view any change in the step, to turn their eyes to the dressing point, and to keep them so for three or four paces, or until the degree of order will again permit their being brought to the front.

per

per distance from them, which latter will be effected on the same principle as the locking up in marching by files, viz., by placing the advancing foot always in front of the spot left by the person posted immediately before.

At the command *Halt* the step which was taking is to be finished, and the foot in the rear brought up to the advanced one, no motion being permitted after this is executed, nor any attempt shewn to correct the lining, which latter, if required, will be ordered by the word *Dress* given by the instructor, and never pronounced by him before he sees that the whole are perfectly steady and immoveable. Were he too precipitate in the delivery of his command, he would deprive himself of the means of detecting those who have erred while on the march; and besides, by this untimely correction would cause the men to become unsteady, which is by far the greatest fault an infantry soldier can be guilty of, and it therefore claims the special attention of the officers as well as non-commissioned officers, and particularly those employed in drilling, carefully to avoid any circumstance which might in the least tend to promote this defect.

The squad at first is not to be ordered to turn about, but is to be halted; and, after being properly dressed, is to receive successively the caution *The Squad will retire*, and the words *Right about face*, *Eyes right*, or *Eyes left*, so as to indicate the flank which is to conduct while in motion, and then *March;* and thus the rear rank leading moves back over the same ground, and proceeds to the very spot whence it started, the same precautions being here taken as when marching to the front, the distant objects ascertained, a well-drilled soldier posted on the regulating flank, and six or seven taps of the drum given the instant the men have faced, so as to precede the word *March*.

The attentions enumerated for the march to the front are those which must likewise be observed when the

the squad is thus retiring. It is however to be remarked, that when the rear rank is in front, and leads, the ranks then in the rear do not lock up, but preserve their distance of one pace (thirty inches) asunder, and that the men of the rear rank (now in front) are, while in motion, to preserve the original distance at which they stood after having faced about, this being requisite on account of their size, which being commonly less than that of the men of the proper front rank, at the words *Halt, Front,* which is to be given as one command (no pause being made between the word *Halt* and *Front),* the men instantly halt, face about, and remain perfectly still, awaiting for the word *Dress* to line themselves, should this correction be deemed necessary*.

The march to the front as well as the rear is to be performed both in the ordinary and in the quick cadence, the right and the left flank alternately conducting the movement, a proper trained soldier being, as before mentioned, posted on the flank which leads, and displaced accordingly.

R. R. Part I. *S.* 31.—" As the being able to march " straight forward is of the utmost consequence, he " who commands at the drill will take the greatest " pains in making the squad do so ;—for this pur- " pose he will often go behind his squad or division, " place himself behind the flank file by which the " squad is to move in marching, and take a point, or " object, exactly in front of that file, he will then " command *March*, and remaining in his place, he " will direct the advance of the squad, by keeping " the flank file always in a line with the object. It " is also from behind that one soonest perceives the

---

* The person who commands the drill, as it has been heretofore remarked in the march forward, is to wait, after fronting, until every body stands perfectly still, before he pronounces the word *Dress*.

" leaning

" leaning back of the soldier, and the bringing for-
" ward or falling back of a shoulder; faults which
" ought instantly to be rectified, as productive of the
" worst consequence in a line, where one man, by
" bringing forward a shoulder, may change the di-
" rection of the march, and oblige the wing of a bat-
" talion to run, in order to keep dressed."

" In short it is impossible to labour too much at making the soldier march straight forward, keeping always the same front as when he set off. This is effected by moving solely from the haunches, keeping the body steady, the shoulders square, and the head to the front; and will without difficulty be attained by a strict attention to the rules given for marching, and a careful observance of an equal length of step, and an equal cadence, or time of march."

" Changing from ordinary to quick time, and from quick to ordinary time, must always be preceded by a previous, but instantaneous, halt. Although this may not appear essential for the movement of the squad, division, or battalion, it is absolutely so for those of a larger body, and is therefore required in smaller ones."

" As helps for fixing the true time, or cadence of the march, the plummet must be frequently resorted to; the words *Left*, *Right*, and, when necessary, be repeated, slowly for ordinary time, and quicker for quick time; strong taps of the drum, if in just time and regulated by the plummet, are also directed to be given immediately before the word *March*, thereby to imprint the required measure on the mind of the recruit*; but they are on no

* Were the mode of accustoming the soldiers to the different ordered times, Sec. 9. p. 24, made use of, the men should regularly, as long as they are under the direction of the adjutant and belonging to the drill squad, be thus practised twice a week; and were the whole of the battalion (by a company or two at a time) to undergo the same exercise about twice a month, great advantage would be derived from it.

" account,

" account, or in any situation, to be given during the " march."

The attentions requisite in the instructor, while marching to the front or rear, are—

When Marching to the Front.

1st. To observe before he move the squad, if the ranks are properly dressed, if the rear ranks cover, and if every individual stands in his proper position, arms carried.

2d. That at the caution *The Squad will advance*, the rear ranks lock up; and that after the necessary step or steps to close to the front rank are performed, no movement is made amongst the troops.

3d. To see at the word *March*, the advance prepared by the body leaning somewhat forward; and the first step taken at full length, with the left foot, without stamping.

4th. That the rear ranks, during the advance, keep locked up, each man covering exactly his file leader.

5th. To notice whether the men step out the full length of thirty inches, and preserve the true time of march.

The instructor, when placed in front, will observe—

6th. That the feet are brought flat on the ground, without any noise; the toe a little before the heels; the shoe-sole not being perceptible by a person standing in front.

7th. That the men step well out from the haunches, the body following the movement of the leg and thigh.

8th. That, while dressing, the heads are not turned too much, and that the position square to the front is preserved.

9th. Whether the eyes are properly cast to the leading flank or point the instant the word *March* is given, and, after being so kept during the three or four first paces, whether they are again brought to the front,

front, the habitual position of the soldiers; and that they are only occasionally glanced to the directing flank or point; as, for instance, when the elbow on the dressing side is not touched as before, &c.

10th. That, at the delivery of a command which has in view an alteration in the pace, eyes are invariably fixed to the dressing point; this being required to preserve the line, and prevent any waving or irregularities taking place.

11th. That the attitude of the soldier is maintained throughout, without any constraint in the position; the elbows kept steady, without closing too near to the body, or opening out from it; and the eyes directed as prescribed in the foregoing attentions, 9th and 10th, no looking down taking place, which latter is particularly calculated to debar the individual from ever attaining any perfection in marching.

12th. That the dress is duly preserved while moving to the front as well as to the rear.

When behind the Body.

13th. The person who superintends the drill will soon discover the advance or leaning back of a shoulder; faults which must be rectified the instant they are perceived.

14th. It is likewise best ascertained, when standing in the rear of the directing file, if the proper line of march is pursued, by observing whether the same keeps its perpendicular position to the given objects.

When retiring, the Rear Rank leading.

15th. To notice whether any improper motion takes place amongst the men at the delivery of the caution *The Squad will retire.*

16th. To see that, at the command to *Face about*, the three motions of this direction are regularly performed in the manner prescribed.

17th. That the ranks which, after facing, are in the rear, do not lock up, but remain at their natural distance

tance of a pace (thirty inches), this being invariably the case whenever the rear rank leads.

The remaining attentions are the same as those already enumerated when the march is to the front, and where the front rank leads.

Attentions on the Halt.

18th. At the word *Halt*, to see the step which was then taking finished at full length and in true time, no motion whatsoever taking place after the foot in the rear is brought up to the advanced one, until a fresh command is given.

19th. That no attempts to rectify the line be permitted until the command *Dress* is given.

To observe, when the squad is retiring (the rear rank in front), that at the words *Halt, Front*, the men instantly halt, face about to the right, and remain steady until the word *Dress* is pronounced, when they are to place themselves in their proper situation in the line, should any correction of this nature be required.

S. 39. *Of the several Turnings practised on the March.*

The several turnings which are practised on the march are to the right about, to the left about, to the right and to the left. They are peformed as follows:—

At the words *Right about turn*, which is given while the squad is in motion, every individual, after he has in the first instance advanced his right foot, which he does at the common length of pace, places his left, instead of bringing it forward, a little before the right, turning the toe so as to point to the right and hollow of the right foot; and, while performing

forming this second pace, makes an half face to the right, and continues to turn so as to have completely faced to its former rear the instant he takes the third step, which he performs by bringing the right foot next to the left in the halted position. At the fourth the left foot is advanced a full pace to the front, and the march continued straight on.

When this is intended to the left a similar operation will take place on that side; and therefore, on the command *Left about turn,* as soon as this foot is placed on the ground, the right one is brought a little in its front in the position above described for the left foot, and the man turns likewise so as to have completely faced about the instant he performs the third pace, which consists here in placing his left foot in the halted posture next to the right. At the fourth step the advance is resumed by the right being brought a full pace to the front, and the direct march is then pursued.

The turnings to the right and left are of a still more simple execution, and are accomplished by each individual, the first time he advances the foot on the side the turning is directed, moving round on the same, and, while he so faces, placing the other foot next to it, and immediately resuming the march to the front; consequently, on the command *Right turn,* as soon as the right foot is brought forward, and while the second pace is taking, by placing the left foot next to it, in the halted position, the person, on his right foot, turns round to the right, and, having thus faced, the instant this second step is finished he makes his third step by moving his right foot again a common pace of thirty inches to his present front, and proceeds straight forward. Had the command *Left turn* been given, the same operation would have been performed to the left *.

---

* It is obvious that turning to the right or left about operates on a body in like manner as if it had faced about, and conse-

R. R.

R. R. Part I. *S.* 31.—" Turning on the march, in
" order to continue it, though inaccurate, and im-
" proper for a large body, is necessary when com-
" panies, or their divisions, are moving in file, and
" that without halting it is eligible to make them
" move on in front; or, when moving in front, it is
" proper without halting to make them move on in
" file."

It is to be observed, that, as no alteration in the cadence is to be permitted in consequence of the above changes of front on the march, the four paces taken in turning to the right or left about, as well as the three which accomplish the turning to the right or to the left, are to be performed in the exact time the body was moving in before, and in which it is, of course, to proceed afterwards.

The Attentions of the Instructor are—

1st. To observe that the four paces necessary for turning to the right or left about, as well as the three by which the turnings to the right and left are effected, are performed in the same cadence as that in which the body was previously marching.

2d. To see, after turning, whether the dressing is preserved, and whether the movement to the front is resumed in the proper time of march.

---

quently, after it is executed, brings it back over the very ground it marched upon; it is also easily perceived that the turnings on the right or on the left produce a similar effect to the facings, and cause a body, after their performance, to continue its march in the prolongation of either of its flanks.

When a squad or division, while marching to the front or by files, receives the words to *turn to the right* or *left about*, its formation is not altered by this command, which only causes it to move to its former rear; but both the formation and direction of march of a body are changed when it is ordered to *turn to the right* or *to the left*, and it will, after executing the same, proceed in files if it was previously advancing or retiring in line, and march in line if it was previously moving by files.

3d. That, when the directed change in the front is accomplished, the rear ranks keep up and do not fall back; and, if the body is brought in files by the movement, that the proper distance is preserved amongst them.

S. 40. *Open and Close Order on the March.*

R. R. Part I. *S.* 32.—“ The squad, when moving “ to the front in ordinary time, receives the word “ *Rear Ranks take Open Order*; on which the front “ rank continues its march, without altering the pace, “ and the centre and rear ranks mark time, viz., the “ centre once, and steps off at the second step; the “ rear stepping off at the third pace. On the word “ *Rear Ranks take Close Order*, the centre and rear “ ranks step nimbly up to close order, and instantly “ resume the pace at which the front rank has con- “ tinued to march.”

The most effectual method to teach the foregoing is to place the squad on a single rank, and posting a commander on its right to direct the same, while in motion, after ordering eyes to the right, on approaching the spot or spots pointed out by the camp colours, or other marks, to take open order, to give the necessary words to that effect; on receiving which every individual, being previously apprised to behave as if he were belonging to a centre rank, will finish the pace he was taking at full length without altering his cadence or dress, mark time once, and then proceed again to the front. When this is afterwards repeated as a rear rank, each man is to mark time twice instead of once, and then resume the advance *.

---

* Should the number of men render it preferable to place the squad in two instead of one rank, a distance of twelve or fourteen paces may be left between them; and a separate com-

The squad, being now replaced three deep, will, during its advance, successively receive the commands *Eyes right* and *Rear Ranks take Open Order;* and, after it has thus proceeded for about twenty paces, the words to close again, which latter movement is effected by the men of the rear ranks stepping out till they have resumed their natural distance from those of the rank immediately before them. In this latter performance each rank is in its turn to act as the front, the centre, and the rear one.

During the whole of the above the instructor should be posted a few paces in front, and to the right of the right flank.

The instructor's attentions, while taking open order or resuming close order, are—

1st. To see that the commands to take open and close order produce no improper influence on the front rank; and that, at their delivery, the men composing it continue steadily to advance at true length of pace and time.

2d. That, at the command *Rear Ranks take Open Order,* the men of the centre rank, after finishing the step which was commenced at true time and length, mark time once, and then perform their next pace (thirty inches) to the front.

3d. That, on hearing the above command, the men of the rear rank, as soon as they have completed the pace which was begun, mark time twice, and then step off at full length to the front, continuing the advance.

4th. To observe whether the cadence is preserved throughout, and whether the rear ranks remain dressed while taking open order.

---

mander being appointed to each, they would then both execute what has been directed in Section 40 for a single one, the rank in the rear receiving the word *To take open and close Order* from its commander when it arrives at the ground at which those movements were performed by the rank in front.

5th. To notice the manner in which the men mark time, and if, in executing the same, the feet be smartly lifted up as directed, without throwing back the body.

6th. To see that, at the command *Rear Rank take Close Order*, the men of the named ranks step out until the common distance between the ranks of one pace asunder has been resumed; and that, while they are doing so, the cadence in which they are moving, as well as their dress in the rank, are carefully preserved.

S. 41. *March in File to a Flank.*

THE principles of this march being already fully detailed in Sect. 21, it appears only needful here to add those directions which regard more particularly the men of the centre and rear ranks, and which are thus defined in the Rules and Regulations;—*R. R. Part* I. *S.* 33.—" The centre and rear ranks must look to, and " regulate themselves by, their leaders of the front rank, " and always dress in their file."

No material difference taking place in the execution of file marching whether performed by a single or on several ranks, it is easily inferred that no great alteration should occur in the mode of practising either a squad or a rank to this operation; consequently the method introduced in Sect. 21, for the drilling of a rank to this movement, will be perfectly applicable on the present occasion. The instructor, therefore, after facing the squad to either flank, and enumerating the necessary recollections required while moving by files, will direct the advance to take place at first step by step, at the words *Right, Left*, the forepart of the foot in the rear being kept on the ground while the other is advanced, each individual taking the position exhibited by *fig.* 7, and thus proceed; the correction of the last step

step always preceding as before explained, the command for the next one until a tolerable knowledge of this movement being acquired by this methodical mode of performance, the men will be directed to execute this march both in the ordinary as well as in the quick time, the commands *March* or *Quick March* being delivered accordingly.

The attentions of the instructor, while moving in file, are—

1st. To see the facings properly executed, and the two motions performed accurately, in proper time.

2d. After facing, not to give the word *March* previous to his observing the files covering properly, the true distance observed between them, and the person who leads provided with his two objects to march on.

3d. That the whole step off together at the full length of pace (thirty inches) the instant the command *March* is heard, and steadily continue the advance at true time and length till the word *Halt* is given.

4th. To observe whether the eyes are properly fixed, each individual in the rear looking straight in the neck of the man in his immediate front; and to be careful that this direction is not deviated from by the eyes being glanced either to the right or to the left, or, what is worse, by being directed towards the ground; which latter fault must be particularly guarded against, as being, above all others, the very one into which soldiers are most liable to fall while marching in files, and also the one most calculated to destroy every harmony and regularity in the movement.

5th. To notice if the men of the centre and rear ranks regulate themselves by their front leaders, as well as if they dress in their file.

6th. That the files keep locked up at their distance of twenty-two inches.

7th. To see that the carriage of the soldier is preserved, and that no leaning back takes place.

8th. To notice whether the paces are performed

according

according to directions, the knee being bent no more than is customary while moving in line, and the foot brought flat on the ground, the toe touching it before the heel.

9th. To pay due regard that the true direction of march is not deviated from.

10th. That, at the word *Halt*, the step which was taking is finished in proper time and at proper length, without any unnecessary movement or attempt at correction; and if the command *Halt, Front*, has been given, to observe that, the instant the men have halted, they face on the same identical spot, and do not attempt, by inclining to their right or left, to correct any improper chasm that may have taken place, and which, in fact, could not have occurred, had they been accurate in their file marching.

S. 42. *Wheeling in File.*

R. R. Part I. *S.* 34.—"The squad, when march-
" ing in file, must be accustomed to wheel its head
" to either flank, each file following successively,
" without losing or increasing distance. On this
" occasion each file makes its separate wheel on a
" pivot moveable in a very small degree, but without
" altering its time of march, or the eyes of the rear
" ranks being turned from their front rank. The
" front rank men, whether they are pivot men or not,
" must keep up to their distance, and the wheeling
" man must take a very extended step, and lose no
" time in moving on."

" The head of a company or battalion marching in
" file must change direction in the same manner on
" the moveable pivot, by gradually gaining the new
" from the old direction, and thereby avoiding the
" sudden stop that otherwise would take place."

The attentions of the instructor on the present occasion,

occasion, whether the front or rear rank men are the pivots, are—

1st. To see that the pivot men, in moving round, step precisely at the pace they were proceeding in before, without either lengthening or shortening it; and that the wheeling men lengthen their's so as to remain in line with them.

2d. That, in either case, the rear rank men keep their eyes fixed to their respective front rank man, by whom they are to dress.

3d. To be careful that the cadence is not altered by this wheel, and that the distance between the files is preserved.

S. 43. *Oblique Marching in Front.*

THE movement which is to be next practised is the Oblique March. The squad, being consequently placed in a rank entire, will, from the Halt, receive the caution to *Incline to the Left;* and, at the word *March,* every man belonging to it must take an oblique pace with the left foot without lifting up the right, which, as explained in Sect. 10, is to be kept on the ground until the correction of the last pace (should it require any) has taken place; it is then, on the word *Right,* to be brought in front of the left, the fore part of the latter being likewise kept on the spot it occupied before, each man assuming the attitude shewn by *fig.* 7; and the advance is to be continued in this methodical manner on the commands *Right, Left,* until a tolerable knowledge of this march has been derived from it. It may then take place in the ordinary, as well as in the quick movement, the attention of the driller being particularly directed to the grand object of having the true parallelism and dress duly preserved, and which, while advancing in the oblique pace, is only attainable by a strict adherence

to

to the principle so strongly recommended in Sect. 10, of keeping the shoulders square to the front, and (as it is likewise there mentioned) bringing the shoulder opposite to the inclining one rather in a small degree to the rear, which, if performed without occasioning any constraint in the position, will, by obviating the fault generally committed, viz., that of advancing it, as well as by drawing the attention of the men to the essential object here, the squareness to the front, greatly tend to obviate the difficulty commonly experienced while moving in a diagonal direction.

This obliquing is likewise to take place to the right, in which case, at the word *March*, the first pace is to be performed to the front, and the inclining to commence at the following one by the right foot being brought in the position described. It is also to be practised to the right as well as to the left while in motion, when each man, after the delivery of the caution, without altering his time of march will, the first time he advances the foot on the side on which the obliquing is ordered, place it in the diagonal required, and continue so to do every time he moves it, until the word *Forward* is heard.

The squad will next be instructed in the execution of this movement while formed three deep, in which case (should it be deemed expedient) the ground may be previously measured. When the oblique is performed in this manner it is particularly necessary that the rear ranks should lock well up, and cover exactly.

R. R. Part I. *S.* 35.—" Obliquing to the right is
" to be practised sometimes with the eyes to the left ;
" and obliquing to the left with the eyes to the right ;
" as being absolutely necessary on many occasions ;
" for, if one of the battalions of a line in advancing
" be ordered to oblique to the right, or to the left, the
" eyes must still continue turned towards the centre."

The attentions required in the instructor, while advancing by the oblique step, are—

1st.

1st. To see the paces performed at their proper length, and according to the directions given in Section 10.

2d. That the shoulders be kept square to the front, that on the side the inclining is to take place from being rather drawn back, in order to obviate the fault which generally takes place here, viz., that of advancing the above shoulder while the other is brought to the rear; and thus performing a half face, so as to front the diagonal traced out and moved on while obliquing.

3d. To observe whether the body which is obliquing remains properly dressed, and keeps its parallel position to the ground it quitted.

4th. That the rear ranks cover and lock well up.

S. 44. Oblique Marching in File.

THIS movement, which partakes of both the *File and Oblique March*, is particularly calculated to display the degree of accuracy the soldiers have acquired in each of those movements, as well as what portion of attention they pay to the rules laid down for their performance; and it is probably in consequence of this that the oblique marching in file is so strongly recommended to be frequently practised by the Rules and Regulations, in which work this march is thus described:—*(R. R. Part* I. *S.* 36.*)*—" In obliquing " to the right or left by files, the centre and rear " rank men will continue looking to their leaders of " the front rank. Each file is to consider itself as an " entire rank, and is to preserve the same front and " position of the shoulders, during the oblique, as " before it began. This being a very useful move- " ment, the recruits are often to be practised in it."

This oblique marching in file will, like the above-mentioned movements, be successively practised on a single

single rank, in the methodical manner, step by step at the words *Right*, *Left*, each foot being alternately kept on the ground as before explained for the oblique and file marching, in the ordinary and quick movements, and conclusively be practised three deep, the direction to oblique to either *right* or *left* being frequently given in the latter part while the squad is in motion.

During the performance of this movement the driller, as in all file movements, is often to place himself in front, this being the position from which he can most readily discover any mistake, and correctly ascertain whether the files cover, which is the great consideration while moving by a flank.

The attentions of the instructor, in this oblique marching by files, are—

1st. To see the facings performed as directed, the two motions being properly executed, as prescribed, Section 7.

2d. Always to observe previous to giving the word *March*, whether the files cover, and are at their proper distance; and whether the front rank man of the leading file has provided himself with his two *points-de-vue* to proceed on.

3d. That, at the command *March*, the whole step off together the full length of pace, and continue so, each individual in the rear ranks. looking straight in the neck of the man immediately in his front, and preserving the regular distance of 22 inches from him.

4th. At the command *To the Right or Left Oblique*, to see the directions recommended during the performance of this march strictly attended to, the shoulder opposite the inclining side being properly kept to the rear.

5th. To watch carefully the position of the soldier, and see that no leaning back, looking down, nor turning of the eyes to the right or left, take place while in motion, those mistakes requiring instant correction, if perceived.

 6th.

6th. That the directions respecting the performance of the pace be duly observed, the foot brought flat on the ground, the toe a little before the heel.

7th. To notice whether the men of the rear ranks regulate themselves by their front rank men, and whether they dress in their file.

8th. At the command *Halt*, to see the step which was taking, whether it be an oblique pace or one direct to the front, finished at true length, and the other foot immediately brought up to it, every man remaining perfectly immoveable, without attempting the least correction, as soon as this is performed.

S. 45. *Wheeling forward from the Halt.*

It has already been observed, that when a body placed on several ranks is to march to the front, to fire, or to wheel forward either from the Halt, or while in motion, it is necessary that the rear ranks should lock up; and this is performed on the present occasion, as well as in the two other instances, by the men of those ranks moving together one or two short steps to the front, at the delivery of the caution, which, in this particular, acts equally as a caution to the movement intended, and as a command of execution to the rear ranks to lock up.

The drilling of the squad to the Forward Wheel will take place first on a single rank, and then three deep, the movement being practised in either case to the right as well as to the left, in the methodical manner, at the words *Right, Left*, the halted position being assumed after the performing of each pace *, in the ordinary and lastly in the quickest movement; the caution *To the Right or Left Wheel* being regularly

* See Section 22.

given,

given, and followed by the word *March*, or *Quick March*, according to the time intended to move in; the command *Halt* being pronounced unexpectedly, and without the direction to dress*; as well as the men often displaced,—this latter being absolutely necessary to qualify and render them adequate to act wheresoever they may be posted in a body†.

When in the latter part the performance takes place, the squad standing three deep, each rank should in its turn be made to act in front, in the rear, and in the centre.

The attentions of the instructor, while wheeling forward from the Halt, are—

1st. Prior to his delivering the caution *To the Right* or *Left Wheel*, to observe whether the ranks are properly dressed, and the men of the rear ranks cover their file leaders.

2d. That, at the above caution, the pivot men face regularly, performing the two motions; and that at the same the men of the centre rank likewise take a short step, and those of the rear rank two short steps, to lock up, performing this altogether, no motion being perceived after the short step or steps to the front have been taken.

3d. At the command *March*, to see that the whole, with the only exception of the outward wheeling man, glance their eyes to the wheeling flank, and that he, as well as the rest, step off together in the ordered time.

4th. To notice whether the outward wheeling flank

* The reason which, at the drill, has induced to recommend the giving of the command *Halt*, at the conclusion of the wheel, without the word *Dress*, has been adduced in Sec. 22.

† It is obvious that, to qualify the men to act wherever they may be posted in a body, it is required in the practice of the movements, and particularly the wheeling, often to displace them in the situation they stand in the line, as well as to place them successively in every rank the body is composed of.

 man

man look inwards, lengthen his pace to thirty-three inches, and, in conducting the movement, trace out the true circular he is to go over, without opening from or closing upon the pivot.

5th. To be careful that the directions respecting the dressing be duly attended to; that all opening out from the standing flank be instantly rectified; and that any attempt to close upon the pivot meet with its proper resistance*.

6th. To prevent the men from stooping forward, from opening out the arms†, and casting down the eyes, which latter is not only the identical error men are most apt to fall into while wheeling, but also the one most likely to prevent regularity and dress in the movement.

7th. That the pivot man, every time the rank passes his line of dress, face regularly the quarter circle, performing the two motions.

8th. To observe carefully whether the rear rank men, during the wheel, incline so as to cover their front file leaders, and keep well locked up.

9th. To see, at the word *Halt*‡, that this direction be instantly obeyed, without any jumping forward taking place; and that no attempt at correction, nor any false motion be made, after the Halt is effected.

---

* How very essential it is in the men to be strictly observant of the rule which enjoins that all pressure upon the standing flank must be duly resisted, is fully displayed, Note*, Sec. 22.

† The men cannot be sufficiently guarded against the false habit which, while wheeling, is contracted by a number, viz. of opening the arm whenever their neighbour of the wheeling side inclines towards the outward flank; which, far from assisting the movement, and preserving the union in it, as they erroneously imagine, will, as has been already observed, by causing the person who is erring to feel the touch of his arm as he did before, debar him of the only means he has to find out that he is deviating from his direction of march, and consequently tend to his persisting in his mistake.

‡ See Sec. 22, page 67.

10th.

10th. To notice whether the part of the circle described has been moved over by its proper number of paces*; and when the wheelings are to be executed in their appropriate time of 120 steps in a minute, whether this cadence is duly observed.

S. 46. *Wheeling Backwards.*

In wheeling backwards the rear ranks do not lock up, but preserve their natural distance of one pace asunder. At the hearing of the caution, therefore, no person moves but the pivot man who faces inwards,—(the manner in which he invariably changes front whenever the movement is performed to the rear).

On the same principle as that described in the preceding section for the instruction of the wheeling forward the squad must likewise be trained to wheel to the rear, and successively directed, first on a single rank, and then three deep to practise this movement on either flank in the methodical manner †, at the words *Right, Left,* step by step, a momentary halt taking place after the performing of each, in the ordinary and in the quickest movement, the caution *On your Right* or *Left backwards Wheel* being given, as well as the words *March* or *Quick March,* and the directions to deliver the word *Halt* singly, to dress from wheeling flank ‡, often to displace the men in the post they occupy in the rank, and to remove them from one rank to another, being attended to as heretofore. The skip, now opened at thirty-three inches,

---

* As many paces as there are men in the front rank are requisite to perform the quarter of the circle; four times that number, consequently, complete the circle. See Note*, Sec, 22. p. 68.

† See Section 24.

‡ Section 24, and notes page 75 of the same.

is also to be regularly applied by the orderly on the paces taken by the outward wheeling man.

The prevailing faults, while wheeling by the back step, are, hurrying the pace, looking down, and shortening the step. These should therefore be carefully avoided; and as the latter error chiefly arises from the fear the men entertain, when performing this movement on several ranks, of treading on the toes of those placed in the rear, or of kicking them, this apprehension will in a great measure be removed by their being shewn the improbability of their ever meeting or coming in contact with those posted behind them, and by explaining to them that the feet of the men belonging to a file are constantly preserved at the distance of thirty inches (at which pace they started) by the corresponding leg of each man being at the same time brought to the rear.

The attentions of the instructor, in wheeling backwards, appear to be—

1st. To observe, before he delivers the caution, whether the line is dressed, and the rear ranks cover exactly.

2d. At the caution, that the pivot man faces inwards, performing the prescribed motions, and repeats the same every time that the rank of men who wheel pass his line of dress.

3d. To see that, at the command *March*, and not before, the eyes are glanced to the wheeling flank.

4th. To remark whether the outside wheeling flank man steps out at true length (thirty-three inches), and looks inwards; and whether he describes the arc intended, without opening out or crowding upon the pivot.

5th. That the light touch of the arm on the pivot side be not relinquished; and, should any of the men incline to the wheeling flank, that without opening the arm, his pivot neighbour suffers him to go off.

6th. To see that all pressure upon the pivot is strongly resisted.

7th.

7th. To prevent the men from looking down, stooping forward, and hurrying the step; these, as well as shortening the pace, being the faults the soldiers are most liable to commit, while wheeling to the rear.

8th. To notice if the part of the circle traced out was described by its proper number of paces; and, when the movement is performed in the wheeling time, if the cadence of 120 steps in a minute has been duly observed or not.

9th. To keep in view the preservation of the dress.

10th. At the word *Halt*, the whole remain perfectly steady, keeping their eyes fixed to the wheeling flank, until differently ordered by the command *Eyes Front*, or *Dress*, should this latter be given from the pivot.

S. 47. Wheeling to the Rear by Facing About.

THIS movement, which places a body in the very position it would have stood in had it wheeled backwards*, is particularly recommended by the Regulations to be substituted for it whenever the front of a division which is to wheel exceeds sixteen or eighteen files and the ground is uneven, the stepping to the rear becoming, under these circumstances, rather of precarious execution. However, as this method of wheeling is in every respect similar to that performed to the front, and differs from it only by the facing about which precedes and concludes it, as well as by the rear rank instead of the front one leading while in motion, there appears but little utility for its being practised in any other cadence than the quickest time, and it may therefore at once be thus performed, the squad standing first on a single rank, and then placed

---

* See Section 25.

three

three deep; in which latter case, however, each rank should in turn be placed in front, in the centre, and in the rear.

This movement is performed as follows:—

At the command *Right about Face* the whole face about, executing the three motions at the cautions To the Right or Left Wheel (by which the present right or left is understood)*. The pivot man faces inwards, and all the others remain steady, waiting for the word *March* to glance their eyes to the wheeling flank, and step off together. At the commands *Halt Front Dress*, which are given without any pause being made between the words, the whole instantly halt, face about regularly, and dress on the pivot.

The attentions of the person who drills, in the present movement, exclusive of those recommended while wheeling, are—

1st. That, in facing about, the three motions be properly performed.

2d. That, at the command *Halt Front Dress*, (which ought to be given without any pause being left between them), the whole, except the pivot man, who has already faced into the proper front, instantly halt, and face about to the right, and not to the left, which some are apt to do, and has a very awkward appearance.

S. 48. *Wheeling from the March on a Halted Pivot.*

A SQUARE or oblong of twenty, thirty, or forty paces, being marked out as described Section 23, the

---

*It would perhaps add to perspicuity in this, as well as in all instances where the front rank leads, to join the word *present* to the word right or left every time those commands are expressed; and accordingly instead of the direction to the *Right* and to the *Left Wheel*, to give the words *To the present Right* and *To the present Left Wheel.*

squad,

squad, both in the ordinary as well as in the quick movement, will be moved along the same, first on a single rank, and afterwards three deep, and in either cases so as to cause the wheels to be performed both to the right as well as to the left, the sides of the square being in order to ascertain if they are taken in their true number of steps frequently marched over in the common pace, and this at other times deviated from the directions to *Step out*, to *Step short*, *Mark Time*, *Change Feet*, being unexpectedly given while in motion and obeyed accordingly, the direction respecting the fixing of the eyes to the pivot flank at their delivery as well as when the ordinary step is resumed by the word forward or ordinary being carefully attended to *.

During the performance of this movement particular care is to be bestowed in seeing, at the command *Halt Left Wheel*, the pivot man halting properly by bringing the rear foot up and next to the advanced one, and instantly after he has done so face outwards performing the two motions, while the others turning their eyes to the wheeling flank change their steps at once into the quickest or wheeling pace, and move round without displaying any appearance of hurry; this, as well as the taking of too long a pace by those near the pivot, and the advancing of the inward shoulder, being the three faults the soldiers are most liable to in wheeling on the march; and whereas the two first are chiefly caused by the men considering the time appropriated insufficient for the performance of this movement †, the person who drills must carefully counteract this opinion

---

* See Note †, Sect. 38, page 128.

† This will particularly appear when in column the direction of march is altered by the successive wheel of its divisions, and where the men will discover an extreme hurry in going round to complete the intended change, from an apprehension of their not being able to perform it in time, and before the division in their rear comes up.

by

by explaining to them that the time gained by the accelerated pace here made use of will enable the outward flank man to pass over the circular line he is to trace out within the time prescribed *. He must also render it obvious to those placed near to the pivot, that, were this even not the case, and the time so gained was inefficient, their stepping into the new line at once would in no way obviate that defect, as no advance can possibly take place until the wheeling flank has entered the new alignement, and therefore their bulking out would, on the contrary, rather tend to retard the movement, both by the irregular influence their moving forward out of the line of dress must necessarily have on the whole, as well as by the greater proportion of the circumference to that at first designed, which this improper advance will probably compel the wheeling man to describe for the completion of the wheel.

Those wheels should likewise be performed on a single rank as well as three deep, the command *Halt* being pronounced at times unknown, and when either more or less than a fourth of the circle is gone over.

The orderly, beside the directions he may occasionally receive, will, during the above practice, behave

* It has already been observed (Note *, Sect. 23, p. 72), that, in a column proceeding in the quick time, the degree of celerity acquired by the wheeling cadence is inadequate to enable a front division to perform the quarter wheel within the coming up of a division immediately placed in its rear; and therefore, to obviate the unnecessary delay which this would naturally occasion, absolutely requisite to effect those alterations in the directions of the march at a quicker rate than this prescribed of 120 steps in a minute, but, however accelerated this pace may and even requires to be, it must not, on any account, be increased to a run, which is never necessary, and would, besides, promote unsteadiness, as well as prove the means of prolonging the movement by the confusion and disorder it would unavoidably produce.

in the manner he did before, and assist in applying the skip as well as counting the number of paces in which the wheels are effected and the sides of the square moved over, when the latter are performed by the common pace of thirty inches.

The attentions in the instructor are the same as those already enumerated when wheeling forward, additional care being, however, necessary.

1st. That no running take place at the wheeling flank; that those near the pivot do not take their paces too long; and that the inward shoulder be not brought to the front.

2d. To see that the whole, on the command being given, immediately and together change their pace into the wheeling cadence, the outward wheeling man stepping out thirty-three inches, and the line keeping dressed by him while in motion.

S. 49. *Wheeling on a Moveable Pivot.*

THE squad on a single rank, as well as three deep, is to be trained to these wheels, as explained in Sect. 26, and consequently made successively to perform this movement in the methodical mode, in the ordinary and in quick time, the right as well as the left conducting the motion, and in each of these latter cases the leading flank tracing out the larger as well as the smaller arc, all those being circumstances the wheelings on a moveable pivot are liable to in their execution. The principles of this movement, as well as the rules deduced from them, being already unfolded and displayed*, it will only be necessary to observe here, that as the time of march is never altered by this description of wheel, the pivot, whether it de-

* See Sect. 26.

scribes

scribes the larger or the smaller circle, is without either deviating from the pace of thirty inches or the cadence he was moving in before, gradually to bring round the whole of the men, who, while in motion, are all guided by him, and, either by lengthening or shortening their paces, keep in dress.

Attentions of the Instructor, while performing the Wheels on a Moveable Pivot.

1st. To observe, previous to his delivering the command by which the movement is to commence, whether the body be moving in its true direction of march, and if it be properly dressed.

2d. That, at the command *Right* or *Left Shoulder forward*, the directed one be brought to the front, and kept in that position the whole of the time the movement occupies, and until the word *Forward* is heard.

3d. To keep in view and observe that the pivot or leading flank man steps over the intended arc without altering the time or pace he was moving on before; and that, if describing the smaller circle, he be not too abrupt in the transition from one position to another, which would cause hurrying among the men of the opposite flank.

4th. To observe whether the front rank is properly dressed, and whether the men of the rear ranks keep up, and cover their file leaders correctly during the whole of the movement.

5th. To prevent, while in motion, any opening out from the pivot, or crowding upon it.

6th. To see that at the word Forward, the shoulders are brought square to the front, and the direct march resumed without any alteration taking place in the cadence, every individual stepping out the ordinary pace of thirty inches.

It has already been remarked, that, on account of the advanced position of the shoulders, the person who drills should, during the performance of those wheels,

wheels, generally post himself rather outwards, and to the front of the leading flank, this being the position from which he can the most readily discover a mistake, and most accurately correct it.

S. 50. *Stepping out, Stepping short, Marking the Time, Changing the Feet, the Side Step, Stepping back.*

THE squad should likewise be practised, in the manner described at the drill*, to step out, step short, mark time, change feet, perform the close or side step, and step back, the various directions there deemed being scrupulously adhered to.

Conclusion.

FROM the responsibility invested in the adjutant, respecting the drill of the recruits, it is easily inferred that his presence will not only be often required to superintend and guide this very material branch of the service, but also that no recruit should ever be handed over to his company as a soldier before he is deemed qualified by him to act in the battalion. Hence, when a recruit or several of them have undergone the whole of the foregoing instructions, and are reported fit to join the ranks he will follow a few questions (so as to ascertain if they have been properly imparted with the rules and thoroughly grounded in the principles of the movements†) by

---

* See Sect. 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, and 17.

† The recruits are, in general, not sufficiently made acquainted at the drill with the nature and principles of the movement, a circumstance which cannot fail considerably to retard their progress, as it is obvious that the exhibiting of the reasons of every direction and attention recommended to the soldier

ordering

ordering a number of well-trained soldiers sufficient to form, with the recruit or recruits reported fit for duty, a drill squad of sixteen or eighteen files or upwards; and, when thus assembled, he will direct the same successively to go through the different motions of the manual and platoon exercise, the firings, as well as the whole of the movements taught before*; and observe, while they are thus performing, whether the individual or individuals so reported are in every respect sufficiently conversant in their exercise to be dismissed from the squad, or not, that, in the latter case, they may be drilled in the part in which they appeared deficient, or, were the mistakes committed merely resulting from inattention, that they may be admonished according to the nature of their offence, but on no account is the adjutant ever to permit an indifferently trained soldier to join the battalion; this would equally prevent his ever attaining any perfection, and prove extremely hurtful to the performance of the movements, where even the errors of a single individual operate; and there-

---

in the performance of his exercise must doubly tend to impress the rule deeply on their mind, and, by displaying its utility, greatly promote its observance. Although this has been carefully attended to in the foregoing, and every rule advanced has always been duly supported, still, in order more strongly to obviate any ignorance of the men on that very head, a few questions have been selected, which are printed at the end of this volume, and which, being immediately connected with the duties of a soldier when in the ranks, should be frequently put to the men, and answered by them. This method, by rendering the soldiers familiar with the mode in which they are to behave on every occasion, and during the execution of every movement, would probably avoid a great deal of trouble and drilling.

* It is evident that, in the above practice of the movements, the various assistances and modes already pointed out at their instruction, viz. the moving on a ground previously measured; the giving of six or seven strong strokes of the drum, so as to precede the word *March*; the frequent applying of the skip, &c.; are to be made use of as before.

fore,

fore, if repeated, cannot fail of becoming of serious influence.

R. R. Part I. *S.* 40.—" It cannot be too strongly " inculcated, or too often recollected, that upon the " correct equality of march, established and prac- " tised by all the troops of the same army, every just " movement and manœuvre depends. When this is " not attended to, disunion and confusion most ne- " cessarily take place on the junction of several bat- " talions in corps, although, when taken individually, " each may be in most respects well trained. It is " in the original instruction of the recruit and squad " that this great point is to be laboured at and at- " tained*."

The means recommended by the Regulations to acquire this perfection have already been fully explained, and are, as far as it relates, the length of step, the marching over a ground previously paced, the posting of a well-drilled soldier a-head and advanced in front to guide the whole, as well as the frequent application of the skip while in motion; which latter, although not pointed out by authority, is now almost universally made use of by every British regiment of infantry. As to the time, it is obtained by

---

*The considerable importance of this equality of march is still further illustrated in the same book (2 and 3, Sect. 79) by the following:—" To the equal and unvaried cadence and " length of step thus attained can [illegible] alone trust for the " preservation of their line in advancing upon an enemy, when " dust, the smoke of artillery, rain, fog, and many other local " circumstances, make it impossible to depend on distant points, " the uncertain time given by timid musicians, or any other " adventitious help.

" A company or division may occasionally run, a battalion " may sometimes march quick: but the hurrying of a large " column, or of a body moving in front, will certainly produce " confusion and disorder. It is never to be risked when an " enemy is in presence and to be encountered; though it may " sometimes be necessary where a post or situation is to be " seized."

frequent

frequent reference to the plummet, directed to be constantly in the hand of the driller, the delivering of the words *Right*, *Left*, and so as to imprint the true time on the ear of the men, and prepare them to step off in the regular cadence at the word *March*; to precede this command by the giving of five or six strong taps of the drum, regulated by a plummet. However, were the method proposed sec. 9. page 24, approved of in addition to the foregoing, great advantage would probably result from the recruits being regularly trained as there mentioned about twice a week, while attached to the drill, and under the hands of the adjutant, as well as by having the same afterwards continued in the battalion, each company, or two at a time, being in that case directed in succession to go through this exercise about once or twice a month.

An observation which appears properly to belong to the drill, and which will conclude this subject, is the peculiar notice so very essential in all instructors or commanders during the exercise, to see the eyes of the men always properly directed, the preservation of the line as well as the execution of almost every movement chiefly depending on this most important object, which, besides, will also prove perhaps the best means of discovering the degree of attention paid by the individual to his exercise. A soldier who looks to the right or to the front, when he ought to have glanced his eyes to the left, may be either deficient in principles or unwillingly commit a mistake (and a mistake we are all liable to); but a soldier who looks down is neglectful of his duty, and displays an indifference about it, which is highly reprehensible, and demands immediate correction.

PART II.

PART II.

Drill of the Platoon or Company.

THE manœuvres of a battalion being seldom performed by the whole acting as a single body, but more frequently effected by the separate movements of its divisions, great advantage must naturally result from having the men drilled together by platoons to those different movements. The captain, therefore, as the person responsible for his company, is invariably to order it out at least once a week, for the purpose of being thus trained. However, as the practice of the platoon to the field-exercise of the battalion is not the only advantage to be derived from drilling in company, its utility also extending to the grand object of confirming the men in their former instruction, as well as to finding out and correcting the false habits they insensibly and constantly contract while acting in the battalion *,—to attain those several objects it should take place occasionally without as well as with arms, and, in either case, the whole being frequently drilled in a body together, and at other times divided into as many squads as the number of non-commissioned officers will admit, the

* The men, unless narrowly watched while acting in battalion, will insensibly contract false habits, and become unsteady, so that how useful soever and even indispensable the battalion exercise may be, it would nevertheless become in some respects prejudicial if not properly tempered by the Company Drill here alluded to.

number

number allotted to each being, however, in the latter case, never less than six or seven, when the company, either with or without arms, is thus divided between the non-commissioned officers, the purport of the drill being a repetition of the motions and movements taught before at the drill of the recruit, they should be performed in the order and in the manner there laid down; the different modes of instruction as well as the attentions recommended both to the driller and the recruit being likewise strictly attended to. This drill should generally conclude by twenty, thirty, or even the whole company, being brought on a single rank, and thus directed, when without arms, to repeat the several movements, and, when with arms, to go through the motions of the manual and platoon exercise, as well as the firings, performing the two latter successively as a front, a centre, and a rear rank.

During the above exercise the captain, as well as his subalterns, is to pay every attention to the men and to the non-commissioned officers, and to see whether the latter are exact in their instruction, precise in their word of command, and both alert in discovering the mistakes as well as true in their correction; supplying their want of knowledge, should any of them prove inadequate to the task here required from him, and either deficient in the part he was to teach, or incapable of adducing the true reason in support of the principle.

The immediate object of the company's drill, when assembled together with or without arms, is the practice of the movement required from a platoon in the field-exercise of the battalion *, the description of which, as well as the mode of instruction, are compre-

* The order in which the movements might be practised at those drills is mentioned at cap. 2. Sec. 31. The exercise of the company.

hended

hended in what follows, under the head of the drill of the Platoon or Company *.

Although in this latter exercise of the company movements the captain is generally expected to give the words, and his subalterns supposed to act in the ranks, the elder as platoon commander †, and the others as supernumeraries ‡, this common routine should, however, be frequently departed from, and each company officer in his turn be made to act on the flank, as well as to deliver the commands, and manœuvre the company; and also, while standing out of the ranks, to assist both in detecting and correcting the mistakes which may occur during the performance of the movements, these being duties which every officer is supposed capable of, and therefore demand the immediate attention of each as well as his being practised in them. Should a subaltern appear deficient in any of the foregoing, the blame must unavoidably be attached to his captain, who either neglected to bestow the proper care for improving him in his duty, or omitted to report him on those occasions where his want of knowledge was evidently the result of inapplication, or owing to his incapability or unwillingness to receive instruction.

---

* When the whole of the company is exercised together without arms, in order to accustom the men to the upright carriage, they may occasionally be directed to take their ramrods and to hold them firmly in a perpendicular direction, the tops upwards, so that the heads may touch the smaller part, and be kept steady against it, both hands grasping the thick end, and pressing it against the small of the back.

† The platoon officer or commander is a military expression, by which is understood the officer who, in the field-exercise of the battalion, has charge of a platoon or company, and is answerable for it. When in line, he stands on the right of his company

‡ Supernumeraries are called the officers and non-commissioned officers who are posted behind the company to assist the platoon commander in preserving order and regularity amongst the men, and more particularly amongst those of the rear ranks.

In

In the course of the company's exercise, should a private appear deficient in any of the rules respecting the movements taught at the instruction of the recruits, he is to be directed to attend the drill squad; and, in addition to this, ordered to perform every duty expected from him as a soldier in the company, from which his imperfection in discipline should never excuse him after he has been once permitted to join the ranks.

S. 2. *Formation of the Company, or Platoon.*

R. R. Part II. *S.* 41.—" THE platoon falls in, in " three ranks, at close order, with shouldered firelocks; " the files lightly touching, but without crowding. " Each man will then occupy a space of about twenty- " two inches."

The tallest men are generally placed in the front rank, the next in size in the rear rank, and the shortest in the centre, and each rank sized from flank to centre*.

---

* An exact size-roll of the company being made out, beginning by the shortest, he is placed in the centre, the next taller than him posted on his right, the next above him on his left, and so alternately on the right and on the left till the whole are brought in a rank entire, the tallest being of course posted on the flanks. The rank is then told off into six divisions (*fig.* 31) of which the first and sixth form the front rank, those of the second and fifth the rear rank, and the centre divisions the centre rank. When every thing is thus prepared, and the men apprized to what rank they are to belong, the company will be placed three deep by the following commands—*Two Centre Divisions stand fast, first and sixth one pace to the front,* and *second and fifth Divisions one pace to the rear, March;* and, as soon as this is performed, *Inwards face;* at which the

" The

"The platoon will be told off into two sub-divi-
" sions, and, if of sufficient strength, into four sections;
" but as a section should never be less than five files,
" it will often happen, that, for the purposes of march,
" three sections only can be formed."

Part III. *Formation of the Company*.—" The left
" of the front rank of each subdivision is marked by
" a corporal; the right of the left subdivision may be
" marked by the other corporal *;". (*S*. 41. *Part* II.)
" and, in their absence, intelligent men are to be
" placed in the front rank on the right and left of each
" subdivision."

" *Part* III. *Formation of the Company*.—" When
" the company is singly formed the captain or officer
" commanding the same is on the right † and the ensign
" on the left of the front rank, each covered by a ser-
" jeant in the rear rank; the lieutenant is in the rear, as
" also the drummer and pioneer in a fourth rank, at
" three paces distance.

" When necessary, the place of absent officers may
" be supplied by serjeants, those of serjeants by cor-
" porals, and those of corporals by intelligent men.

---

whole, except the two centre divisions, face inwards, and move on at the commands *Quick March* until the half ranks join, when they receive the words *Halt, Front, Dress*.

The company is now formed three deep, the front rank consisting of the tallest men, the rear rank of those next in size, and the centre one of the lowest, and each rank sized from the right and left towards the centre.

* When only one corporal is present, he is generally posted on the left of the company; if there are two, the left of each subdivision may be marked by one; a third corporal is directed by the regulations to be on the right of the second or left subdivision; and when a fourth is present he may be brought to act on the right of the whole.

† It is obvious that the person who gives the words in the company exercise, and represents the battalion commander, is never to fall in and act as platoon officer; this expunged would both divert his attention and prevent bestowing the proper care to his men.

" When

" When the company is to join others, and the bat-
" talion, or part of it, to be formed, the ensign and his
" covering serjeant quit the flank, and fall into the
" fourth rank, until otherwise placed."

The company is at all times to form in the manner above described, whether in the battalion or acting singly:—however, when at the drill, and for the purpose of instruction, some deviations from the above arrangements appear occasionally necessary; and, for the purpose of perfecting the men in the several duties expected from them, it will be highly proper, without any regard to size, often to displace and post them successively in each rank, as well as on the flank of the subdivisions, where, during the exercise, they may be frequently called to supply the places of the corporals.

S. 3. *Company taking Open and Close Order.*

Part II. *S.* 41. *Formation of the Platoon.*—" Close
" order is the chief and primary order in which the
" battalion and its parts, at all times assemble and
" form (*Part* III. *Formation of the Company*); open
" order is only regarded as an exception from it, and
" occasionally used in situations of parade and show.
" In close order the officers are in the ranks, and the
" ranks are close up within one pace;" the length of which is to be taken fram the heels of one rank to the heels of the next rank.—" In open order the officers
" are advanced three paces, and the ranks are two
" paces distant from each other."

To take open Order from the Close.

Part III. *S.* 70.—" At the command *Rear Ranks*
" *take Open Order* the flank men on the right and
" left of the rear ranks step back to mark the ground
" on

" on which each rank respectively is to halt and dress " at open distance; they face to the right, and stand " covered: every other individual remains ready to " move." Officers recover their swords.

" *March.* At this command the rank dressers " front;" and the men of the rear ranks, glancing their eyes to the right, step back together one and two paces, preserving their dress, those of each and the same rank halting all together at the same moment*, " officers move out in front three paces, and divide " their ground †; one serjeant is on each flank of the " front rank:" the non-commissioned officers posted in the supernumerary or fourth rank, as well as the pioneer, step back with the rear rank, so as to preserve their original distance of three paces from it: " the " drummer places himself on the right of the right " serjeant."

From Open take Close Order.

Part III. *S.* 71.—" At the caution *Rear Ranks* " *take Close Order*, officers, serjeants (if in the front " rank), drummer, face to the right, the officers reco- " vering their swords, and the serjeants their pikes, at " the first motion of the facing."

" At the word *March* the ranks close within one " pace, marching one and two paces, and then halt- " ing."

---

* See Sect. 36.

† When the officers at open order are thus advanced three paces in front of the company, the captain or officer commanding the platoon covers the second file from the right; the lieutenant, or second in command, the second file from the left; and the ensign is placed between them, opposite the centre, *fig*. 32. When there are four officers, the two seniors are posted in the manner above explained, and the two juniors divide the ground between them, the senior of the two latter being placed on the right, *fig*. 33. Should a fifth officer be present, he must take post opposite the centre, *fig*. 34, and so on.

" Officers

" Officers move round the flanks of the company in " their respective posts;" those who are placed in the front rank facing regularly to the right about, and bringing their swords in the ordered position in performing the third motion of the facing; " and each " individual resumes his place as in the original close " order."

" The above regards the company when single; but, " when united in the battalion, other posts are allotted " to the drummer and pioneer."

The attentions of the instructor are, while taking open order—

1st. That, at the caution, the officers recover their swords, and the right and left flank men of both the rear ranks fall back one and two paces, bringing, after the performance of the last pace, the advanced foot back to the rear one in the halted position, and, the moment this is assumed that they place the right foot behind the left in the first motion of the right face, and face.

2d. To observe that, with the only exception of the above markers, no motion is perceived amongst the men of the rear ranks.

3d. To see that at the word *March*, the officers advance three paces to the front, and divide the ground; and that those who were placed in the front rank are, on leaving their post, immediately replaced by their covering serjeants.

4th. And at the same command take notice whether the men of the rear ranks glance their eyes to the right, and at once and together step back one and two paces, observing the ordinary cadence; for, were they first to turn their eyes to the right and then to move to the rear, disunion must inevitably occur in the movement.

5th. That after the Open Order has been effected, and the proper number of steps have been performed, no false motions are discovered amongst the men.

6th. To remark if the drummer has posted himself

on

on the right of the serjeant, and if the supernumerary serjeants and pioneer fell back so as to preserve their proper distance of three paces from the rear rank.

When Close Order is Resumed,

1st. To see that, at the delivery of the caution, the officers, serjeants, and drummer, face to the right, performing the two motions; and that while executing the first, the officers recover their swords, and the serjeants (who are in the front rank) their pikes.

2d. To notice whether, at the giving of the same caution, every other individual, except those above mentioned, remains perfectly steady.

3d. That, at the hearing of the word *March*, the men of the rear ranks lock up by taking one or two paces, and remain perfectly still as soon as, after the performance of the last pace, the foot in the rear has been brought up to the advanced one in the halted position.

4th. To observe if the officers, serjeants, and the drummer, have resumed the places they originally occupied at close order; and if the officers posted in the front rank face regularly to the right about, performing the three motions, and replace their swords in the shouldered position while executing the third.

5th. To see that, at the word *March*, the serjeants posted in the supernumerary rank, as well as the pioneer, follow the motion of the rear rank, so as to keep at their proper distance of three paces from it.

S. 4.

Part II. *S.* 41.—" The platoon or company will " then proceed to the dressing to the front, to the rear, " and in an oblique direction, by the right, and by the " left, and be exercised in the several motions of the " firelock, as have been shewn in the preceding part,"

 the

the directions as well as the attentions there prescribed being carefully attended to.

S. 5. *Marching to the Front.*

Part II. *S.* 42.—" In the drill of the platoon the " person instructing must always consider it as a com- " pany in battalion, and regulate all its movements " upon that principle; he will, therefore, before he " puts it in motion to front or rear, indicate which " flank is to direct by giving the word *Eyes Right* or " *Eyes Left*; and then *March*. Should the right be " the directing flank, the commander of the platoon " himself will fix on objects to march upon in a line " truly perpendicular to the front of the platoon; " and, when the left flank is ordered to direct, he and " his covering serjeant will shift to the left of the front " rank, and take such objects to march upon. To " march on one object only, and to preserve a straight " line, is an operation not to be depended on; the " conductor of the platoon, before the word *March* is " given, will therefore endeavour to remark some dis- " tinct object on the ground, in his own front, and " perpendicular to the directing flank; he will then " observe some nearer and intermediate point in the " same line, such as a stone, tuft of grass, &c.; these " he will move upon with accuracy; and, as he ap- " proaches the nearest of those points, he must from " time to time choose fresh ones in the original di- " rection, which he will by this means preserve, never " having fewer than two such points to move upon. " If no object in the true line can be ascertained, his " own squareness of the person must determine the " direction of march.

" A person placed in the rear of a body can, more " readily than if placed in its front, determine the

" line

" line which is perpendicular to such front; and could " we suppose ranks and files most perfectly correct, " the prolongation of each file would be a perpendicular to the front of the body. As the march of " every body, except in the case of inclining, is made " on lines perpendicular to its then front, each individual composing that body must in his person be " placed, and remain, perfectly square to the given " line; otherwise he will naturally and insensibly " move in a direction perpendicular to his own person, " and thereby open out, or close in, according to the " manner in which he is turned from the true point " of his march. If the distortion of a single man " operates in this manner, and all turnings of the head " do so distort him, it may be easily imagined what " that of several will occasion, each of whom is marching on a different front, and whose lines of direction " are crossing each other." This at once points out the constant attention which is requisite in every individual while marching, as well as the special attention which it becomes incumbent on the instructor to bestow, to see the proper position of the heads to the front, as well as the directions respecting the turnings of the eyes, as mentioned in the foregoing, carefully observed; and also the absolute necessity for his deeply impressing on the minds of the men, and conveying to them in the strongest manner, that it is not by the continual turning of the head, but by the squareness of position, accuracy in the cadence, length of pace, as well as the light touch of the arm and the elbow, which is never to be relinquished, that soldiers are to depend for their dress and most decisive exactness in the marches, as well as operations of the largest bodies.

The attentions of the instructor, while marching, are—

 When

When the March is to the Front,

1st. To see, before he directs the company to move, whether it is properly dressed; whether the ranks cover, the arms are carried; and whether every man stands in his proper position.

2d. At the caution *The Company will advance*, that the rear ranks lock up in the manner directed, no false motion being discoverable as soon as it is effected by the taking of the last pace.

3d. To take due notice, at the delivery of the word *March*, to see that the advance is prepared by the body leaning somewhat forward, and the first step taken with the left foot at full length without stamping.

4th. To observe that the rear ranks, during the advance, keep properly locked up, every individual covering exactly his file leader.

5th. That while in motion, the true cadence, as well as the proper length of step (thirty inches), be preserved throughout.

When the instructor is posted in front, he is particularly to observe,

6th. Whether the feet are brought flat on the ground without noise, the toe a little before the heels, and so that the shoe-soles may not be seen by a person standing in front.

7th. If the men step well out from the haunches, the body following the movement of the leg and thigh.

8th. That the proper position of the heads to the front be duly preserved, the eyes being only cast to the dressing point, with the least turn of the head possible, at the giving of the word *March*, during the performance of the three or four first paces after its delivery, and occasionally, and when the individual does not feel his arm on the leading flank side touched in the manner he did before.

9th.

9th. That, with the exceptions of the cases above mentioned, and at the hearing of a command which alters the nature of the pace, when the men are likewise to direct their looks to the guiding flank, eyes are at all other times constantly kept to the front, which is the natural position of the soldier while in motion as well as while halting, and that on no account they cast their eyes down, which latter fault is both very prevalent amongst the men, and particularly subversive of all order and regularity on the march.

10th. Whether every man, without any constraint in his position, keeps his body and shoulders square to the front.

11th. That the elbows be kept steady against the body, without closing too near or opening out from it.

12th. Whether, while moving to the front or to the rear, the lining is accurately kept.

When behind the Body.

13th. From behind the driller will soonest discover the advance or leaning back of a shoulder, which, when observed, demands to be instantly rectified.

14th. From behind the leading flank file it is also best ascertained if the true direction of march be pursued, by observing whether this file keeps its perpendicular direction with the objects ordered to be moved on.

When Marching the Rear Rank in Front.

15th. To notice, at the delivery of the caution, *The Company will retire*, if the whole remain perfectly still.

16th. To see that, at the command to face about, the facings are performed, as directed, in three motions.

17th. That the natural distance of a pace between the ranks is duly preserved, rear ranks never locking up when the line retires with its rear in front.

18th.

18th. To prevent the men of the rear rank, when it leads the movement, from closing nearer to each other than they originally stood when they faced about, otherwise a crowding would indubitably occur amongst those of the front rank (generally of a larger size) when the natural front comes to be resumed by the words *Halt, Front, Dress.* The remaining attentions are the same as those already enumerated for the march to the front, and where the front rank leads.

Attentions on the Halt.

19th. That, at the word *Halt,* the step which was taken be finished at full length and in true time, and that no motion whatsoever be observed after the foot in the rear is brought up to the advanced one.

20th. To see that no individual attempts to rectify his position in the line before the command *Dress* is given.

21st. To notice, when the company retires, the rear rank leading, that at the word *Halt, Front,* the men instantly halt, face about to the right, and remain steady, waiting for the word *Dress* to line themselves, should this correction be required.

S. 6. *Different Kinds of Step.*

"The platoon, during its march in line, will occa-"sionally be ordered to Step out, Mark Time, Step "short, Change Feet, as well as open and close the "Ranks;" the directions and attentions already recommended at the drill, both to the teacher as well as the recruit, being carefully attended to; the step which was taking, at the hearing of a command which alters the nature of the step, being finished in the mode proceeded in before; and eyes glanced at every change

change in the pace to the dressing point until the degree of steadiness will again permit * their being brought to the front, the habitual position of the soldier †.

S. 7. *The Side Step.*

THE principles as well as the application of this step being already explained in Sect. 16, Part 1st, it will only be necessary here to add the mode in which a platoon or company closes to a flank by this step, which is as follows:—

At the word *To the Right Close*, the platoon officer takes a step to the front with the left foot, and, bringing his right one up to it, instantly places it again behind the left in the first motion of the right-about face, and faces, performing the three motions. The covering serjeant replaces him in the front rank by advancing one or two paces. On the word *March*,

---

* Should it be necessary for a body to step out, step short, or mark time for any lengthened period, the eyes, on such an occasion, need not be constantly kept to the directing flank; but, after taking the third or fourth pace, they may be brought to the front till the word *Ordinary* or *Forward* is heard, when they are again, during the performance of the three or four first paces, to be glanced to the dressing point, so as to prevent the disorder and waving which, without this precaution, would occur in a line every time the common pace was deviated from.

† It is manifestly obvious that in the present practice of the company to the march to the front, as well as to the movements explained in the following, the various means made use of at the drill, viz., the application of the skip, counting the steps taken on a ground previously measured, vibrating the plummet to direct the time, &c., must be resorted to as heretofore, and employed in the modes described at the instructions of the recruit.

the

the whole, looking to the officer who faces them, and taking the step from him, move together, agreeably to the directions explained in the Section above alluded to. On the word *Halt*, the platoon officer, who has stepped with his men (but to the contrary hand *, and so as to remain opposite the post he is to occupy in the line), resumes his place in the ranks by taking a step to the front, and facing regularly to the right about; the covering serjeant at the same time falls back one or two paces into his former position in the rear rank †.

The instructor's attentions, during the performance of the closing step, are—

1st. To see that, at the delivery of the caution, the platoon officer takes a step to the front, and faces regularly to the right about, performing the three motions; that the covering serjeant replaces his officer in the front rank; and that every other man remains perfectly steady.

2d. That the steps be performed as directed without bending the knees too much, the outward foot being immediately brought up next to the inward the instant it is placed, and that the distance gained after the taking of each pace be exactly twelve inches.

---

* The platoon officer, on account of his facing the line, is always to close to the contrary hand the men do, viz., to the right when they close to the left, and to the left when they close to the right.

† In most regiments, when, for the purpose of correcting false distances, the closing step is performed to the left, the platoon commanders shift to that flank, and place themselves opposite the second file from it, this being the most judicious position for giving the word *Halt*, and stopping the movement in proper time. In corps where the platoon officers do not shift, but remain opposite their proper intervals, whether the closing takes place to the right or to the left, eyes should always, during the performance of this pace, be directed to the right.

3d.

3d. To notice whether the ordered pause after each step is properly attended to, so as to cause their being performed in the true cadence, viz., seventy-five in a minute.

4th. To observe, while closing to either flank, if the body moves in the exact prolongation of its original line; and, to obtain this,—

5th. To see the position of the soldier duly preserved, and shoulders kept square to the front. The fault here generally committed is that of advancing the opposite shoulder to the side the inclining takes place to, and to which the men are consequently looking *.

6th. That, at the word *Halt*, the whole remain perfectly still, directing their eyes to the front; and the officers, as well as their covering serjeants, resume their proper post on the flank of the company, the former facing regularly to the right about performing the three motions.

S. 8. *The Back Step.*

Part II. *S.* 44.—" The platoon must be accustomed " from the Halt, at the words *Step back—March*, " to step back any ordered number of paces in the " ordinary time and length, as it is an operation that " may be frequently required from a battalion."

The error which men are most liable to in stepping to the rear being that of shortening the pace, the attention of the driller should be chiefly directed to that particular.

Though the performance of the Back Step in any other cadence than the ordinary is a movement which will seldom or ever occur in line, yet, as those paces

---

* This alludes to the common mode in which this closing step is executed, and where the officer shifts his flank; as otherwise eyes are always preserved to the right, whether the motion is to the right or to the left. See Note †, page 176.

are

are executed in the quickest time, for the purpose of wheeling, they may occasionally be thus practised as a preparative to this movement.

S. 9. *File Marching.*

In marching by files the commander of the platoon is at all times to lead the front rank; therefore, when the movement is to the right, on the command *To the Right Face* he and his covering serjeant face to the right with the rest of the men; but, when the movement is intended to take place to the left, both the officer and serjeant, on the command *To the Left Face,* face to the right about*, and instantly shift, moving behind the rear rank †, to the left flank of the platoon, the officer posting himself ahead of the front rank, and his covering serjeant in front of the men of the rear one. At the word *Quick March,* the whole, in either case, step off together, observing the directions detailed, Part 1st, Sections 21 and 41, the leading officer marching on the points he has provided himself with before he was directed to move. At the words *Halt, Front,* the whole halt and front, the platoon officer and his serjeant

---

* Although there is no proper authority to be adduced in behalf of this practice, of officers and non-commissioned officers facing about on leaving a flank for the purpose of moving to another, this method seems, however, preferable to the common mode, where those changes of positions are performed without this preparative, and gives a steadier appearance to it, particularly when the command by which they are implied is a direction to the men to alter their front by facing to either flank or the right about.

† All changes of position are invariably to take place behind the rear rank; and officers are never to pass in front of their division for the purpose of shifting from one flank to the other.

serjeant behaving like the others when the filing has been to the right; and the leader as well as his serjeant returning to their posts on the right, when it has been to the left.

It is to be observed that, when a single company or platoon marches by files, its commander always leads himself the front rank, and his covering serjeant moves ahead of the men of the rear rank; but, whenever more than one company is to march in files, platoon officers, at the word *Face*, in facing take a side step to the front out of the ranks *, and are replaced in their front rank by their serjeants; which here becomes requisite for the preservation of the line as well as the step. At the command *Halt*, *Front*, officers and serjeants resume their places in the ranks.

The attentions of the instructor, while moving by files, are—

1st. To see the facings properly performed, the officer and covering serjeant changing front with the others when the movement is to the right; and both one and the other facing to the right about, and instantly shifting their flank, when it is to the left.

2d. Always to observe, prior to his pronouncing the word *March*, whether the files cover properly, are at their true distance from each other; and whether the officer has provided himself with his two points-de-vue to march on.

3d. That, at the word *March*, the whole step off together the full length of pace, and continue so to do till the word *Halt* is given.

4th. To be particular in observing that the eyes are properly directed, each man looking straight in the neck of the one immediately before him, and neither to the right nor left, much less to the ground, which latter fault will unavoidably cause an increase of distance,—the great object to be avoided while moving by files.

* R. and R., Part III., Sect. 94.

5th.

5th. To observe whether the men of the centre and rear ranks regulate themselves by their leaders of the front rank, and dress in their file.

6th. To see that the files lock up at their proper distance of twenty-two inches, and keep thus throughout.

7th. That the carriage of the soldier is preserved, and that no leaning back takes place.

8th. To remark if the steps be performed as directed, the knee not being more bent than is customary, when marching in line, and that the foot be brought flat on the ground, the toe before the heel.

9th. To see the true direction of march properly observed.

10th. To notice, whether, at the word *Halt*, the step which was taking is finished in correct time and proper length, without any unnecessary movement or attempt at correction; and, if the words *Halt*, *Front*, have been given, that, after halting, every man faces on the identical spot he halted on, without inclining to either side in order to fill up an improper chasm, which could not have occurred had he been exact in the preservation of his distance while moving by files.

The company, while moving in files, should occasionally be directed to wheel to the right and to the left, the movement being performed as described in Part I., Sec. 42, and the exact length of pace preserved in going round.

S. 10. *Wheeling from the Halt.*

R. R. Part II. *S.* 46.—" In wheeling either for-
" ward or backward from a halt, the commander of the
" platoon, on the word *Right* or *Left Wheel*, moves
" out, and places himself one pace in front of the centre
" of his platoon. During the wheel he turns towards
" his men, and inclines towards that flank which has
" been named as the directing or pivot one, giving
" the words *Halt, Dress*, when his wheeling man has
" just completed the required degree of wheel: he
" then squares his platoon, but without moving what
" was the standing flank, and takes his post on the
" directing flank."

When the company is single, the covering serjeant is, at the caution, to run out, and mark the ground where the wheeling flank is to rest at the conclusion of the wheel, and to remain thus posted till the officer gives the word *Eyes front*, when he either falls back, or shifts his flank so as to cover his platoon commander in the rear rank. When several companies are united, the serjeant of the leading division, which, by the ordered wheel, is to be brought in front of the column, behaves (*R. R. Part* III. *S.* 106.)
" as if the company was single, and places himself
" on the spot where the wheeling flank of his division
" is to halt; those of the other companies fall back two
" paces *.

In wheeling forward the rear ranks lock up, but, in wheeling backwards, they preserve their usual distance of one pace asunder.

---

* Those posts of the covering serjeants in wheeling are only to be understood where the company is alone, or when with others this movement is executed for the purpose of breaking a line into an open column, other places being allotted to them in wheeling into line with several companies. See Part II., Sec. 16.

In

In wheeling from line into open column, whether the movement is to the front or to the rear, the supernumerary rank takes a pace to the front at the delivery of the caution, and a second one as soon as the wheel is concluded, the distance of one pace being only allowed in the open column between the rear and the supernumerary rank.

The attentions in the instructor, when wheeling to the front, are—

1st. To observe, prior to his giving the caution, whether the ranks are exactly dressed, and whether the files cover properly.

2d. That, at the caution, the officer steps one pace in front of his platoon, and the covering serjeant, when the company is single, runs out to mark the ground where the wheeling flank is to rest; and, if performed in battalion, that the covering serjeant of the leading division, behaving as if the company was single, likewise runs out to mark the ground at the caution, while those of the remaining companies fall back two paces, performing this altogether, and at the same time.

3d. To see likewise, at the delivery of the caution, that the pivot man faces regularly, performing the directed two motions; and that the rear ranks lock up, by taking, together and at the same time, one and two short paces to the front, no motion being perceived after the last step by which it is effected has been performed.

4th. To notice if, at the command *March*, the officer faces to his men; and whether the whole step off together, and instantly glance their eyes to the wheeling flank, the outward man of which looks inwards.

5th. To see that the outward wheeling flank man looks inwards, lengthening his pace to thirty-three inches; and that, in conducting the movement, he traces out the exact circular he is to go over, without opening from or closing upon the pivot.

6th.

6th. That the dressing be kept throughout; that no opening out from the pivot takes place; and that all pressure upon the standing point is duly resisted *.

7th. To prevent the men from stooping forward, opening out the arms, and casting down the eyes, which latter defect of position they are strongly inclined to, and which will particularly prove destructive to the preservation of union and dress,—both qualities of considerable importance in wheeling.

8th. To observe whether, during the motion, the rear ranks incline so as to cover the front rank, and keep locked up.

9th. To remark whether the officer inclines towards the proper pivot (in wheeling forward always the wheeling one), and from it gives in proper time the words *Halt, Dress*; and whether, at their delivery, each man halts immediately, and quickly lines himself should this correction be necessary †.

10th. To see that the officer is alert in dressing his platoon or company without moving the standing flank; and that, after he has done so, he give the words *Eyes front* in a moderate tone of voice; when his serjeant should fall back into the rear rank, and he himself take post on the directing or proper pivot flank.

11th. That the supernumerary rank closes up a full pace of thirty inches at the delivery of the caution, and the instant the word *Wheel* is heard; and that, preserving this distance of two paces while going round, at the command *Halt, Dress*, the officer and non-commissioned officers composing the same either perform a step to the front or to the rear, according

---

* See Part I., Sec. 22; Rule 7, and Note *, page 65.

† In wheeling forward the proper pivot flank is always the wheeling one, and therefore that from which the words *Halt, Dress*, are to be given: See Note †, page 184 of this Section.

as,

as, after the conclusion of the movement, they stand in line or in column.

12th. To take particular care that, while moving round, the true cadence of 120 steps in a minute is observed; and that the part of the circle wheeled over is performed by its true number of paces *.

The attentions of the instructor in wheeling backwards are the same as those enumerated where the wheelings take place to the front, except when the movement is performed by the back step.

13th. That, at the caution, the pivot faces inwards instead of outwards; the rear ranks do not lock up, but preserve their common distance of one pace asunder.

14th. That looking down, stooping forward, and shortening as well as hurrying the pace, being the mistakes which most frequently occur when wheeling to the rear by the back step, they claim the special notice of the driller to be carefully repressed.

15th. In wheeling backwards the pivot being always the directing or proper pivot flank, the command *Halt, Dress*, is to be given from it, and every man the instant he halts is to turn his eyes to the same †, and line himself as quickly as possible.

16th. That the officer, without moving the standing flank, after quickly correcting his men, and giving in a moderate tone of voice the words *Eyes front*,

---

* See Part I., Sec. 22, and Note *, page 68 of the same.

† In wheeling backwards the pivot on which the movement is made is always the directing or proper pivot flank, and, of course, that from which the words *Halt, Dress*, should be given, whenever this movement occurs in the exercise of the battalion, and consequently at the drill of the platoon, where the immediate practice of the company to this exercise is intended. The reasons which render it preferable at the drill of the recruit, and in the first instruction of the wheeling backwards, to give the command *Halt* alone, without the word *Dress*, and from the wheeling flank, have already been adduced in Part I., Sec. 24, and Note *, page 75 of the same.

takes

takes post on the proper pivot flank, and the covering serjeant faces to the right about, in order to shift to the other flank, and cover his officer in the rear rank.

In wheeling back the supernumerary rank behaves precisely as when the wheelings are performed to the front.

S. 11. *Wheeling to the Rear by facing to the Right About.*

THE next movement the company is to be practised in is wheeling to the rear by facing to the Right About; therefore, after changing their front, and on the caution *On your Right or Left*, or *Present Right* or *Present Left* Wheel*, the Platoon commander moves out, and places himself one pace behind the front rank (now in the rear); at the word *Quick March* he inclines towards the proper pivot, so as to be ready to give from it the words *Halt, Front, Dress*, the instant the wheeling man takes his last step, which completes the wheel.

The covering serjeant, as in the wheeling to the front, marks the ground where the wheeling flank is to halt when the company is by itself, or, when with others, the division he belongs to is that which by the wheel is to be brought a-head of the column. In the latter case those of the remaining companies, in order to disengage and not interrupt the movement, instead of falling back take two paces to the front, which on account of the present position of the body, faced to the right about, produces the same effect. At the command *Quick March*, those doubling ser-

---

* See Sec. 47, Part I. and Note*, page 152.

jeants

jeants move behind the proper rear rank, so as to be ready at the delivery of the words *Eyes front*, to cover their respective officers.

During the present wheel supernumeraries preserve their distance of three paces from the rear rank; and, after facing to their proper front, take two steps to the front, to close to within one pace of the rear rank, which is the distance prescribed *(M. & P. Att. in Plat. Officers' Supernumeraries)* for the supernumeraries when in open column.

The attentions required in the instructor, exclusive of those mentioned in the foregoing, respecting the commander of the platoon and his covering serjeant, are laid down in Part I., Sec. 25 and 47.

S. 12. *Wheeling forward by Subdivisions from Line.*

R. R. Part II. *S.* 47.—" ON the caution *By Sub-*" *divisions to the Right Wheel*, the commander of the " platoon places himself one pace in front of the centre " of the right subdivsion; at the same time the men " on the right of the front rank of each subdivision * " face to the right, which is outwards, the wheel being " to the front."

---

* Each company or platoon is parted into two subdivisions (or half a company) and four sections; but, as sections should never be less than five files when the companies are weak they can only (for the purpose of march) be divided into three sections, or even into two, in which latter case, however, a section and a subdivision become the same, viz., the half of a company.

" At

"At the word *Quick March* *, each subdivision steps
" off in wheeling time, observing the directions given
" before. The commander of the platoon, turning
" towards the men of the leading subdivision, and
" inclining to its left (the proper pivot flank), gives
" the words *Halt, Dress,* for both subdivisions, as
" his wheeling man is taking the last step that
" finishes the wheel square; and instantly posts him-
" self on the left, the pivot flank. The serjeant
" coverer during the wheel goes round by the rear;
" and (when the wheel is completed, after the words
Halt, Dress, have been given, and not before) " he
" takes post on the pivot flank of the second sub-
" division. It is to be observed that the commander
" of the platoon invariably takes post with the lead-
" ing subdivision; therefore, when the platoon wheels
" by subdivisions to the left, the commander of the
" platoon moves out to the centre of the left sub-
" division, and during the wheel inclines towards the
" right, now become the proper pivot flanks of the
" subdivisions."

It is a general rule that whenever a company wheels by subdivisions from line into column, or from column into line, these movements are always to be executed on the words of the officer commanding the battalion, when it is performed by battalion, or the officer commanding the company, when the company is single; and never to be repeated by the leader of its several divisions, who are only to take post after the wheel is completed. However, when the company breaks into open column of subdivisions or sections, it may be permitted, after the officer commanding has given the words *Halt, Dress,* for the whole, to the officers and serjeants posted on the other divisions to line them;

* Although the word *March* is given alone in the Rules and Regulations, and without being preceded by the word *Quick*, it is evident, as the wheelings are always performed in the quickest of wheeling time, that the words *Quick March* were here intended.

but

but on no account is any officer or non-commissioned officer, except the officer commanding the division or company to interfere with the dressing when the several divisions of a company wheel up into line, the performance of this duty being solely invested in the person who commands it; and this is the case whether the company is single or in battalion.

In the present, as in every other instance where the wheels are to the front, the rear ranks lock up at the caution, at which the supernumerary ranks take a pace to the front, as mentioned before. In wheeling up, the officers and non-commissioned officers posted in that rank remain attached to whatever subdivision they stood in rear of when in line, and to which they consequently belong.

R. R. Part II. *S.* 47.—"The proper pivot flank in "column is that which, when wheeled up to, preserves "the divisions of the line in the natural order, and to "their proper front: the other may be called the re- "reserve flank."

"In column, divisions cover and dress to the proper "pivot flank; to the left when the right is in front, "and to the right when the left is in front."

The attentions of the instructor, when wheeling by subdivisions, are exclusive of those given at the wheelings,—

1st. To see, that at the caution, the officer commanding the company places himself one pace in front of the centre of the leading subdivision (that which by the movement is to come in front); that the covering serjeant falls back two paces; that the pivot man of each subdivision faces outwards, performing the two motions; and that the rear ranks lock up, and the supernumeraries take a pace to the front.

2d. To notice that the words *Halt*, *Dress*, be given for both subdivisions by the commander of the company; and that they are not improperly repeated by the covering serjeant, who leads the second or rear subdivision.

3d. To observe whether the platoon officer, after correcting the dress of the leading subdivision, and pronouncing the words, *Eyes front*, places himself at the proper pivot flank; and whether, at the delivery of the latter command, the covering serjeant, who has lined briskly the men of the second subdivision, likewise takes post with it.

4th. To see that the officers and non-commissioned officers of the supernumerary rank wheel up with the subdivision in the rear of which they stood in line, and remain posted with it.

S. 13. *Wheeling Backward by Subdivisions from Line.*

R. R. Part II. *S.* 48.—"The platoon will also "break into open column of subdivisions by wheeling "backwards, when the right is intended to be in front. "At the caution, *By Subdivisions, on the Left backward* "*Wheel*, the commander of the platoon moves out "briskly and places himself in front of the centre of "the right subdivision; the man in the left of the "front rank of each subdivision at the same time faces "to the right."

"On the word *March*, each subdivision wheels "backward in the quickest time, as directed in the "foregoing. During the wheel, the commander of "the platoon turns towards his men, inclining at "the same time to the left or pivot flank; and, on "completing the wheel, gives the words *Halt, Dress*, "to both divisions: he, and his covering serjeant, "then place themselves on the left flanks of their "subdivisions."

A rule which is seldom departed from in practice, whenever the ground does not prove an obstacle to it, is, that, while halting, all wheels from the battalion or line

line into column are made backwards, and from column into line forwards. However, as in proportion of the extent of front of the body wheeling the stepping to the rear becomes an operation less to be depended on, the wheeling to the right about should be substituted to the wheeling backwards when the divisions exceed sixteen or eighteen files, particularly if the ground be uneven.

The attentions in the instructor are the same as those laid down where the wheeling of the subdivisions takes place to the front, except that, on the present occasion, the wheels being backwards, in conformity to the principle already established, the rear ranks do not lock up.

S. 14. *Wheeling to the Front or Rear by Sections.*

A REPETITION of the operations described for the wheeling forward and backward by subdivisions will take place when those movements are performed by sections; the commander therefore, at the caution, places himself one pace in front of the section, which by the movement is to become the leading one, and on the command *March*, turning towards his men, incline to the proper pivot to give the words *Halt*, *Dress*, for the whole; and after correcting the dress of the leading section, and giving the command *Eyes front*, takes post with it. The covering serjeant, during the wheel, goes round the rear; and as soon as the wheel is completed, and the words *Halt*, *Dress*, given, places himself on the pivot flank of the second section, and an officer or serjeant takes post on the flank of the third and fourth sections*, should the

---

* As it appears preferable, when the company is exercised by itself, that the officer who is placed on the left flank should remain attached to the left section, he should post himself on

company

company consist of the latter number. The officers and non-commissioned officers who remain in the supernumerary rank wheel up with the section in the rear of which they stood while in line, preserving while in motion their distance of two paces from the rear rank at which they closed at the caution, and approaching still a pace nearer to it the instant the words *Halt, Dress,* are heard.

The rear rank, as heretofore, lock up when the wheeling takes place to the front, and preserve their common distance of one pace when the wheels are performed to the rear.

The directions given in the foregoing, in regard of the wheelings of a company by subdivisions or sections, to the front as well as to the rear, apply equally to the battalion, in which every division, in the performances of those movements, executes within itself what is above explained for a company, the caution and the command *Quick March* being however then given by the commander of the battalion, and only the words *Halt, Dress,* delivered by the captains, each for his respective company.

S. 15. *Marching on an Alignement in upper Column of Subdivisions.*

R. R. Part II. *S.* 49.—" The platoon having " wheeled backward by subdivisions from line (as " directed in the foregoing section), and a distant " marked object (*a*) *fig.* 35, in the prolongation of the

---

the pivot of this section, and take charge of it, whenever the company breaks into a column of sections, the right in front, but, when the wheels are to the left, and of course that section becomes the leading one, he should fall in its rear, and thus be ready to resume his place on the left the instant the company re-forms the line.

" two

" two pivots flanks being taken, the commander of " the platoon, who is now on the pivot flank of the " leading subdivision, immediately fixes on his inter- " mediate points to march on." (See Part II. Sec. 5, and in the fig. a stone E and a tuft of grass F). " On " the word *March*, given by the instructor of the " drill, both divisions step off at the same instant, " the leader of the first division marching with the " utmost steadiness and equality of pace on the " points he has taken (here first E and then F with A); " and the commander of the second division preserving " the leader of the first in an exact line with the dis- " tant object, A, at the same time he keeps the dis- " tance necessary for forming from the preceding " division; which distance is to be taken from the " front rank *. These objects are in themselves " sufficient to occupy the whole attention of the " leaders of the two divisions, therefore they must " not look to, nor endeavour to correct, the march " of their divisions, which care must be entirely left " to the non-commissioned officers of the supernu- " merary rank †.

---

* The leader of a third division (*fig*. 35.) should, while on the march, preserve himself in line with those of the two preceding divisions, B. C., so that the nearest C, covers and prevents him from seeing the further, b. He should at the same, time keep a distance from the division immediately before him C, equal to the front of his own division, this being requisite to enable him to wheel into line.

The above directions given for the pivot officer of a third division are likewise to be observed by the person in charge of every other rear subdivision, who while advancing in column, are to preserve themselves in line with their leaders of the two preceding divisions, and keep at a distance equal to the front of their own from the division immediately before them.

† The preserving of the perpendicular on the march, as well as the keeping of distance in column, being the peculiar province of the officers and non-commisioned officers, they are to be frequently practised to it (Part III. Sec. 7.), and exercised as explained hereafter.

S. 16. *Wheeling into Line from open Column of Subdivisions.*

R. R. Part II. *S.* 50.—" THE platoon being in " open column of subdivisions, marching at the or- " dinary step on the alignement, receives the word " *Halt* from the instructor of the drill; both divi- " sions instantly halt," every individual of the same finishing the step he was taking, and, as soon as he has brought up the foot in the rear next to the ad- vanced one, remaining perfectly steady. " The in- " structor sees then that the leaders of the divisions " are correct on the line in which they have moved, " and gives the word (supposing the right of the " platoon to be in front), *By Subdivisions to the Left* " *Wheel into Line;* on which the commander of the " platoon goes to the centre of his subdivision (the " leading one), the pivot face to their left exactly " square with the alignement, and a serjeant from the " rear runs out and places himself in a line with " them, so as to mark the preciso point at which the " right flank of the leading subdivision is to halt " when it shall have completed its wheel. At the " word *Quick March* the whole wheel up in quickest " time; during the wheel, the commander of the " platoon, turning towards his men, inclines to the " wheeling flank, and gives the words *Halt, Dress,* " at the moment the wheel of the division is com- " pleting. The commander of the platoon, if neces- " sary, corrects the internal dressing of the platoon " on the serjeant and pivot men; this dressing must " be quickly made, and, when done, the commander " of the platoon gives the word *Eyes front,* in a " moderate tone of voice, and takes post on the right " of his company."

Very little deviation from the foregoing takes place when the company in column of subdivisions (left in front) is to be wheeled into line to the right; the only differences

differences which occur under those circumstances being, that, at the delivery of the caution *By Subdivision to the Right Wheel into Line*, the pivots face now towards that side; that a serjeant from the rear post himself where the left flank is to rest at the conclusion of the wheel; and that the commander of the platoon, who has placed himself in front of the left subdivision (in the present instance the leading one), at the words *Quick March* inclines to the left, and from that flank lines his men from the serjeant on the pivot's on the right, which executed, he gives the words *Eyes front*, and shifts to the right of the platoon, his proper position in line, which, while he was dressing, was preserved by his doubling serjeant, who, on his assuming his proper post, falls back into the rear rank.

The officers and under officers in charge of the rear subdivisions or sections, whether the wheeling into line is to the right or to the left, repair at the delivery of the caution to the points they would be at* were the company to wheel in a single division. This point or place in regard of the covering serjeant, is on the right of the front rank when the wheels are to the left, and behind the pivot or right file when they are to the right, in order to be, in either case, ready at the conclusion of the wheel to move into the officer's place, and preserve it while he is dressing †. At the caution a serjeant from the supernumerary rank is, as above explained, always to run out and mark the spot where the wheeling flank is to halt ‡.

---

* Part III. Sec. 119, Rules and Regulations.

† Manual and Platoon exercise, covering platoon serjeant wheeling into line.

‡ When a column of companies wheels into line, the company officers likewise step out, and move briskly one pace before the centre of their respective divisions or companies, and a serjeant of the rear of the leading company runs and places himself at the point where the wheeling flank of that division is

A

A remark which appears proper to introduce here is, that the line of march of the open column is always the breadth of a file before the line on which the troops form, the one being the direction preserved by the officers in marching, and pointed out by their outward shoulder A. B., *fig*. 36, and the other, C. D. that which the flank firelock men move on, on which they halt, and on which the company wheels up. Hence those lines, being parallel, must, as soon as the officers have stepped in front of their divisions, by leaving the advanced point distinct, afford a great advantage in the formation and correction of the line,—a circumstance which is observed by the Regulations, which further adds (*R. R.* Part III. Sec. 119).—" Although the officers halt in the alignement itself, " yet it is impossible to allow them to remain im- " moveable as points of forming for their divisions, " because the dressing of those divisions depends on " them, and that they must occupy their proper places " when in line. The flank files of men are therefore " the pivots of divisions in wheeling up into line, " although the officers are the pivots during the march; " and an attempt to form the line on the points of " march themselves would derange the pivot files of " men, and cause disorder."

Part II. *S*. 50.—" All wheelings, by subdivisions " or sections, from line into column, or from column " into line, are performed on the word given by the " commander of a battalion when the whole of a bat- " talion is at the same instant so to wheel, or on the " word given by the commander of the company when " companies singly, or successively, so wheel: they " are not to be repeated by the leaders of its divi- " sions."

---

to rest; but this is not repeated by the rear companies, the spot where their wheeling flank is to arrive and to halt being already sufficiently marked by the pivot of the preceding company or division.

 The

The attentions of the instructor are, on the present occasion, exclusive of those rules already given at the wheelings,—

1st. To see that, at the caution, the platoon commander steps out one pace in front of his subdivision or section (the leading one): and that the covering serjeant, according as the wheel is to the right or to the left, posts himself on the right of the front rank, or behind the right file.

2d. To observe, likewise, at the same caution, whether a serjeant from the rear runs out to mark the ground where the wheeling flank is to halt.

3d. That, if it be performed by sections, at the same direction officers and non-commissioned officers in charge of the rear sections take post, and place themselves at the points they should possess were the whole of the company to wheel in a single division.

4th. To notice, if, on the delivery of the word *March*, the platoon officer inclines towards the wheeling flank of his division or section, and from it gives the words *Halt, Dress*, for the whole; and if, after lining his men, and giving in a moderate tone of voice the words *Eyes front*, he takes post on the right of his platoon, shifting behind the rear rank to that flank, had the wheeling into line been performed to the right.

5th. To see that the covering serjeant, while his officer is dressing the company, preserves his place on the right of the front rank, and therefore wheels up with the men when the wheel is to the left, or moves into the officer's place as soon as the movement is concluded, when the formation of the line takes place by wheeling to the right.

6th. That the instant the officer resumes his post on the right the covering serjeant falls back into the proper position, and the supernumeraries, as soon as the line is formed, take their proper distance of three paces from the rear rank.

S. 17. *In Open Column of Subdivisions, Wheeling into an Alignement.*

THE platoon marching in open column of subdivisions or sections, might enter an alignement either by the successive wheel of its divisions on the proper pivot side or on the reverse flank.

When the change of direction, and consequently the wheels, are on the pivot side, *fig.* 37, the officer of the leading division, A, marches straight to the point of entry; and, halting as soon as he arrives at the camp-colour or marker, &c., z, placed to point out where the change of direction is intended, he keeps his outward shoulder close to it, and permits his division to take a step beyond, so as to allow a space for his own person to move in a new direction of march*. After the wheel is concluded, as soon as his division has taken the directed pace beyond the spot marked out for the entering the new alignement, he gives the words *Halt*, *Right* or *Left Wheel;* on which the wheel being here to the front, the rear rank, if not so already, will immediately lock up; while the pivot man, bringing his rear foot up to the advanced one, faces outwards, performing the two motions; and every other individual, glancing his eyes to the wheeling flank, immediately changes his step into the quickest time; and, in proportion as he is nearer to the pivot, decreases his length of pace, so as to preserve in line with the outward wheeling man, who steps out the lengthened pace of thirty-three inches. When the intended part of the circumference is gone over,

* Officers placed on the pivot of divisions are invariably in marching to graze with their outward shoulder the horse's head of any mounted officer or breast of any foot marker placed in the line of a march. When camp-colours are substituted for the above-mentioned, officers are likewise in passing by to touch them with their outward shoulder.

the

the officer, who stands on the pivot side, a little advanced, gives the words *Halt, Dress,* and quickly lines his men from and on his pivot, to which side they have turned their eyes on hearing the word *Dress.* This being performed without any loss of time, he takes post next to the pivot man, and awaits the approach of the second division (which has continued steadily advancing in the ordinary time) to put his own in motion by the command *March,* on which it proceeds in the new alignement z, y* (R. R. Part II. S. 51.), " in ordinary time, so that its rear " rank does not occasion even a momentary stop to " the division behind it, which at that instant receives " the words" *Halt, Wheel,* the additional words *Right* or *Left* being here unnecessary; " then *Halt,* " *Dress,* and finally *March,* whenever the leading " division has gained its proper distance from it."

In the manner explained for a second is the leader of every other rear division to behave, each of them, without paying any regard to that which is following, giving the word *March* after the wheel is concluded the instant he perceives the division in front has advanced, and gained the proper wheeling distance †.

---

* To prevent the rear rank of a front division from stopping the progress of a division which is following, it is requisite for its officer to utter the command *March* at the approach of the succeeding one, and when it is about two paces from the point fixed upon for the change of direction, otherwise his own must unavoidably interfere, particularly as the wheels, by being executed on the flank firelock men, and not on the pivot officer, must necessarily, after the performance of the movement, remove the division about twenty-two inches behind the point of entry, as a view of *fig.* 39 will soon display.

† Another attention incumbent on officers and non-commissioned officers in charge of second or any other rear division, is always to pronounce the word *March* after entering a new alignement while the men of the preceding division are bringing their right foot to the ground. Were they regardless of this direction, and to deliver it while the other foot is advancing, their own men would step off with the left while those in front are

When

When the change of direction takes place towards the reverse flank of the column, and the proper pivot flank becomes of course the wheeling one, the leading officer, A, *fig*. 38, is to march till he arrives at a distance equal to the front of his division, himself comprehended, from the point of intersection x, to which he has moved, and so that, at the conclusion of the movement,* he touches with his outward shoulder the camp-colour, marker, &c., z, leaving the point x behind him. When he approaches, therefore, to this distance, he gives the words *Halt, Right* or *Left Wheel,* at which, if at one pace distance, the rear ranks lock up, and the reverse flank man (the pivot on the present occasion), after bringing his rear foot next to the advanced one, faces regularly outwards, while every other man turns his eyes, if not already in that direction, to the proper pivot flank (here the wheeling one), and the whole regulated by the officer who steps out a pace of thirty-three inches, move round till the same officer touches with his outward shoulder the camp-colour or markers, &c. z; when at the commands *Halt, Dress,* they instantly halt, and, keeping their eyes fixed to their proper pivot, after being briskly lined, resume the advance at the word *March,* which is delivered by their officer the instant the second division is closed by the point at which his own commenced the wheeling.

The second and every other rear division are to enter the new alignement in the same manner as that described for the first. However, as the side on which the wheel is intended is sufficiently indicated by the movement of the head division, there appears no necessity for the leaders of the succeeding ones, in directing the wheel, to repeat the words *Right* or *Left;* and on the same principle likewise, as when the wheels

---

stepping with the right, and disunion in the pace must be the result throughout the column.

are

are ordered to the proper pivot side, commanders of divisions not the leading one are not, after entering the new line, to await the coming up of the following division; but, without any regard to it, to deliver the word *March* the instant the men of the division in front finish the step which establishes the proper distance.

R. R. Part II. *S.* 51.—" The subdivisions must " take care that they continue their march correctly " upon, and wheel exactly at, the point where the " leading one wheeled; and that they do not shift to " either flank, which, without much attention, they " are apt to do.

" In this manner the subdivisions succeed each " other; and, if the words of command be justly " given,—no stop made on arriving at the wheeling " point,—the wheels performed at an increased time " and steps,—and the proper halt, dressing, and pause, " be made after the wheel,—no extension of the co- " lumn will take a place; but the just distances be- " tween the divisions will be preserved.

" The officer conducting the directing flank of a " division may, during the wheel, be advanced one " or two paces before it, and remain so, facing to the " flank, that he may the more critically be enabled " to give his word *Halt;* at which instant he will " place himself on the flank, ready to judge his dis- " tance, and to give the word *March.*"

The attentions of the instructor, when a column of subdivisions * or sections enters an alignement, exclusive of those already mentioned in wheeling on the March are—

When the wheels are performed on the proper pivot side.

* The same directions and attentions recommended for a column of subdivisions and sections, are to be observed when a column of companies enter an alignement by the successive wheel of its divisions.

1st.

1st. To see that the commander of the leading as well as those of the following divisions halt the instant their outward shoulder touches the camp-colour marker, &c., placed at the point of entry, and allow their divisions to take a step beyond the spot so marked before they direct their division to wheel.

2d. To observe whether, at the words *Halt, Right* or *Left Wheel* (or, for the rear division, *Halt, Wheel)*, the pivot man of the subdivision or section which is to change its direction brings his rear foot up to the advanced one, and instantly faces outwards, performing the two motions.

3d. That, while the men are wheeling, the leading officer takes two or three steps to the front; and, facing to the flank, gives the words *Halt, Dress,* the instant the wheeling flank has described such part of the circumference as the change in the direction required, and which is generally the fourth. Were he to permit a greater part of the circle to be traced out, loss of time must unavoidably occur, and increase of distance between the divisions prove the result of it.

4th. To notice whether the officers, after delivering the words *Halt, Dress,* are alert in lining their men; and if without loss of time, the instant this is performed, they post themselves next to the pivot, ready to direct the advance by the word *March.*

5th. To see that the officer of the leading division gives the command *March* to his men the instant the second approaches the wheeling point, so as to prevent his rear rank occasioning even a momentary stop to the division which is following.

6th. That the commander of the second and of every other rear division directs the advance of his own the moment the division in his front has gained its proper distance, observing to pronounce the word *March* the instant the men of the preceding one are in the act of bringing their right foot to the ground; otherwise his men will step off with the left at the same time that those in front are bringing their right foot forward, by which

which means equality of pace must inevitably be destroyed in the column.

7th. To prevent, in going round, any running on the wheeling flank; to be careful that those near the pivot do not take their paces too long; and to see that the dress, as well as every other direction already recommended, be duly observed.

8th. Finally, to watch carefully if any time be lost in the performance of this movement, the period allotted being merely sufficient for its execution; it is therefore necessary to observe, 1st. Whether any unnecessary delay takes place at the arrival of the wheeling point by the officers not delivering the word *Wheel* while the men are taking the step ordered to be performed beyond the point of entry; 2d. Whether the wheelings are executed in the quickest time and increased length of pace; and, 3d. Whether the officers are precise in giving the words *Halt, Dress,* in proper time, as well as alert in lining their men, and directing the advance of their divisions the instant those in their respective fronts have moved at their proper distance *.

---

* The successive wheel performed by the divisions of a column in altering the direction of a march amounting generally to the quarter of the circle, or thereabouts, it will naturally be inferred, by what is established, Note * Sect. 22. p. 68, that as the ground moved over by the outward wheeling flank man in the quarter wheel, is one half more than the front of the body which performs such wheel, it will be requisite, to prevent the progress of a following division, and any stoppage in the column, to trace out this arch at an increased cadence, at least one half quicker than that in which it was proceeding to the front. Yet, as this would merely enable to step over the ground, and therefore not provide for the time employed in delivering the words of command, as well as for the momentary stop, however instantaneous it may be, which must precede the wheel, and the dressing which must conclude it (all circumstances which demand also to be gained by the degree of celerity with which the movement is here executed), this cadence

When

When the Change of Direction is on the reverse Flank.

1st. To see that the officer of the leading as well as every other division at the conclusion of the wheel,

---

will still prove inefficient, and a quicker movement appear indispensable.

Hence it has been established by authority that all wheels should invariably be taken in the quickest or wheeling step, 120 in a minute, which, in addition to the lengthened pace here made use of by the outward wheeling man, will compensate in a great measure for the time the movement requires, as the following example, taken from the Rules and Regulations, will further illustrate:—(*R. R. Part* III. *No.* 9, *S.* 80)—" A division consisting of ten files, and each occupying twenty-two " inches, will, at paces of thirty inches, take seven paces ten " inches for its front:"—Now, seventy-five steps in a minute being the ordinary " time, and one hundred and twenty the " wheeling time, 75 : 120 :: $7\frac{1}{3}$: $11\frac{1}{3}$ nearly the number of " wheeling paces of thirty inches each, which the wheeling man " can take while the following division is making its seven " one-third ordinary paces in front, and eleven of which exactly " complete the quarter circle: but each of these eleven paces " is lengthened with three inches; then the wheel will be completed in ten steps, and a pause of one pace and two-thirds " of a pace, or five-sixths of a second of time, will be reserved " for the *Halt*, *Dress*, and *March*, of the division, after it has, at " ten long paces of thirty-three inches, completed the *Wheel*." This pause, which, in the above proportion of time and step, is always one-seventh, or nearer one-sixth, of the time employed by a body in wheeling the quarter of the circle, will consequently be increased or diminished in proportion to the greater or less extent of front of the division which is performing the movement, as well as the arc or part of the circumference moved over; and by being barely sufficient for a division of ten files, as the foregoing evidently displays, it is obvious that the commands must be given in a quick and pointed manner, and every change of direction executed so as not to retard the movement of the succeeding divisions, and occasion extension in the column.

This difficulty, which, by what is just mentioned, already exists in a column proceeding in the ordinary time, whenever the divisions are small and wheel considerable, and above the quarter of the circle, appears, however, greatly to increase when the column moves in the quick cadence, where a time of march

touches

touches with his outward shoulder at the camp-colour, marker, &c., placed at the point of entry of the new alignement.

---

of 162 paces in the minute (forty-two more than the number allowed) would only suffice to step over the ground, and where it would require the wheels to be performed at the rate of about 175 steps in a minute to obtain a similar proportion between the degree of celerity with which the column moves to the front and its division wheels into an alignement to that observed by a column advancing in the ordinary time when it thus alters its direction *.

* In order to illustrate the foregoing still further, it may, perhaps, prove of some utility to introduce here what is mentioned in regard of those changes of direction of a column by the quarter wheel in the Tactical Regulator, a book which, besides many useful informations relative to the movements, is particularly inquisitive respecting the time of performance, and in the present instance expresses itself as follows † :—

Edition, 1810, *p*. 62.—" The time reserved, or pause left for " the captain to give the words *Halt*, *Dress*, and *March*, may be " ascertained thus :—

Front of Files.	Extent.		Marches that Distance in.		Wheels the Quarter Circle in.	The Pause of Spare Time.		Spare Time; or, Proportion of Time.
	Paces.	Inches			Seconds.			
20	14	20	11″	44‴	10	1″	44‴	1-6th
15	11	0	8	48	7½	1	18	Ditto
10	7	10	5	52	5		52	Ditto
5	3	20	2	56	2½		26	Ditto

" From the above table it may be seen *that the pause will* " *increase or diminish according to the greater or lesser extent of* " *the wheeling body* ;" " thus the division of twenty files has a " pause of one second and forty-four thirds of a second ; and " the division of fifteen files has 1″ 18‴; that is, one second and " eighteen thirds, and so on." " *It will be seen also, that in the* " *above proportions of time and step the pause will be* (*one-sixth*)

† The Tactical Regulator is written by John Russell, lieutenant and adjutant, Nottingham Staff, the author of several useful military treatises.

2d. To notice whether the reverse flank men (in this instance the pivots on which the movement are to be executed), at the commands *Wheel*, bring the

---

" *of the time employed by such body in wheeling the quarter circle,*"
" R. R.* p. 84 (and not one-seventh, as in the Rules and Re-
" gulations, S. 80, No. 9, p. 84)," "*and thus shews how pointed*
" *and quick the captain's command must be, not to occasion a loss*
" *of ground to each successive division at the point of wheeling.*"
" S. 80, No. 9.

"Wheeling the Quarter Circle at an accelerated Pace."

" *Should the wheel made be less than the quarter circle, the pause*
" *after the wheel will be considerable. Should the wheel be greater*
" *than the quarter circle, it must be accelerated, otherwise more than*
" *one division will be arrived and arrested at the pivot point.*"

" Should a column be marching in quick time, it is evident
" that its wheel must be in proportion quickened, to disengage
" in time the pivot point" "*for each successive division.*" Sec. 80,
" No. 3. Rules and Regulations.

" Thus, the column marching at the quick time, the first di-
" vision, suppose of twenty files, *a, c, fig.* 40, moves over a space
" fourteen paces, twenty inches (equal to the extent of its front),
" in eight seconds eight thirds; and consequently it must wheel
" much quicker than the quickest time of 120 paces in the mi-
" nute, not to impede the march of its following division, *o, p,*
" *fig.* 41, at the wheeling point A; and, to leave about two
" seconds for the captain's *Halt, Dress,* and *March,* the wheel
" should be completed in six seconds of time, thus"—

Number of Files.	Extent.		Marching in		Wheels Quarter Circle.		Remains Pause or Spare Time.	
	Paces.	Inches.	"	"'				
20	14	20	8	8	6"	0"'	2"	8"'
15	11	6	6	28	4	28	2	0
10	7	10	4	26	2	16	2	0

" Here the outside man of the twenty files moves at the rate
" of six miles and ¼ an hour."

* R. R. means Rules and Regulations.

rear

rear foot up to the advanced one, and face outwards, performing the two motions, the instant they have halted.

3d. That the officers, in bringing round their men in the quickest or wheeling time, lengthen their pace to thirty-three inches, and give the words *Halt, Dress,* the instant the intended part of the circumference has been performed, taking care not to overwheel, nor to lose time in dressing their divisions.

4th. To prevent the men near to the pivot from taking their step too long, as well as any running or unnecessary hurry at the wheeling flank; and to observe whether the whole, guided by the movement of the wheeling flank man (here the commander of the platoon, or leader of the subdivision or section), keep constantly dressed with him while in motion.

5th. To remark if the officer of the leading division, without any loss of time, puts his own division in motion the instant the following approaches the point at which the change of direction takes place.

6th. To notice whether the commander of the second as well as every other rear division is attentive in giving the word *March* the moment he has ascertained that the one in his immediate front has gained its proper distance; and whether he pronounces it while the men of the preceding division are in the act of bringing the right foot to the ground.

7th. To be particularly observant that no time be

" The man ditto of fifteen files moves at the rate of about eight " miles an hour."

" The man ditto of ten files moves at the rate of nine miles and " three furlongs an hour."

" It may be observed, that" " *although the pause made after* " *the Halt, Dress*" (when moving at the ordinary time), " *gives* " time in large fronts for exact dressing; yet in small ones, " where that pause is short, there is no time for such exactness, " the attention to and preservation of the true distance being " then the material object. S. 80, No. 3, Rules and Regu- " lations."

lost

lost in the performance of this movement; and therefore to observe, 1st. That, as soon as the divisions arrive at the point where the change of direction is to be effected, the officers, without any improper stop, instantly direct the wheel; 2d. That the officers bring round their men at the increased length and time; and, 3d. That, without overwheeling, they halt them in proper time, line them briskly, and are precise in resuming the advance after entering the new alignement.

8th. That the rear divisions wheel exactly at the point at which the leading division performed its change in the direction of march; and that they do not shift to either flank, which, if not carefully watched, they are very liable to do.

S. 18. *In the Open Column of Subdivisions wheeling into a new Direction on a Moveable Pivot.*

R. R. Part II. *S.* 52.—" The commander of the " leading subdivision, when at a due distance from " the intended new direction, will give the word " *Right* (or Left) *Shoulder forward**; and he him- " self, carefully preserving the rate of march, with- " out the least alteration of step or time, will begin " to circle in his own person from the old into the " new direction †, so as not to make an abrupt " wheel, or that either flank shall be stationary; the

---

* See Part I., Sec. 26.

† In the practice of those wheels on a moveable pivot, the points at which the pivot leaves the old direction of march, and that in which he enters the new alignement, may at first be pointed out by markers, camp colours, &c., which will greatly assist the movement, and ensure precision.

" rest

" rest of his division, on the principle of dressing, " will conform to the direction he is giving them. " When this is effected he will give the word *Forward*. " The leader of the second subdivision, when he " arrives at the ground on which the first began to " wheel, will in this manner follow the exact track " of the first, always preserving his proper distance " from him."

" Thus, without the constraint of formal wheels, a " column when not confined on its flanks, may be " conducted in all kinds of winding and changeable " directions; for, if the changes be made gradual and " circling, and that the pivot leaders of divisions pur- " sue their proper path at the same uniform equal " pace, the true distances of division will be pre- " served, which is the great regulating object on this " occasion, and to which every other consideration " must give way.

" In wheeling in column of march on a fixed pivot, " the outward file, whether officer or man, is the " one wheeled on;" but, in the Shoulder forward, the officer or leader placed on the proper pivot of the column is always the person who conducts the movement, by describing the smaller arch when the alteration is towards the pivot side, or bringing his men round by tracing out the larger circumference when the change of direction is towards the reverse flank, and thus, in either case, move within the angle formed by the intersection of the old and new direction, A, *fig.* 18, and cuts it off.

R. R. Part III. *S.* 80. *No.* 4.—" In both cases, the " more considerable the sweep he makes from the " old to the new direction, the easier and more gra- " dually can the other flank conform; and therefore, " when this mode is made use of, the column is sup- " posed to have sufficient room on its flanks to allow " of the necessary operations; for, if both flanks " cannot be kept in progressive movement during the " change of direction, the wheels cannot be thus

" made,

" made, but must be executed quick, and on fixed " pivots; otherwise the ground would not be clear for " the succeeding divisions, and they would stop each " other, and interfere."

" In this manner will the column on a small front " follow the windings of a route, be conducted through " an open wood, or trace out the irregular edge of a " height which it is to occupy; and indeed in all com- " mon occasions of route marching, where perfect cor- " rectness is not required, it will thus change into new " directions."

The attentions of the instructor, while wheeling on a moveable pivot, are, after observing whether the true direction of march is properly preserved, and the body moving at its proper cadence,—

1st. That, at the command *Right* or *Left Shoulder forward*, the directed shoulder be brought to the front, and so kept till the word *Forward* is heard.

2d. To see that the platoon officer (here the leading flank man of the first division), in conducting his men, describes the intended arch without altering either the time or the pace he was marching in before; and in case of his tracing out the smaller circumference, that he be not too abrupt in the transition from the old to the new alignement, thereby occasioning too much hurry in the opposite wing.

3d. To observe whether the officers and non-commissioned officers in charge of rear divisions, subdivisions, or sections, are exact in moving over the precise arc at first traced out by the leader of the first division, subdivision, or section.

4th. To notice if the men keep constantly dressed while circling, and if they glance their eyes to the proper pivot (where the officer stands) at the delivery of the command *Right* or *Left Shoulders forward*, and keep them so fixed until the word *Forward* is given.

5th. To remark likewise, in moving round, if the rear ranks cover properly.

6th. To prevent any opening out or crowding upon the pivot.

7th. To observe whether, at the word *Forward*, the shoulders are instantly brought square to the front, and direct march resumed, every individual stepping out the full pace of thirty inches without altering the cadence he was moving in previously *.

S. 19. *Countermarch by Files.*

R. R. Part II. *S.* 53.—" The platoon, when it is to " countermarch, must always be considered as a division " of a battalion in column; the instructor of the drill " will therefore, previous to his giving the caution to " countermarch, signify whether the right or left is " supposed to be in front, that the commander of the " platoon and his covering serjeant may be placed on " the pivot flank before such caution is given; as it " is an invariable rule, in the countermarch of the " divisions of a column by files, that the facings be " made from the flank, then the pivot one, to the one " which is to become such."

" On the word *To the Right* or *Left Face* the pla- " toon faces; the commander of it immediately goes " to the other flank, passing behind the rear rank; " and his covering serjeant, advancing to the spot " which he has quitted, faces to the right about. At " the word *Quick March*, the whole, except the ser- " jeant coverer, step off together, the platoon officer

---

* It has already been observed, that, in consequence of the advanced position of the shoulder, the person who commands the drill will be the better able to ascertain the degree of precision observed in the performance of those wheels on a moveable pivot by standing a little to the front and outwards of the leading or pivot flank.

" wheeling

" wheeling short round the rear rank (viz., to his right, " if he has shifted to the right of the platoon; or to " his left, if he be on the left of it); and proceeds, " followed by the platoon in file till he has conducted " his pivot front rank man close to his serjeant, who " has remained immoveable" when, without waiting until the whole have countermarched, and the files cover, he will, the instant the leading man is at his point, " give the words *Halt*, *Front*, and *Dress*, " square and close his platoon on his serjeant, and then " replace him."

" All countermarches by files necessarily tend to an " extension of the files; unity of step is therefore ab- " solutely indispensable, and the greatest care must be " taken that the wheel of each file be made close, quick, " and at an increased length of step of the wheeling " man, so as not to retard or lengthen out the march " of the whole."

" Companies, or their divisions, when brought up " in file to a new line, are not to stand in that position " till the men cover each other minutely; but, the " instant the leading man is at his point, they will " receive the words *Halt*, *Front*, and in that situation " close in, and dress correctly."

The attentions of the instructor, in the countermarch, are—

1st. To observe, previous to his delivering the caution to countermarch, whether the officer and serjeant are placed on the proper pivot, or that implied to be so by the intended movement.

2d. That, in facing, the men perform the two motions together, and in proper time.

3d. To see, while the men face, whether the commander faces to the right about; shifts his flank, passing behind the rear rank; and posts himself ahead of the men of the front rank, ready to lead.

4th. To notice if the covering serjeant replaces his officer the instant he leaves the pivot in order to shift his

his flank; and if, in facing to the right about, after having done so, he performs the three motions.

5th. To observe that the whole, except the covering serjeant, step off at the words *Quick March*, and follow the officer, who himself wheels short round the rear rank.

5th. To remark whether the files, in wheeling round, move close to the rear rank; and the wheeling flank man steps out, so as not to occasion any lengthening out in the division.

7th. To see that the platoon officer gives the words *Halt, Front, Dress*, the instant he closes his serjeant and has brought the leading man to the point at which he is to stand, and does not wait for the whole having countermarched and covered to deliver that command.

8th. That the officer be alert in lining his men; and after doing so, as well as giving in a moderate tone of voice the command *Eyes front*, that he replaces his serjeant, who falls back into the rear rank.

S. 20. *Wheeling on the Centre of the Platoon.*

THE platoon must be accustomed to wheel upon its centre half backwards and half forwards, the quarter as well as the half circle.

When the quarter circle is to be described, the pivot not being altered by this movement, the officer and serjeant wheel up with the men, and the platoon is brought in a perpendicular situation to that in which it stood before.

But when the half circle is intended, as this movement operates on the platoon in the exact manner as the countermarch, and replaces it on the very ground from

from which it started, fronting to its former rear, with its right wing on the spot before taken up by its left, and its left wing placed where the right was,—and consequently, if performed in column, likewise removes the pivots to the opposite flank,—platoon officers and covering serjeants do not wheel with their division on the present occasion; but the officer, at the word of execution *March*, steps out, and so as to be the better able to observe and direct the movement, places himself a few paces in advance of the new-intended front. On leaving the pivot, he is instantly replaced by his covering serjeant, who, when advanced into it, faces to the right about, and thereby marks the ground where the flank is to halt, which by the movement is to become the pivot.

Those wheelings on the centre of the platoon are further executed in the following manner:—

When the quarter wheel is meant, on the caution, *Platoon on your Centre, to the Right or Left Wheel*, the centre man faces to the directed side, and the rear ranks of the half platoon which is to wheel forward* lock up, taking one and two short paces to the front †. At the command *Quick March* all step off, in the quickest time, the men of each half platoon glancing their eyes outwards and to their respective flank men, who, both lengthening their pace to thirty-three inches, regulate the whole, who remain dressed to them, while they preserve themselves in an exact line with the centre. When the required degree of wheel has been performed, the officer, who, as well as his covering serjeant, has remained at his post, and wheeled with the others, gives the words *Halt*, *Dress*;

---

* In wheeling on the centre, it is always the flank on that side whence the motion is directed which is to wheel backwards, viz., the right half platoon when the movement is ordered to the right or right about, and the left half when the command is given to wheel to the left or left about.

† See Part I., Sec. 36. Cease Firing.

on

on which, eyes being turned to him, he lines his men; and, after having done so, directs, in a lower tone of voice, the eyes to the front.

When the platoon is to wheel the half circle, on hearing the caution *On your Centre Right* or *Left about Wheel*, the centre man faces to the right about, and the rear ranks of the half platoon which is to wheel to the front lock up. At the command *Quick March*, the officer, leaving his post, places himself so as to face his line of men after the movement is finished, and he is replaced on the pivot by his doubling serjeant, who, the instant he has advanced into it, faces to the right about, and thus marks the point at which the wheel is to conclude. The men, behaving as heretofore explained for the quarter wheel, move round those of each half company, fixing their eyes to their respective flank men, by whom they are guided, and who, both of them stepping out the lengthened pace of thirty-three inches, keep themselves in a line with the centre of the platoon. When the half circle has been completed the officer gives successively the words *Halt, Dress;* and, after squaring his platoon on his serjeant and centre man, *Eyes front*, in delivering which latter he resumes his place, which, with the only exception of his facing now to his former rear, is the very same he occupied before the movement commenced, and was preserved by his serjeant, who, on his taking post, falls back into the rear rank.

The attentions in the instructor, when the wheels take place on the centre of the platoon, are,—

1st. At the giving of the caution, to see that the men of the rear ranks of the half company which is to wheel forward (viz., the left when the wheelings are to the right or right about, and the right when the wheelings take place to the left or left about) lock up, by taking together one and two short steps to the front, and remain perfectly immoveable after performing the last.

2d.

2d. To notice whether, at the same caution, the men of the rear ranks of the half platoon which is to wheel back remain steady, and preserve their natural distance of a pace between the ranks.

3d. To observe, on the word *Quick March*, that the men of each half platoon turn their eyes to their respective flank men; and that consequently those of the right half company glance their eyes to the right, and those of the left half company to the left.

4th. That both flank men, in leading the movement, lengthen their paces to thirty-three inches, move in the quickest cadence, as well as preserve themselves in a line with the centre of the platoon.

5th. To observe the directions previously given for the wheeling, viz., neither to open out nor crowd upon the pivot—to remain constantly dressed with the wheeling flank man—not to look down, &c., strictly adhered to.

6th. To notice if, at the words *Halt, Dress,* eyes are immediately brought to the officer, who himself is to be posted on the proper flank.

7th. To see, when the platoon performs on its centre the quarter wheel (the pivot not being altered by the movement), that its commander remains attached to the flank he was posted on before, and either wheels forward or backward with it.

8th. To observe, when the platoon wheels a half circle on its centre (as the reverse flank in this case becomes the pivot one), that the officer takes post a few paces advanced to the new-intended front; and that the covering serjeant, replacing his officer the instant he leaves the pivot, faces regularly about (performing the three motions), and thereby marks the ground where the wheel is to finish.

9th. To remark whether the officers and non-commissioned officers of the supernumerary rank, if at three paces, take a step to the front on hearing the caution; and whether in going round they keep at the distance of two paces from the rear rank, following the

the motion either to the front or the rear of the half company behind which they are posted *.

S. 21. *Oblique March.*

THE oblique march is frequently to be practised in division, subdivision, and in file; and occasionally performed with eyes to the right while obliquing to the right, this being often required in line, where a battalion may be ordered to oblique to either hands, eyes being still continued to the front, and only occasionally permitted to be glanced to the centre.

The attentions in the instructor are,—

In obliquing, when performed in line, division, or subdivision, &c.,

1st. To see whether this march is performed as explained Part I., Sect. 10, the nature and length of pace there directed being duly observed.

2d. That the shoulders be kept square to the front, those on the contrary side to the inclining one being well kept to the rear, thereby obviating the great fault in this movement, which is to advance them, and draw back those on the side where the obliquing takes place, so as to cause a half face and front the diagonal traced out.

3d. To observe that the body, while moving to a flank, preserves its parallel position to the ground it quitted.

4th. To see that the front rank keeps properly dressed, and that the rear ranks lock well up, and cover exactly.

---

* When this movement is performed while in column, and the supernumeraries are at one pace from the rear rank, they preserve this distance in going round.

When

When in File.

1st. Always to precede the command to oblique by observing that the files cover, as well as that they are properly distanced from each other; and, if given while in motion, whether the directions relative to the file marching are properly attended to.

2d. To see that, at the command *Right* or *Left Oblique*, the Rules given for that march are duly obeyed; and, amongst them, that particular attention be paid.

3d. To preserve to the rear the shoulder opposite the side obliquing*, this being requisite, as already observed, to secure the parallelism in the position.

4th. To observe whether the position of the soldier is preserved throughout; and whether any of the men lean back, look down, or turn their eyes to the right or to the left,—mistakes which require to be instantly rectified.

5th. That the pace be performed as directed, the foot brought flat on the ground, and the toe a little before the heel.

6th. To see that the exact distance between the files is preserved, and that the men of the rear rank regulate themselves by their front rank men, and dress in their files.

7th. That, at the word *Halt*, the step which was taking be finished at full length, and the other foot brought up to it, and thus executed whether it be a pace to the front or an oblique one, without any

---

* This direction, beside its immediate purpose, pointed out in Part I., Sec. 10, has the advantage of drawing the attention of the men to the preserving of the parallelism, which being the great object on the present occasion, it must necessarily tend to promote exactness in the performance of those oblique movements.

motion

motion being in either case observable amongst the men after the halted position is assumed.

In this, as in all file movements, the instructor is often to face the front file, to ascertain if those in the rear cover properly.

S. 22. *Increasing and Diminishing the Front of an Open Column halted.*

It is an invariable rule, both when the column is halted or in motion, that all diminishings in the front of its divisions take place by the doubling of subdivisions or sections behind that posted on the reverse flank; and that all increasings in the front of the same are to be accomplished by the subdivisions or sections from the rear obliquing to the pivot hand, and forming on that side of the subdivision or section in their front, which they are to join; therefore when the right is ahead, *fig*. 42, the doubling is performed behind the right subdivision or section, and all increasings of front are effected by the rear subdivisions or sections moving on the left of the advanced one; but when the left leads, *fig*. 43, the doublings take place behind the left, and the rear subdivisions and sections form to the right of those in their front, which they are ordered to unite to.

These directions, although they seem at first, by destroying the coverings of the pivots, to derange the line of march, are, however, perfectly consistent with the true principles of this movement, and indispensable to preserve the natural order in the battalion, as *fig*. 44 will clearly display, by representing four companies the right in front, supposed, for the sake of preserving the line of pivots, to have formed a column of subdivisions, by doubling the right half platoons behind the left ones, and where, on wheeling up, although the

the companies occupy each their relative position and proper post in the line, they are, each one within itself, thrown into a state of total confusion, with their right subdivisions on the left, their left subdivisions on the right, both their flank men brought into the centre, and their two centre men removed each to a flank.

Increasing.

R. R. Part II. *S.* 56.—" The platoon, standing in " open column of subdivisions (suppose the right in " front), receives from the instructor of the drill a cau- " tion to *Form Platoon*. The commander of the " platoon, turning round instantly, orders *Rear Sub- " division, left Oblique, Quick March.* When it has " obliqued so as to open its right flank, he gives the " word *Forward;* and on its arriving in a line with the " first division he orders *Halt, Dress,* and takes post " on the left, the pivot flank of the platoon."

Diminishing.

" On the cautionary command from the instructor " of the drill *to form Subdivisions*, the serjeant coverer " falls back to mark the point where the left flank of " the subdivision is to be placed;—the commander " of the platoon, advancing one step, orders *Left " Subdivision, inwards face;* and instantly, on facing, " the three leading files disengage to the rear," by taking two side steps *.

* For the sake of appearance, and perhaps more to obviate the influence which allowing the careless performance of any part of the exercise, must necessarily have on the whole, it appears preferable to have those disengagings of the files to the rear performed in a regular manner, and in the same cadence as the facings. Supposing, therefore, four paces to be taken in the ordinary time, the two motions of the facing will be executed with the two first; and the three head files which are to disengage will take two side-steps with the third and fourth, the men of the front file, however, taking their steps longer

"At the word *Quick March* the files pass round
"and behind the serjeant, and at the proper instant
"receive the words *Halt, Front, Left Dress.*—The
"commander of the platoon is now on the left flank of
"the first subdivision, and his serjeant on that of the
"second."

While on the March.

Increasing.

Part II. *S.* 57.—"The platoon, marching at the
"ordinary time in open column of subdivisions (sup-
"pose the right in front), receives from the instructor
"of the drill the cautionary command *Form Platoon.*
"The commander of the platoon, instantly turning
"round, gives the words *Left Oblique, Quick March;*
"on which the rear subdivision obliques to the left;
"and, as soon as its right flank is open, receives the
"word *Forward.*—When it gets up to the first sub-
"division (which has continued to march, with the
"utmost steadiness, at the ordinary pace), the com-
"mander of the platoon gives the word *Ordinary*, and
"takes post on the pivot flank, towards which he has
"been moving."

Diminishing.

"When the instructor of the drill gives the cau-
"tion to *form Subdivisions,* the commander of the
"platoon, advancing one step, immediately orders
"*Left Subdivision, Mark Time;* this it does until

---

than those of the second, and the latter also performing theirs somewhat more so than those placed in the third, so as to obtain the position exhibited by C, E, D, *fig.* 45.

It is likewise to be observed that, in the disengaging of files, the men of the head file must incline sufficiently, in taking their side steps, to cause their front rank man, at the conclusion of the second pace, to be perfectly cleared from the rear rank man of the preceding division, as represented by the line A, B, of the same figure.

"the

" the right one, which continues to march steadily " at the ordinary pace, has cleared its flank; he then " orders the left subdivision *Quick Oblique;* and " when he perceives that it has doubled properly be- " hind the right one, he gives the word *Forward,* on " which it takes up the ordinary march, and follows " at its due distance of wheeling, himself being then " placed on the pivot flank of the subdivision, and his " serjeant on that of the second."

In a manner perfectly similar is the front to be increased or reduced when the left is ahead and leads the column, the word *Right* being only in that case substituted to the word *Left* in the commands.

Part II. *S.* 57.—" The same directions that apply " to increasing or diminishing by subdivisions apply " equally by sections, which individually repeat the " same operations," the command being likewise repeated to each*.

" Increasing and reducing the front of a column is " an operation that will frequently occur in the march " of large bodies; and it is of the utmost importance " that it be performed with exactness:—The in- " structor of the drill must therefore be particularly " attentive that the transition from one situation to

---

* One example being sufficient to unfold and display the manner in which both increasing and diminishing by sections are executed, we will suppose a column of companies, right in front, *fig.* 46, to receive the direction, while halted, to form section. At the hearing of this caution the platoon commander will immediately order the second, third, and fourth sections, to face inwards; and, as soon as the non-commissioned officers have marked the ground where the left flank of each is to rest, he will give the words *Quick, March,* on which those sections which have faced proceed to the rear, and file behind their respective serjeants into their proper situation, in which they are halted by the platoon commander, who, in due time, naming each successively, repeats the commands *Second Section, Halt, Front, Left Dress; Third Section, Halt, Front, Left Dress;* and *Fourth Section, Halt, Front, Left Dress,* which last direction concludes the movement.

" the

"the other be made as quick as possible; that the "leading division continues its march at the regular "time and length of pace; and the exact distances "between the divisions be accurately preserved.— "During the operation the ranks must be closed, "arms carried, and the greatest attention required "from each individual."

A column while in motion may either increase or diminish its front by every division doubling or coming up either at the same time or successively, each company executing the directed movement when it arrives at the point where it was first performed by the leading division. Of these two methods the former, where the surrounding circumstances permit, seems, however, to claim the preference, as less liable to lengthen out,—the great evil to be avoided when increasing or reducing the front.

Whether the increasing or diminishing of the front take place from the halt or on the [illegible], in the latter case, whether it be executed by the whole at once or by each division successively, it is invariably announced by the general caution given by the chief of the battalion, and the coming up or doubling behind of subdivisions or sections always executed at the separate commands delivered by the platoon officers, each to his respective company.

The attentions of the instructor, in increasing the front from the Halt, are,—

1st. Previous to his giving the caution *To form Platoon*, to observe if the ranks are closed, and if the arms are carried.

2d. That, at the delivering of this caution, the officer in charge of the platoon be exact in immediately directing the rear subdivision or sections to oblique to the pivot side.

3d. To see, while obliquing, the direction respecting this march duly attended to, the parallel position preserved, and shoulders opposite to the inclining well kept to the rear.

4th.

4th. To notice if the command *Forward* be given in proper time, and if the subdivision or section it is meant for steps straight to the front the instant it be heard.

5th. That at the words *Halt, Dress,* given to the subdivision or section which joins the part of the company already formed, the men belonging to it instantly glance their eyes to the flank the command is heard from.

6th. To see that the subdivision or section, in coming up, moves in the quick cadence.

In diminishing the Front from the Halt.

1st. To precede the giving of the caution to form subdivision or sections by observing whether the ranks are properly closed, and the arms carried.

2d. That the delivery of the caution be instantly followed by the direction of the platoon commander, to the subdivisions or sections which are to double, *to face inwards.*

3d. To see that in facing the two directed motions are properly observed; and that while the men are thus changing their front, the covering serjeant runs out to mark the ground where the subdivision which is doubling is to proceed to.

4th. When sections are formed, that a serjeant from the supernumerary rank moves out to the spot where the third is to form, and another also to that where the fourth is to be posted; and that, in doing so, they are careful to place themselves at a proper distance from each other.

5th. To notice whether at the words *Quick March* the subdivisions or sections which are to double behind step off in the quick cadence, and move round their respective non-commissioned officers into their proper situation; and whether they halt, front, and dress, the instant

instant those commands are heard from their respective company chiefs.

When the Increase of Front takes place while in Motion.

1st. To notice, previous to the giving of the caution, whether the ranks are closed, and the arms carried.

2d. That the instant the caution is heard the platoon commander be exact (or every platoon commander, if performed by a whole column at once) in directing immediately the rear subdivision or the rear sections to come up by obliquing to the pivot side.

3d. To see the oblique march properly performed, the true front preserved, and the shoulder opposite to the flank inclined to kept to the rear, as directed.

4th. That the command *Forward* be delivered in its proper time, and the instant the inward flank of the subdivision, or, successively, of each section, is cleared from that immediately before it.

5th. To see the commander of the platoon timely in pronouncing the word *Ordinary* the instant the subdivision, or successively, each section, joins the leading one; and that, at the hearing of the same, the men of the subdivision or section which has just come up, and for whom it is meant, instantly change their pace into the ordinary.

6th. To take particular notice and observe whether the leading subdivision or section, to which the other subdivision or the other sections are directed to come up, continues its progress to the front, without either deviating from the perpendicular direction it was pursuing before, or altering its pace or time of march.

7th. When increasing in the front of a column takes place by its divisions performing the same successively, the instructor is to pay the additional attention, of observing that the commanders of the rear companies are precise in ordering their rear subdivision

sion or sections to move up the instant they approach the point at which the direction to form was delivered before to the leading division.

When diminishing while in Motion.

1st. To see the ranks closed and the arms carried before he gives the caution to ***Form Subdivision*** or to ***Form Sections.***

2d. That, at the delivery of the said caution, the platoon commander (or, if performed in column, and by the whole at once, each platoon commander for his respective company) is immediately heard to give the words *Mark Time* to the subdivision or to the sections which are to break off and move to the rear.

3d. To observe, in marking true time, the directions already prescribed duly attended to, and therefore each man leaning his body forward, throwing his feet properly to the front, bringing them smartly back, pointing the toe, &c.

4th. To notice that, as soon as the inward flank is cleared, the subdivision or section so freed is ordered to oblique.

5th. To be careful that the rules laid down for obliquing are properly observed, and particularly that that which enjoins the opposite shoulder to the inclining to be well kept to the rear be not neglected.

6th. To notice that the platoon commander is exact in giving in its appropriate time the word ***Forward*** to his subdivision, or successively, to each section.

7th. To see that the subdivision or section, which by the movement becomes the leading one, and in the rear of which the others form, unconcerned at their operations, pursues its march steadily to the front, and neither alters its length nor cadence of pace, nor the direction of march in which it was before proceeding.

8th. When a decrease in front is directed to take place, while in column, by each company performing the movement, successively, it becomes also necessary

 to

to observe if the commanders of the rear platoons prove exact in directing the doubling of their respective subdivision or sections the instant they arrive at the spot where the leading division diminished its front.

9th. Lastly, to see, when the column of subdivisions or sections is formed, whether the proper wheeling distance is observed between them.

S. 23. *Breaking off Files to pass a short Defilé.*

THE breaking off files to obviate a momentary obstacle, when moving in a line or while in column, to cross a bridge or to pass a short defilé, being an operation frequently repeated during the advance or retreat of a body, its instruction should not be neglected in the exercise of the company, and the men should be carefully trained to execute such diminishings of front with the greatest precision and regularity; therefore while the company is moving forward in division, or in column of subdivisions, the instructor will occasionally, and at times unknown, give the cautionary command to *break off* a certain number *of files*, which, supposing here to be four, the commander of the platoon or of the leading subdivision will instantly give the words (the right being here considered in front) *Four files on the left, right turn* *, at which the named files turn immediately to the right, and always inward, and wheel out so as to place themselves behind the three adjoining, files, which as

---

* In breaking off files, those on the pivot side are invariably ordered to the rear, and they always turn inwards to move thither; therefore the left files break off, and turn to the right when the right is in front; and the right files move to the rear, and turn to the left when the left is ahead and lead the column.

well

well as the rest of the platoon or subdivision, continue to proceed steadily to the front, while the commander of the platoon or subdivision closes himself to the fifth file, now become the pivot flank one. When the second subdivision arrives at the spot where the first contracted its front, it will receive the same command from its leader, viz. *Four files on the left, right turn*, and behave in like manner as detailed for the first. Should a still greater diminishing in the front be requisite, and, in addition to those already broken off, some more files be brought to the rear at the caution given to that effect by the instructor the commander of the platoon or leading subdivision will again direct the desired number of files to turn to the right on which those already thrown back mark time, and incline inward, so as to cover and follow the files now ordered to the rear, who proceed thither themselves by facing and wheeling out in the same manner above prescribed for the first. When the second subdivision approaches the point at which the additional files of the first were thrown back, it will, at the words of its leader, undergo the same operation.

In this manner might the front of the divisions of a column be reduced to three files, or even to two, were they placed only two deep; and, provided the files which have been thrown back are careful to lock well up, so as not to prevent the march of the succeeding division, no improper lengthening out can occur from it. However, as this degree of precision is not always to be depended upon in practice, whenever a column is to continue for any length of time on a reduced front, the diminishing by the doubling of divisions claims the preference as less liable to extension *.

When the defilé widens on the caution of the instructor to move up any number of files, the platoon

---

* Rules and Regulations, Part III, Sec. 90.

or

or subdivision commander repeats the word, and orders *One, Two, Three, &c., Files to the front,* which is the signal for the number so mentioned to turn (here to the left), and, by lengthening their pace, to march up file by file to the front of their division or subdivision, resuming the ordinary pace the instant they are in line;—those files which are to continue in the rear at the same time oblique outwards (here the left), and likewise step out to cover and close up to the three files now on the left flank of the platoon or subdivision.

When the second division arrives at the ground where the first increased, the same number of files are added to its front, the command being repeated by its leader, and the operation performed as explained for the advanced one.

The attentions in the instructor, in breaking off files, are—

1st. To remark if the proper words of command be given; and if the files directed to the rear, or from the rear to the front, retire or advance in the manner prescribed.

2d. To notice whether the leader of the second subdivision (or every other rear division, where there are more than two) is precise in directing the same number of files to the front or rear as were broken off by the division in its front, and whether he is exact in ordering it at the very spot on which it was executed by the preceding one.

3d. That the files lock well up, and do not impede the advance of the succeeding division.

4th. To observe, where only a part of the files thrown back are ordered to the front, that those which are to remain in the rear oblique to the pivot side, and lengthen their paces so as to cover and lock up to the three files now become the three flank ones.

The company is likewise frequently, both in division as well as in files, to be moved in the quick cadence,

cadence, and thus made to perform every movement liable to be executed at this accelerated step; the directions already enumerated for this march being carefully attended to, the knees neither stiffened nor bent in the taking of the pace, and the degree of celerity (108 in a minute) observed throughout.

S. 24. *Forming to the Front from File.*

R. R. Part II. *S.* 60.—" The platoon, when " marching in file, may form to its front, either in " sections, subdivisions, or in platoon, the right flank " being supposed to lead. On the word *Halt, Front,* " the platoon instantly halts, and faces to its left; " the caution is then given, *By Sections, Subdivisions,* " or *Platoon on the left backward wheel;* and at the " word *March* the wheel ordered is made, in the " manner directed (R. and R. Sec. 48)," Part II. Sec. 13, every command, except the words *Halt, Dress,* after the wheel is concluded, being here delivered by the instructor, or by the commander when in battalion.

" But, in situations where it may have been neces- " sary to order an extension of files (such as will " sometimes occur in marching through the streets of " a town), a body thus moving, in order to avoid in- " correct distances between the divisions may form to " the front in the following manner, either by platoon, " subdivisions, or sections:—On the word *To the front* " *form Platoon,* the front rank man of the leading file " alone halts, and is instantly covered by his centre and " rear rank men: every other file of the platoon makes " a half face to the left, and, successively moving up, " dresses on the right file. When the commander of " the platoon sees it is properly dressed, he gives the " word *Eyes left,* and places himself on the pivot " flank."

" Should

" Should the order have been *To the front form*
" *Subdivisions (form Sections)*, the leading sub-
" division or section will proceed in the manner already
" detailed for the platoon; the succeeding subdivisions
" or sections will each continue moving on, until its
" front file arrives at the proper forming distance from
" the division in its front, when it will receive from its
" commander the word *To the front form*, and will
" instantly form up by files in the manner already
" described."

Were the left instead of the right the conducting flank in file, the column of subdivision or sections thus formed would be reversed*, and the files, in coming up, half face and form to the right, to which side the eyes would likewise be directed at the conclusion of the movement, the right being always the pivot flank when the left leads the column.

An attention which appears particularly requisite, in all successive formations by files, is to guard the soldiers in coming up against overshooting the line of dress,—a fault they are very much addicted to, and, which, though chiefly caused by their being too precipitate in entering the line, with a view to accelerate the movement, will however prove of a contrary tendency, and by obliging the files which are behind, and have still to come up, to move to the front more than is necessary, considerably retard the dressing of the line, and consequently delay its formation.

The attentions of the instructor, in forming to the front from file, when it is performed by the first method, are,—

1st. To see whether, at the words *Halt, Front*, the whole instantly halt and front on the identical spot they halted; and should any improper chasm have occurred,

* A column is denominated reversed when the left is in front, and leads. A battalion, after wheeling to its left, or backwards on its right, stands in a column reversed.

while

while proceeding in file, that they do not shift to the flank to fill it up.

2d. That, in wheeling into column, the directions already given for the wheeling backwards be not neglected; and therefore that the pivots, in facing, perform regularly the two motions; that the outward flank men step out a pace of thirty-three inches; that the dress be preserved in going round, and the eyes fixed to the wheeling flank, &c.

3d. To see that the wheelings are performed in their exact cadence of 120 paces in a minute.

When the Formation takes place by the second Method.

1st. To notice whether, at the words *To the front form Platoon, Subdivisions, or Sections*, the front rank man of the leading file halts, and whether the other files, making a half face, successively move up and dress on those already formed.

2d. That, in coming up, no unnecessary hurry be displayed; and particular care taken not to pass the line of dress, each file, in advancing into the alignement, remaining close and rather to the rear of that placed on the hand the formation is to, and which is entering the line immediately before it.

3d. To see that the centre and rear rank men follow the motion of their respective front file leaders, and cover them in the line the instant they are posted.

4th. To observe, when the distances have not been correctly preserved in marching by files, that, in the formation of the column of subdivisions or sections, the front files of the subdivision or sections which are successively to form, and to which the rear files are to come up, halt the instant they approach at the proper wheeling distance from the subdivision or section which is immediately before them.

5th.

5th. To notice if, at the words *Eyes Right* or *Left*, eyes are brought to the directing flank, and if the line be quickly dressed.

S. 25. *Forming from File to either Flank.*

R. R. Part II. *S.* 61.—" The platoon marching in " file (suppose from the right) has only to halt and front " to be formed to the left flank."

" To form to the right it will receive the word *To " the right form;* the front rank man of the leading " file instantly turns to his right, and halts; his centre " and rear rank men at the same time move round, and " cover him. All the other files of the platoon make " a half turn to their left, and move round successively " in a line with the right hand file, the centre and rear " rank men of each file keeping closed well up to their " file leaders."

It is easily inferred from the foregoing that a body filing with its left ahead will form to its right by merely halting and fronting, but will require the successive formation by files to the left to form front towards that flank, and thus in either case, execute the contrary movement to that it would have performed had the right been leading.

The attentions in the instructor, in forming from file to either flank, are—

1st. When the formation is performed by merely halting and fronting, to see that the whole halt together, and front on the identical spot they halted on, without inclining to either flank, or attempting to recover the ground lost (had any been improperly so) while proceeding by files.

2d. To observe, in the successive formation by files, whether, at the delivery of the command *To the*

the Right or Left form, the front man of the leading file turns instantly, and halts in the true direction of the intended line.

3d. To see that the other files, which are following, proceed and move up in proper time, the centre and rear rank men being guided in their motions by their file leaders, whom they cover as soon as they have taken post in the line.

4th. That, in forming, the files move up successively, without either hurry or unnecessary delay, and do not pass the line of dress.

5th. To notice particularly whether the files, in moving in the rear of those already formed, keep close to the rear rank.

S. 26. *To form to either Flank from Open Column of Subdivisions.*

R. R. Part II. *S.* 62.—" A PLATOON marching in " the ordinary time in open column of subdivision," the right in front, " to form to its left receives the " words *Halt, Left Wheel into Line, Quick March*," which are given by the instructor, and *Halt, Dress, Eyes front*, which are pronounced by the platoon commander; and then proceeds as already shewn in Part II., Sect. 16.

But in the instance of a platoon proceeding, as above, in column of subdivisions, and with its right in front, to form to the right, the instructor of the drill should give the cautionary word of command, *To the Right form Platoon (R. R. Part* II. *S.* 62.*)*, " on which " the commanders of the several divisions shift to the " right flank, and the commander of the leading sub- " division instantly gives the word to his division " *Halt, Right Wheel;* and, when it has wheeled " square, he orders *Halt, Right Dress;* goes to the " right

" right flank of his division, and dresses it on the in-
" tended line of formation. The commander of the
" other subdivision, on the leading one being ordered
" to wheel, gives the word *To the Left Oblique*, and
" gradually inclines, so as to be able to march clear
" of the rear rank of the division forming; this being
" well effected, the word *Forward* will be given to the
" division, and it will move on in the rear of the one
" formed. When the second subdivision is arrived at
" the left flank of the first, its commander gives the
" word *Right Wheel*, then *Halt*, *Dress up*; on which
" the division moves up into the line with the one
" formed; and its commander, from the left of his
" first division, dresses his own on the given flank point
" as quickly and as accurately as possible, and re-
" sumes his proper platoon place."

A repetition of the foregoing movements will take place when an open column of subdivisions, the left in front, is to form line to either flank. However, as the pivots are in that case removed to the opposite flank (the right), the formation to the right will then be effected by the wheeling into line, and the forming to the left by the successive wheeling up of the subdivisions.

It is likewise to be observed that the methods above described for forming the platoon from a column of subdivisions are likewise applicable to a column of sections, each rear section, when the formation is directed to the reverse flank, successively wheeling up, and acting as already explained for the second subdivision.

The attentions in the instructor, when the formation of the line from open column takes place to the pivot side, are—

1st. To see that, at the word *Halt*, every individual brings his rear foot up to the advanced one, and remains perfectly steady the instant he has so done.

2d. At the caution to wheel, to observe that the platoon chief steps in front of his subdivision or section;

section; and that those in charge of the rear subdivisions or sections repair to the posts they would have occupied had the wheel been performed by the whole company acting in a single body.

3d. Whether, at the same caution, a serjeant runs out to mark the ground where the wheeling flank of the leading division is to rest; and whether the pivots, in facing, perform the two motions.

4th. To notice if, while wheeling, due regard is paid to the directions already laid down for the performance of that movement.

5th. To observe that the words *Halt, Dress*, be given for the whole company by the platoon commander; and that the same officer be alert in dressing his men the instant they have halted.

When the Formation takes place on the reverse Hand, and Subdivisions or Sections come up successively,

1st. To ascertain, at the caution *To the Right or Left form Platoon,* whether the leading subdivision or section receives instantly the direction to wheel from its commander, and whether the leaders of the remaining subdivisions or sections shift their flank so as to post themselves on the one the formation is now ordered to.

2d. That the commander of the leading subdivision or section, in dressing it on the distant object, is exact in placing his men in the true alignement, and alert in doing so.

3d. To observe if the covering serjeant who has charge of the second subdivision be exact in directing it successively and in proper time to oblique to the proper pivot flank, to clear the rear ranks of the part of the line already formed, as well as to resume the march to the front when this is effected; and likewise to observe if he be precise in giving to his subdivision the word *Wheel* the instant it has cleared the outward flank of the first, which took post in the line before it.

4th.

4th. To see, when it is performed by sections, that the officers and non-commissioned officers in charge of those placed in the rear, conduct themselves in the manner prescribed for the leader of the second subdivision, directing their respective sections to oblique, to resume the march forward, as well as to wheel up in proper time, each section receiving the latter command the instant it clears the flank of that already in line, and next to which it is to form.

5th. To remark whether the leaders of the rear divisions, subdivisions, or sections, are alert in dressing their men; and also whether, after having done so, and given in a moderate tone of voice the words *Eyes front*, they are exact in repairing to their proper post in the line.

6th. To notice if the proper words of command are made use of, and no other substituted for them.

7th. To take care that the rear divisions move close behind those already formed, and therefore do not oblique more than the clearing of the rear rank will require; otherwise unnecessary ground must inevitably be moved over, and the formation in consequence of it be considerably retarded*.

S. 27. *The Platoon moving to the Front to gain ground to a Flank by a march in Echelon by Sections.*

An instruction which is likewise not to be omitted in the company drill is that of the march in echelon by

* This direction, though apparently unimportant for the front of a platoon, and perhaps even for the front of a battalion, becomes, however, of serious moment where a considerable column of several battalions is thus to form the line by the successive wheel of its divisions, and should not, therefore, be neglected at the drill of the company.

by sections, this movement being of great utility in enabling a battalion or considerable body moving in line to incline to either flank, and is therefore advantageously substituted for the oblique step whenever the great extension of front renders the execution of this latter march precarious. *(R. R. Part* II. *S.* 63.*)*
" It will be performed in the following manner :"—
" The platoon, marching to the front in the ordinary " time, receives the words *By Sections to the Right;* " the right-hand men of the front rank of each sec- " tion, turning in a small degree to their right, mark " the time two or three paces, during which the sec- " tions are wheeling in ordinary time on their pivot " men ; at the fourth pace, and at the word *Forward*, " the whole move on direct to the front that each " section has now acquired ; and the commander of " each section having taken post on the right of " his division, the platoon continues its march in " echelon."

" On the word *Form Platoon* the pivot men mark " the time for three paces, turning back in a small de- " gree to their left, the original front, and the sections " instantly wheel backward into line; at the fourth " pace the whole move forward. When the platoon is " in two ranks only, two paces instead of three will be " sufficient to mark time, and to step off at the third " instead of the fourth pace."

The manner in which this formation in echelon by sections is to be effected to the left being easily deduced from the foregoing, it will prove sufficient to observe here, that, when they wheel to the right, the platoon officer remains posted on the right flank of the leading section, his doubling serjeant stands on the same flank of the second, and officers or non-commissioned officers from the supernumerary rank take charge of the third and fourth, should the strength of the company admit the latter number ; but as, in wheeling into echelon to the left, officers and serjeants are posted on that flank, when it is performed by sections,

sections, the platoon commander remaining with his right section, now in the rear, shifts to the left, his covering serjeant assumes the same position with that immediately before it, and either officers or non-commissioned officers from the supernumerary rank take charge in like manner of the two left sections, now brought ahead by this movement. On the line being re-formed, every individual resumes his proper situation in it.

An attention, which will materially assist the flank leaders in preserving the parallel position while moving in echelon, is always to cover the file of the division in their immediate front, behind which they stood at first on formation, and to keep correct distance from it. However, this direction is not to be obeyed without caution; and should an officer or non-commissioned officer thus following discover that the preceding division has deviated from its true line of march by either inclining to a flank or by not fronting the proper diagonal, he is not, on any account, to be influenced by this mistake, but rather endeavour, as far as lays in his power, to correct it, so as to obviate the effect it must necessarily produce, without this precaution, on the divisions which are moving in his rear*.

The instructor's attentions, while gaining ground to a flank by a march in echelon by sections, are—

1st. To see whether the pivot man of each section, turning in a small degree, marks time twice if there are two ranks, or thrice if there are three; and whether in the former case, at the third, or, in the latter,

---

* For the purpose of ensuring the greater exactness in the performance of those wheels into echelon by sections, they may, as well as the whole of the preceding movements, be at first practised at the drill without arms in the mode recommended for the first instruction of the wheelings, Part I., Sect. 22, step by step, a halt taking place after the performing of each pace.

at

at the fourth, he steps again to the front; the command *Forward* being heard at the same time.

2d. That, while the pivots mark time, the sections wheel up to the ordered hand, preserving the cadence in which they were before proceeding.

3d. To observe if the word *Forward* be given in its proper time; and if, at its delivery, the whole at once step steadily to the front.

4th. To notice, while thus moving in echelon, whether the leaders are at their proper flank; on the right, if the movement has been performed to the right, and on the left if the wheels have been taken to the left.

5th. To see the officers and non-commissioned officers with their proper section; and therefore, whether the wheels be performed to the right or to the left, and consequently whether the right or left section leads, the platoon commander always posted with the right section; his covering serjeant, with the second from the right, and officers or non-commissioned officers from the supernumerary rank, take post with the third and fourth section.

6th. To observe that the distances, the echelon position, as well as the perpendicular direction of march, are properly preserved; and to be particularly cautious that the advanced flank is not thrown to the front, this being the error most likely to occur while moving in echelon.

7th. That officers and non-commissioned officers in charge of sections be careful to follow exactly the file of the preceding division, in the rear of which they stood at first on formation; and that they keep distance from * it.

---

* Should, however, the section to which such file belongs err visibly in its direction of march, or deviate from its parallel position, the leader of the succeeding one, as it has already been observed, should not, on any account, follow the path erroneously

In

In Re-forming the Line.

8th. To see that, at the command to form the line, the pivots mark time twice or thrice; and, while doing so, turn into their original front.

9th. To observe whether the men, in wheeling back, step at the full length of pace; and whether at the third or fourth pace, and at the giving of the word *Forward*, the whole are in line ready to move to the front.

10th. That, in re-forming the line, officers and non-commissioned officers in charge of sections are alert in resuming their proper post in the line.

S. 28. *Wheeling into Echelon.*

The company should also be practised to wheel to either flank, to its front as well as to its rear, a named number of paces into the echelon position, in which companies are frequently thrown while acting in battalion or in the line, the echelon movement, besides the purport already adduced of enabling a body to incline to either flank while moving to the front or to the rear, being requisite and applicable to the immediate attack and retreat of considerable bodies, as well as peculiarly adapted to all great changes of position; and in those latter cases, both on account of its easy execution as well as safe performance, the movement generally preferred whenever such alterations become necessary in the presence of an enemy.

---

traced out by the section in his front; but, as far as circumstances will allow him, move so as to correct the mistake, and thereby obviate any bad influence it might produce on the rear divisions.

R. R.

R. R. Part III. *S.* 154.—When this movement is performed to the front, at the caution *Company, Two* (four, or any number) *Paces to the Right* or *Left Wheel, and form Echelon*, given by the instructor, the officer, if not already at the named flank, faces about and shifts to it; while the covering serjeant moves out, and, placing himself before the eighth file from the same flank, takes immediately the directed number of wheeling paces on a circumference of which the intended pivot man is the centre, and halts the instant he has done so with his body turned into the line of that flank or pivot man, who himself, as soon as the serjeant is posted, also faces into the line of his serjeant *. At the words *Quick March*, the whole,

---

* To understand the principle on which this direction is established, it is necessary to recollect what has been said in Part I., Sect. 22, Note *, respecting the number of paces requisite to accomplish the quarter of the circle; and it will be easily inferred, from what is there laid down, that the covering serjeant, by posting himself in front or behind the eighth file, must, by stepping over the circumference this file would describe in wheeling at the lengthened pace of thirty-three inches, in eight steps complete the wheel or quarter circle, in six perform the three-fourths of a wheel, in four the half wheel, and effect the quarter wheel, or the sixteenth of the circle, in two paces.

Now, these being the positions the divisions of a line or of a column are most frequently thrown into, and which, with the assistance of the advancing or keeping back of a shoulder as circumstances will point out while in movement, will suffice to arrive and form in any new direction with precision, it will be easy for a commander to place the division in any of the above degrees of obliquity, by only mentioning the number of wheeling paces the serjeants are to take in front or in rear of their respective company; an operation which would by no means be so simple and easily expressed were the intended echelon to be obtained by the number of steps performed by the outward flank men, as they would vary according to the strength of the companies, and require, for instance, to produce a half wheel six paces if the divisions consisted of twelve files, and only four if they were composed but of eight, and thus

M guided

guided by the outward flank man, on the principle of the wheel, move round till the eighth file touches the serjeant, when, at the command *Halt, Dress*, pronounced by the platoon officer, who is on the standing flank, eyes are immediately turned to him and so kept until, the dressing being accomplished, he orders them to the front, which command is also the signal for the serjeant to leave his present position, and place himself on the outward flank, his post

---

demand both a different calculation and word of command under every circumstance; a difficulty which would still greatly increase when the divisions were of unequal strength, which must, however, be expected in a line, where, although this equality might probably exist amongst the companies of the same battalion, it can hardly be expected amongst those of different corps.

To obviate this embarrassment, as well as to simplify the movement, it has been directed by the Regulations, and adopted as a practical rule (*R. & R. Part* III., *Echelon*), "as well for the "battalion as for the line, on all occasions of wheeling by com"panies into echelon in order to change position and of what"ever strength the companies may be (viz.), that each covering "serjeant, as the case requires, having previously placed him"self before or behind a given file (the eighth) from the stand"ing flank, shall take the named number of wheeling paces, "and thereby become a direction for the company to wheel up "to and halt."

As any of the other files might have been chosen as well as the eighth, it appears not improper to adduce here the reason for its obtaining the preference, and which is, because eight is the only number under twelve capable of being divided without fractions, into a half, a quarter, and an eighth, the wheels which, as already observed, most frequently occur in practice; and although the twelfth file might have likewise so far answered the same purpose, it would have confined its application to divisions of at least twelve files, and consequently proved of much less general use *.

* In some regiments, in the formation of echelon to the front, they bring the division in line with the advanced serjeant, instead of dressing it in its rear. This mode, by throwing the whole a pace too much to the front, is evidently wrong; and as the dressing, which it was intended to facilitate, is by no means forwarded by it, it may be looked upon, like most of the suggested improvements on the existing Regulations, as only calculated to derange the principles on which the movements are established.

whenever

whenever the company is brought into the echelon position.

The wheelings into echelon to the rear may be either effected by the whole facing at first to the right about, and then wheeling forward, the rear rank a-head, as if the line was placed on its proper front; or by the divisions, previous to the change from front to the rear, being thrown backwards into the required direction, and then ordered to face about. This latter method, which possesses the advantage over the former of preventing the line from standing an unnecessary time faced to the rear, is executed as follows:—

At the caution, delivered by the instructor, *Two (Four,* or any number) *Paces on your Right* or *Left, backwards Wheel and form Echelon,* the officers, if not already so, face about, and move to the mentioned flank; and the covering serjeant, placing himself with his back to the eighth file of the rear rank, takes on the circumference, as before explained, the ordered number of wheeling paces, and halts, fronts, with his body turned in the line of the flank or pivot man on whom he wheeled, and who himself, the instant the serjeant is posted, faces into his proper position. At the command *Quick March,* the whole, except the pivot man, wheel back, till the rear rank man of the eighth file touches the breast of the posted serjeant, who gives a low caution to halt, which being instantly repeated by the words of the officer *Halt, Dress,* this latter, from the pivot flank where he stands, corrects the line, which being completed, he directs the eyes to the front, when the covering serjeant moves to the outward flank *.

* *Fig.* 47 exhibits this wheel performed forward to the right; *fig.* 48, forward to the left; *fig.* 49, backwards on the right; and *fig.* 50, backwards on the left.

 When

When this movement is performed in battalion, the serjeants thus advanced in front or moved to the rear of the eighth file of their respective companies ought all to be in a line A. B., *figs.* 47, 49, and consequently corrected from the leading flank; if not so, another attention, which appears likewise to claim the special notice of the field-officers whenever the battalion or considerable body is advancing or retreating by the echelon movement, is to see the diagonal covering of the pivots or standing flanks properly preserved while in motion, this being absolutely necessary to the quick formation of the line, and therefore of the utmost importance on the present occasion.

The attentions in the instructor in the echelon movement are—

1st. To see that the officers, if not already at the named pivot, face to the right about, and proceed thither.

2d. To observe, when the wheel is ordered to the front, whether the covering serjeant places himself smartly before the eighth file and takes the ordered number of steps at the lengthened pace of thirty-three inches, and whether in doing so he pursues the circumference of the circle he is to describe.

3d. When executed to the rear, that the same covering serjeant, placing himself with his back behind the rear rank man of the eighth file, takes the directed number of lengthened paces on the true circumference he is to go over, and that he halts, fronts, after having done so.

4th. To notice whether the pivot man is exact in facing into the new line the instant the serjeant has posted himself.

5th. To see that, when the wheels are to the front, the rear ranks lock up at the caution, and perform this regularly as explained.

6th. That every direction recommended for the wheeling

wheeling to the front or to the rear be carefully observed when either of these movements are executed.

7th. To observe, after the intended degree of wheel has been accomplished, whether the serjeant is precisely in front or behind the eighth file; for, if so situated at the conclusion of the movement, it is a convincing proof that he has correctly traced the proposed circumference; but, should he be found in front or behind any of the other files, it must be equally evident that he has erred in the direction of march while stepping to the front or rear.

8th. That, at the delivery of the command, *Eyes front*, eyes are instantly directed as desired; and that the covering serjeant takes post on the outward flank, in line with the front rank *.

S. 29. *From three Ranks forming into two Ranks.*

R. R. Part II. *S.* 64.—" The platoon halted, is " ordered *Form two deep*; the rear rank men of the " left subdivision instantly step back one pace," per-

---

* When performed in battalion, in addition to the attentions enumerated in the foregoing, it is necessary to observe, previous to the giving of the words *Quick March*, whether the advanced or retired serjeants are all in a line; and after the degree of wheel has been completed, and the words *Halt, Dress*, given by each platoon commander to his respective division, whether the pivots, in facing, have not deviated from the original line in which they stood, and whether their oblique covering is preserved.

forming

forming this altogether. "On the word *Left face,* "the rear rank of both subdivisions face; the word "*Quick March* is then given, on which the men of "the rear rank of the left subdivision (the very same "which at first stepped back) step short until those "of the right get up to them; they then move on "with them in file. As their rear is clearing the left "flank of the platoon, the commander (who has "shifted to that flank during the movement) gives "the words *Halt, Front, Dress up;* he instantly "dresses them on the standing part of his platoon, "and resumes his post on the right. One third, or "one more subdivision, is thus added to the front of "the company."

"If a battalion is standing in open column, it may "thus increase the front of its companies before it "forms in line; but if it is already in line, and thus "to increase its front, its companies must take suffi- "cient intervals from each other before their re- "spective rear ranks can come up. If a battalion in "line is posted, and, without deranging its front, is "to lengthen out a flank by the aid of its rear rank, "it would order that rank to wheel backwards by "subdivisions: the last subdivision of each company "would close up to its first one: all the subdivisions "(on the head one) would move forward to open "column: an officer would be named to command "those of each two companies; the open column "would move on and wheel into line on the flank of "the battalion. In this manner also would a line of "several battalions lengthen itself out by the rear "ranks of each."

The attentions in the instructor, in forming two from three deep, are--

1st. To observe whether, at the command *Form two deep,* the men belonging to the rear rank of the left subdivision instantly and together take a step to the

the rear; and whether, after having done so, they remain perfectly steady.

2d. To see that, at the command *Left face*, the whole of the men of the rear rank in facing perform the two motions.

3d. To notice if, at the word *Quick March*, the men belonging to the rear rank of the first subdivision move on; and that those of the rear rank of the second, who have already fallen back a pace, mark time until the others come up, and then march on with them.

4th. To observe that the officer shifting to the left flank, is precise in giving the words *Halt*, *Front*, *Dress*, the instant the rear rank has cleared that flank, as well as smart in dressing his men before he resumes his post on the right.

5th. To see that, while marching by files, no distance is lost; and that, on the command *Halt*, *Front*, every individual instantly halts, and fronts on the identical spot on which he has halted.

6th. That, in coming up, the men do not pass the line of dress, but move in the alignement gradually, without hurry, keeping rather to the rear, and never to the front, of the next file on their right,—the side towards which they look, and dress from, on the present occasion.

S. 30. *From two Ranks forming into three Ranks.*

R. R. Part II. *S.* 65.—" THE platoon being halted " and told off into three sections, it receives the words " *Form three deep;* on which the third section in- " stantly

"stantly steps back one pace, the whole performing "this together. The word *Right face* is then given, "and the man on the right of its front rank on facing "disengages a little to its right. On the word *Quick* "*March*, the front rank men of the third section step "off; those of the other rank mark the time till they "have passed, and then follow. When the leading "man has got to the right of the platoon, the com-"mander gives the words *Halt*, *Front*, on which each "man halts, faces to his left, and instantly covers his "proper file leader*."

"A rear rank which has lengthened out, and formed "on the flank of its battalion, would return to its "place by wheeling back into open column of sub-"divisions; marching till each arrived at his flank "point; the leading rank of each would wheel up, and "cover; and the second rank would move behind it, "and also wheel up."

The attentions in the instructor, when from two ranks three are formed, are,—

1st. To see that, at the word *Form three deep*, the whole of the men of the third section take all together a pace to the rear, and remain perfectly steady after doing so.

2d. To observe whether, at the word *Right face*, the same men of the third section, in facing, perform the two motions; and whether the front files, after facing, immediately disengage by taking a side step to the rear †.

3d. That, on the word *Quick March*, the men be-

---

* To train the whole of the men of the company to this movement, each section ought in its turn to be posted on the left, and be made to act as a third one.

† When a body is placed two deep, one pace will prove sufficient for the three head files to disengage to the rear; but two paces are required when there are three ranks.

longing

longing to the front rank of the third section, which has faced, move on, and those of the rear rank *mark time* till they have passed, and then follow them.

4th. To notice if the officer be exact in giving in proper time, and as soon as the leading man arrives at his point on the right of his platoon *, the direction to *Halt, Front;* and if, on receiving the command, the men now composing the rear rank halt, front, and cover instantly their proper file leaders.

---

* The method of allowing the leading man to mark the paces so as to give time to those in his rear to come up and correct false intervals, is exceedingly prejudicial, and, by admitting the existence of faults, calculated to promote their occurrence,—a circumstance which at all times ought to be carefully avoided, and particularly so at the drill, where the immediate object being the instruction, no irregularity in the execution of the movements can be admitted, and even the slightest mistake requires to be invariably noticed and rectified.

CHAP.

CHAP. II.

S 31. *Exercise of the Company.*

THE utility of the company drill being already fully shewn in the foregoing, as well as the different modes in which it should take place *, it appears necessary to add here only the order in which the movements may be practised under those several circumstances. This is attempted in the following pages. However, the succession in which the movements are laid down must be looked upon rather as a system for the instructor's guidance than as a rule never to be departed from, as it is evident that different companies will require the more frequent repetition of particular movements; and that, notwithstanding the necessity there is for practising the men in every movement, the instructor's attention must be chiefly directed to those in which a company appears the most defective; and their performance naturally engross more than is allowed in the general plan here proposed.

FIRST.

When the Company is divided into Squads, each of seven or eight Men; placed at open Files, and superintended by a non-commissioned Officer.

1st. The non-commissioned officer is to see whether the men are placed in the true position directed for the soldier; Part I., Sect. 3.

---

* Which is both with arms as well as without them, by squads, each superintended by a non-commissioned officer, and by the whole of the company acting in body together.

2d.

2d. Stand at ease, Part I., Sect. 5. Resume the attention, Part I., Sect. 5.

3d. Direct eyes to the right; to the left; to the front, Part I., Section 6.

4th. Face to the right; to the left; to the right about face; to the left about face, Part I., Sect. 7; face outwards; face inwards*.

5th. Balancing pace, Part I., Sect. 8; about eighty or ninety paces.

6th. March to the front in the ordinary time, Part I., Sec. 8.

7th. While on the march; to mark time, Part I., Sect. 13. Step short, Part I., Sect. 14. Step out, Part I., Sect. 12. Change feet, Part I., Sect. 15. Turn to the right and left about, Part I., Sect. 39. Halt, Part I., Sect. 9.

8th. March to the front in quick time; mark time; step short; step out; change feet, Part I., Sect. 18. Turn to the right and left about, Part I., Sect. 39. Halt, Part I., Sect. 18.

9th. The oblique step first in the methodical manner, to the right and to the left, Part I., Sect. 10. In the ordinary time to the right and to the left, Part I., Sect. 10. In the quick movement to the right and to the left, Part I., Sect. 10 and 18.

10th. Side step about twenty or thirty paces to the right; as many to the left, Part I., Sect. 16.

11th. Back step about twenty paces in the ordinary time; quick time; quickest time, Part I., Sect. 17.

Ten or twelve files being now assembled at close files—

---

* In facing outwards the men face from the centre towards the flanks, which causes the two centre men, when the movement is performed, to stand with their backs to each other; but as, in facing inwards, the men change front to the centre, the same centre men are brought opposite to and facing each other by the latter movement.

12th.

12th. Dress forward by the right; by the left: dress backward by the right; backward by the left, Part I., Sect. 11.

13th. Stand at ease; resume the attention, Part I., Sect. 5.

14th. Facing to the right; to the left: facing to the right about: facing to the left about, Part I., Sect. 7.

15th. March to the front and rear in the ordinary time, the right and left flank alternately leading, Part I., Sect. 38.

16th. While proceeding to the front in the ordinary time, mark time, Part I., Sect. 13. Step short, Part I., Sect. 14. Step out, Part I., Sect. 12. Change feet, Part I., Sect. 15. Oblique to the right and to the left, Part I., Sect. 43. Turn to the right about and left about, Part I., Sect. 39. Halt, Part I., Sect. 9.

17th. March to the front and rear in the quick movement, the right and left flank alternately leading the motion, Part I., Sect 38; and, while on the march, mark time, Part I., Sect. 18. Step short, Part I., Sect. 18. Step out, Part I., Sect. 18. Change feet, Part I., Sect. 18. Oblique to the right and left, Part I., Sect. 43. Turn to the right about and left about, Part I., Sect. 39.

18th. Face to the right or left, and perform the file marching in the methodical manner; in the ordinary and quick movement; halt; front, Part I., Sect. 21.

19th. While marching to the front, turn to the right and to the left, Part I., Sect. 39. Proceed by files, Part I., Sect. 21. Wheel by files, Part I., Sect. 42. Turn to the right or left, and pursue the march to the front or rear, Part I., Sect. 39. The whole of this being first performed in the ordinary time, and then in the quick time.

20th. Face to the right or left in files; oblique to the

the right and left in the methodical manner; in the ordinary time; in the quick movement, Part I., Sect. 44.

21st. Wheeling from the halt in the methodical manner, both to the right and to the left; in the ordinary time, to the right and to the left; in the quickest time, to the right and to the left, Part I., Sect. 22.

22d. Wheeling backward on the right and on the left in the methodical manner; in the ordinary time; in the quickest time, Part I., Sect. 24.

23d. Wheeling backwards by facing to the right about in the quickest cadence to the right; to the left, Part I., Sect. 25.

A square of seventy or eighty yards, or more, being now marked out—

24th. To march along the side of the square; wheel at its four angles, Part I., Sect. 23; the wheels being performed to the right as well as to the left.

25th. Wheel on a moveable pivot, the right flank leading, and tracing out the larger as well as the smaller circle; the left flank leading, and passing over the larger as well as the smaller circle, Part I., Sect. 26.

The men placed thus in a rank may now likewise be practised in the peculiar movements required from them when placed in a centre or in a rear rank.

26th. To advance each individual successively to the front, and direct him, on the command *Rear Rank take Open Order, March* (which is to be repeated therefore twice to each), to act first as a centre rank pivot, and then as the pivot of a rear rank, Part I., Sect. 31.

27th. The same to be repeated two by two, the one acting as pivot of the centre rank, and the other as pivot of the rear rank, Part I., Sect. 31.

28th. At the command *Rear Rank take Open Order*, to direct the whole of the rank to execute the same first

first as a centre rank, and then as a rear rank, Part I., Sect. 31.

29th. To accustom the men, at the cautions, to advance, to wheel forward, or to fire; to take, all together, a short step to the front, and to repeat the same for a rear or third rank by taking two short steps in the same manner, Part I., latter part of Sect. 36.

30th. While marching to the front in the ordinary time, at the command *Rear Rank take Open Order, March*, direct the rank to act first as a centre and next as a rear rank, Part I., Sect. 40.

Twenty, thirty, and occasionally the whole company, being now placed on a single rank, may be practised as follows:—

31st. Dress forward by the right; by the left; dress backward by the right; by the left, Part I., Sect. 11.

32d. Stand at ease; resume the attention, Part I., Sect. 5.

33d. Face to the right; face to the left; face to the right about; face to the left about, Part. I., Sect. 7.

34th. Perform a hundred steps in the balancing pace, Part I., Sect. 8.

35th. Marching to the front and rear in the ordinary time, both right and left flank alternately leading the march, Part I., Sect. 38.

36th. While proceeding to the front in the ordinary time, mark time, Part I., Sect. 13; step short, Part I., Sect. 14; step out, Part I., Sect. 12; change feet, Part I., Sect. 15; oblique to the right and to the left, Part I., Sect, 38, 43; turn to the right about and left about, Part I., Sect. 39; halt, Part I., Sect. 9, 38.

37th. March to the front and rear in the quick cadence; mark time; step short; step out; change feet, Part I., Sect. 18 and 38; oblique to the right and to the left, Part I., Sect. 43; turn to the right about and

and left about, Part I., Sect. 39; halt, Part I., Sect. 9 and 38.

38th. Take twenty or thirty paces to the right and to the left with the side step, Part I., Sect. 16.

39th. Step back in the ordinary, quick, and quickest time, Part I. Sect. 17 and 18.

40th. Face to the right or left, and proceed by files in the ordinary time; in the quick time; halt, front, Part I., Sect. 21 and 41.

41st. While marching to the front, turn to the right and to the left, Part I., Sect. 39; proceed by files, Part I., Sect. 21; wheel by files to the right and to the left, Part I., Sect. 42; oblique to the right and to the left, Part I., Sect. 43; turn again to the right or left, so as to resume the march to the front or rear, Part I., Sect. 39; the whole of this being first executed in the ordinary, and then in the quick movement.

42d. Wheeling from the halt in the quickest time to the right and to the left*, Part I., Sect. 22 and 45.

43d. Wheeling backwards from the halt in the quickest time, both on the right and on the left, Part I., Sect. 24 and 46†.

44th. Wheeling backwards by facing to the right about, to the right, and to the left, Part I., Sect. 25 and 47.

45th. March along the square; wheel on its four corners to the right as well as to the left; and perform

* Great advantage will probably be derived from a quarter or a half wheel being executed in the methodical mode proposed Part I., Sect. 22, which, by displaying and unfolding the movement, will cause the driller to discover the faults as well as detect the defaulters, and consequently enable him the better to apply the necessary corrections.

† When these wheels are not performed with due precision, the person who drills may, as recommended in wheeling to the front, direct a quarter or half wheel to be taken in the methodical mode, step by step.

this

this at first while moving in the ordinary time, and afterwards while moving in the quick cadence, Part I., Sect. 23 and 48.

46th. Wheel on a moveable pivot, the right flank leading and tracing out the larger as well as the smaller circle; the left leading, and stepping over the larger as well as the smaller arch, Part I., Sect. 26 and 49.

The rank may now likewise be practised in the following movements of a centre and of a rear rank:—

47th. First, at the command *Rear Rank take Open Order*, to act as if it were a centre rank, and then as if it were a rear rank, Part I., Sect. 31.

48th. To accustom the men, on the cautions, to advance, to wheel, or to fire; to take one and two short steps to the front, as practised by the men of the rear ranks; to lock up, Part I., latter part of Sect. 36.

49th. While advancing to the front, on the direction to take open order, to act first as a centre and then as a rear rank, Part I., Sect. 49.

SECOND.

When the Company is divided into Squads of seven or eight; at open distance, as before, but with Arms.

1st. The Manual Exercise, a stop taking place after the performance of each motion, Part I., Sect. 32.

2d. The Manual Exercise, going through the motions in the directed time, Part I., Sect. 32.

3d. The Platoon Exercise in the methodical manner, a pause being made after the performance of each motion, Part I., Sect. 34.

4th. The Platoon Exercise, going through the motions in the directed time, and repeating them afterwards as centre rank, as rear rank, and as front rank kneeling, Part I., Sect. 34 and 35.

5th. To go through the motions of the Platoon Exercise on the mere command of *Prime and Load*, Part I., Sect. 35.

6th.

6th. The motions not comprehended either in the Manual or Platoon exercise, a pause taking place at first after each motion, and then the whole of the motion being executed at once, Part I., Sect. 33.

7th. Fire to the front; obliquely to the right; obliquely to the left, Part I., Sect. 36.

8th. Fire two ranks kneeling, as front rank, as rear rank, Part I., Sect. 37.

Ten or twelve files, being now assembled at close ranks, will be directed * with arms.

9th. To stand at ease, and attention, Part I., Sect. 5.

10th. Face to the right, to the left, to the right and left about, Part I., Sect 7; and

11th. March to the front and rear both in the ordinary and quick cadence, Part I., Sect. 38.

12th. While on the march; mark time; step short; step out; change feet, Part I., Sect. 38. Turn to the right about; turn to the left about, Part I., Sect. 39. Oblique to the right; oblique to the left, Part I., Sect. 43.

13th. Face to the right or left, turn to the right or left, while on the march Part I., Sect. 39. Proceed in files, Part I., Sect. 41; Wheel by files, Part I., Sect. 42. Halt, Front, Part I. Sect. 41; and perform this in the ordinary as well as in the quick time.

14th. While marching in files, oblique to the right and left, Part I., Sect. 44. Turn on the march, and proceed in line to the front or rear, Part I., Sect. 39.

15th. March both in the ordinary and quick time along the side of the square marked out; wheel on the four angles performing the same to the right and to the left, Part I., Sect. 48.

---

* The purport of this drill being principally to accustom the men, while manœuvring, to the proper carriage of their arms, the following movements have been selected, as answering this object; others may, however, be substituted for them, without inconvenience.

16th.

16th. Wheel on a moveable pivot, the right flank moving over the larger and smaller circle while leading, and likewise the left flank passing over the smaller and larger arch in guiding the wheel, Part I., Sect. 49.

Twenty or thirty, or even the whole company, being placed on a single rank, will be made—

17th. To perform the Manual Exercise, Part I., Sect. 32.

18th. The Platoon Exercise as front rank; as centre rank; as rear rank; as front rank kneeling, Part I., Sect. 34 and 35. Prime and load, and fire, Part I., Sect. 35 and 36.

19th. The motions not included either in the Manual or Platoon Exercise, Part I., Sect. 33.

20th. Firing two ranks kneeling, as front rank; as rear rank, Part I., Sect. 37.

THIRD.

When the Company is exercised together, but without Arms.

To observe if the platoon has fallen in as directed; whether corporals are in their proper situations, Part II., Sect. 2.; and if the men stand upright in the position directed for the soldier, Part I., Sect. 3.

2d. Take open order; resume close order, Part II., Sect. 3.

3d. Marching to front and rear, Part II., Sect. 5. Mark time; step short; step out; change feet; oblique to the right and left, Part II., Sect. 6. Turn to the right about and left about, Part. I., Sect. 39. Halt, Part II., Sect. 6; the whole of this being executed in the ordinary as well as in the quick cadence.

4th. March to the front, and turn to the right or left, Part I., Sect. 39. March in file, Part II. Sect. 9. Wheel to the right and left by files, Part II., Sect. 42. Turn on the march and resume the march to the front

or

or rear, Part I., Sect. 39. Turn again and proceed in files; halt, front, Part II., Sect. 9.

5th. The whole of No. 4 may be afterwards repeated in quick time.

6th. Face to the right or left, Part I., Sect 7. March by files, Part II., Sect. 9. Oblique to the right and left, Part II., Sect. 5. Turn and march to the front, Part I., Sect. 39. Resume the file marching by turning on the march, Part I., Sect. 39. Halt, front, Part II., Sect. 9, this being performed both in the ordinary time as well as in the quick movement.

7th. Step back in the ordinary time; the quick time; and quickest time, Part II., Sect. 8.

8th. Take twenty or thirty paces to the right and left with the side step, Part I., Sect. 16, Part II., Sect. 7.

9th. Wheel forward from the halt to the right; to the left, Part II., Sect. 10.

10th. Wheel backwards, from the halt, on the right; on the left, Part II., Sect. 10.

11th. Wheel to the rear by facing to the right about, performing it to the right as well as to the left, Part II., Sect. 11.

A Square being marked out.

12th. March along the side of the square in the ordinary time, both the right as well as the left being in turn the leading flank, wheel at the :†: four angles to the right; and to the left, Part I., Sect. 48. While the right is the directing flank, open the ranks; resume close order, Part I., Sect. 40.

13th. March along the side of the square in quick time; wheel at its four angles :†:; both to the right

---

:†: The movements marked thus :†: may at first be performed in a methodical mode, similar to that explained for the first instruction of the wheelings, Part I., Sect. 22, step by step, a halt taking place after each pace.

and

and to the left; either flank being the directing flank while marching.

14th. Wheel on a moveable pivot, each flank in turn leading the movement, the directing file passing over the larger as well as over the smaller circle, Part I., Sect. 49.

15th. Wheel backward on the left subdivisions, Part II., Sect. 13. March along the square in ordinary time; :†: wheel on its four angles to the left, Part II., Sect. 15. Part I., Sect. 48. Countermarch by subdivisions so as to form left in front, Part II., Sect. 19. March along the square; :†: wheel to the right at its four angles, Part. II., Sect. 15. Halt; wheel to the right into line, Part II., Sect. 16.

16th. Repeat the whole of the foregoing, the march in column being performed in the quick movement*.

17th. Wheel backward on the left by sections, Part II. Sect. 14. March in column of Sections, Part II. Sect 15. Wheel into line, Part II., Sect 16. Wheel backward on the right, Part II., Sect. 14. March in column of sections in the ordinary time, halt, march in in quick time, halt, Part II., Sect. 15. Right wheel into line, Part II., Sect. 16.

18th. Company wheels back on its left by facing to the right about, Part II., Sect. 11. Countermarches to the right; countermarches to the left, Part II., Sect. 19.

19th. The platoon wheels on its centre to the right; to the left; to the right about; to the left about, Part II., Sect. 20. A complete evolution of the circle might at first be performed in the methodical manner, Part I., Sect. 45 and 22.

---

* In repeating this movement in the quick time the subdivisions may at first wheel backwards on their right, move along the square by wheeling to the right at its four angles, then countermarch, and the whole conclude by wheeling to the left into line.

20th.

20th. Wheel by subdivisions to the right, Part II., Sect. 12. Increase the front, and form the company while halting; diminish the front again to a column of subdivisions, Part II., Sect. 22.

21st. Wheel on the centre, so as to bring the left in front; and, while halting, increase the front to a company; reduce it again to the front of subdivisions. Part II., Sect, 22. Wheel into line, Part II., Sect. 16.

22d. Form a column of sections, right in front, Part II., Sect, 14. Increase the front to the company, Part II., Sect. 22.

23d. Wheel into column of Sections, left in front, Part II., Sect. 14. Increase the front to a company, Part II., Sect. 22.

24th. Wheel to the right by subdivisions, Part II., Sect. 12. March in column, Part II., Sect, 15 :+:. Increase the front while on the march * :+:. Decrease the front, Part II., Sect. 22. Wheel into line, Part II., Sect. 16.

25th. Wheel to the left by subdivisions, Part II., Sect. 12. March in column, left in front, Part II., Sect. 15 :+:. Increase the front while on the march :+: . decrease the front while on the march, Part II., Sect. 22. Right wheel into line, Part II., Sect. 16.

26th. The company marching to the front, supposed to belong to a column, right in front, forming, while advancing, a column of sections, right in front; re-form company, supposing the left ahead; form

---

* When the increasing in the front of a column is for the purpose of acquiring greater exactness in the performance, practised in the methodical mode, the subdivisions or sections, in coming up, should take three paces; while that in front, and which they are to join, performs only two, this being in the present instance requisite to establish, as nearly as possible, the existing proportion betwixt the ordinary time, the cadence in which the leading subdivision or section steps to the front, and the quickest, in which the rear subdivision or rear sections come up to the advanced one.

column of sections, left in front; re-form company, Part II., Sect. 22.

27th. While marching the whole company to the front, or by subdivisions, break off files; throw some additional to the rear; order a part of the whole to the front, Part II., Sect. 23.

28th. Repeat the same in column of subdivisions, the left in front; or in divisions, supposed to belong to a column, left in front, Part II., Sect. 23.

29th. Face to the right or left, Part I., Sect. 7. Form platoon to the front, by halting, fronting, and wheeling; by the files successively coming up; form subdivisions by the first method; by the second; form a column of sections by the first method; by the files successively coming up, Part II., Sect. 24.

30th. Face to the right; march by files, Part II., Sect. 9. Form to the left; form to the right, Part II., Sect. 25.

31st. Face to the left; march by files, Part II., Sect. 9. Form to the right; form to the left, Part II., Sect. 25.

32d. A column of subdivisions or sections, right in front, form to the left; form to the right, Part II., Sect. 26.

33d. A column of subdivisions or sections, left in front, form to the right; form to the left, Part II., Sect. 26.

34th. While marching in the ordinary time; wheel in echelon by sections to the right; march in echelon; wheel back into line; and pursue the march; wheel by sections in the same manner to the left; advance in echelon; wheel back into line, and march to the front, Part II., Sect 27.

35th. Wheel any number of paces to the right forward into echelon; to the left; backward on the right; backward on the left, Part II., Sect. 28.

36th. From three deep form two deep, Part II., Sect. 29.

37th.

37th. From two deep form three deep. Part II., Sect. 30.

FOURTH.

When the whole Company is exercised together, and with Arms.

1st. After observing whether the platoon is properly formed, corporals in their proper places, Part II., Sect. 2. Open the ranks, Part II., Sect. 3.

2d. Manual Exercise, Part I., Sect. 32.

3d. Close the ranks, Part II., Sect. 3.

4th. Platoon Exercise, Part I., Sect. 34. Each rank executing it, as front, centre, and rear rank.

5th. The several motions not comprehended in the Manual and Platoon Exercise, Part I., Sect. 33.

6th. Fire; the commands being successively given as if it took place by grand division, wings, battalion, platoons, and by files, Part I., Sect. 36.

7th. Fire obliquely to the right; obliquely to the left, Part I., Sect. 36.

8th. Place the company two deep, Part II., Sect. 29. Fire, both ranks kneeling, Part I., Sect. 37. Each rank acting alternately as first and second rank.

9th. From the movements enumerated in the foregoing for the company, when assembled without arms, some should now be selected and practised, the different firings being intermixed with them.

10th. The company is likewise, as for the purpose of forming a close column, to be ordered to face, the three head files disengaging in the manner explained, Part II., Sect. 22, Note *, page 219, and again, as it is practised in deploying while marching by files, unexpectedly to receive the commands *Halt, Front, Dress, March;* and, after marching a few paces to the front, be directed to *Halt, Dress*, and lined on a prepared point.

In

In entering an alignement by the front of division (as in deploying) soldiers must be particularly cautioned against passing the line of dress; and therefore taught and accustomed, in coming up, always to remain rather to the rear of their neighbour on the hand the dressing is from, so as to move up and line themselves the instant the words *Halt, Dress,* are heard.

11th. The company, while in open or close column of subdivisions or sections, may also receive the necessary direction to fire, either advancing or retiring, and should be accustomed to execute the same while halting as well as while in motion*.

---

* This kind of firing, which is generally distinguished by the name of street-firing, seems, notwithstanding the silence of the Regulations, to deserve a place in the Instruction of the Infantry, and is necesary whenever a column, at either open or close distance, is to make use of its fire while advancing or retiring through a defilé, street, lane, &c. It is thus performed:—

While advancing.

On the cautionary command to commence the fire, the leader of the first division, subdivision, or section, immediately orders his men to *Halt, Make ready**, *Present, Fire;* and, after they have discharged their pieces, and recovered their arms (which position they assume in this case without any direction, and as soon as the directed pause after firing has elapsed), *outward face,* at which each half division, subdivision, or section, facing outwards, awaits the words *Quick March* to move round and file to the rear, where the division is re-formed by the command *Right and Left form Platoon* (subdivision or section, as the case may be); and when so formed, receives the direction to *Load.*

The instant the first division receives the command to *Fire,* the second is ordered by its commander to *Make ready;* and, continuing to advance steadily to the front, directed, as soon as it is unmasked, to change its pace to the quick movement by

* When this fire is executed in close column, it will be necessary for the first division, that it may not retard the progress of those in its rear, to precede the firing, after making ready, by the taking of a few paces to the front in the quick cadence, in the manner explained hereafter for the divisions not the front one. The words of command for the first division will then be *Make ready, Quick March, Halt, Present, Fire, Outwards face,* &c.

Conclusion.

Conclusion.

In addition to what is mentioned in the foregoing, the company, when assembled together, should occasionally be directed, both with and without arms, to go through the movements with the utmost rapidity,

---

the words *Quick March.* When it has thus proceeded a few paces to the front, it will successively receive the commands *Halt, Present, Fire,* &c., and then proceed agreeably to the directions prescribed for the first division.

When retiring.

The fire is conducted on the same principle, and by the same commands, as when advancing, with the only exception, that, if on the march, at the delivery of the general caution to *Fire retiring*, the commander will likewise order the column to *Halt*, or, if the column be retiring, to *Halt, Front;* the latter words, in either case, act as the signal to the officer of the head division to commence the fire, which is executed as when advancing, each division, as soon as uncovered, presenting and firing on the same spot on which it stands in column, which obviously must, by this means, retire, if at open distance, the front of a division, and, if at close distance, the depth of one, every time a division after firing moves to the rear. Should this, however, not prove sufficient and the mode of retiring just described be insufficient for withdrawing the troops in proper time, the following expedient may be resorted to: The whole of the column, with the exception of the division which is to fire, and of that one also which is placed immediately in its rear, may be ordered to face to the right about, and to proceed by the short step slowly to the rear, each division facing successively about when the one in its rear makes ready, in order to support it while engaged with the enemy, and to be prepared to make ready the instant it has fired. When the retreat is thus conducted by the latter method great care is required to prevent the division which successively leads the march from hurrying and lengthening the pace, an error which, if not carefully guarded against, the men are very apt to fall into.

In advancing as well as in retiring the general cautions to commence as well as to cease the fire are the only commands given by the chief of the battalion, the words to *Fire, Face outwards, File to the Rear, Re-form,* &c., being all given by the respective leaders, each to his own division,

it being requisite to render the men familiar with this mode of performance, which will often be required on service, where the unexpected approach of an enemy, or any other unforeseen occurrence, may render this quick execution indispensable. In training the men to it the driller must be particularly cautious to see the directions already enumerated, where the operation takes place in slow time, carefully attended to, as well as the greatest silence preserved throughout; and he is to spare no pains to convince his men, and implant on their minds that it is to the strict adherence to these directions only they are to look both for the preservation of order and the prompt execution of the movements. But, however requisite it may appear and certainly is, to drill the men by companies to this degree of celerity, it is still to be remembered that the principles of the infantry movements rest chiefly in their slow performance; and that therefore their practice is not only to engross the greatest portion of the time allotted for the drill of the recruit and exercise of the company, but principally to occupy the attention of the instructor, the first rudiments of the knowledge of a soldier being altogether comprehended in it, and their execution solely calculated to give him a fixed habit of steadiness,—a quality so essential in the ranks, that for the want of it nothing can compensate, and which, when once acquired, will not only qualify the man for performing the movements in the manner prescribed, but speedily enable him, when necessary, to tread out of the beaten path, and to execute them under any circumstance whatsoever, either of time or local situation.

PART III.

Introduction to the Battalion Drill.

UNDER this head are comprehended the practice of the bands of musicians, fifers, and drummers, to the regulated times of march; the instructions to the non-commissioned officers as well as to the officers respecting the movements; and lastly, the attentions requisite in the commander while exercising the battalion.

CHAP. I.

S. 2. Practice of the Bands of Musicians, Fifers, and Drummers, to the regulated Time of March.

BESIDES the daily practice of the bands of musicians and fifers, and drummers, under the guidance of the plummet, to the different cadences of march, the adjutant for the further attainment of this material object, as well as to render habitual the ordered length of pace, is frequently to assemble those bands, and, placing them ahead, direct the whole of the non-commissioned officers to fall in their rear on several ranks, distanced from each other about seven or eight paces. When the column is thus arranged, he will move it along a cord stretched on the ground, on which a small piece of cloth is fastened at each distance of thirty inches; and a camp-colour or visible mark being likewise fixed at the end of seventy-five paces, he will, with the assistance of a stop-watch, pronounce

pronounce the words *March* and *Halt* at the commencement and expiration of a minute, and then observe, after the men have ceased to advance, whether the column has reached, come short of, or passed the mark, as it is obvious that, in the former of the two latter instances, the time has been too slow, as well as in the last too quick; and consequently, in either case the correction pointed out becomes requisite. While on the march the adjutant is also to be careful that the full pace of thirty inches is taken throughout; and he is to ascertain after the column is halted, whether the original distances at which the ranks stood previous to their going off has been carefully preserved,

A repetition of this is likewise to take place for the quick movement, the camp-colour or marker, &c., being removed to the 108th step, and afterwards to the 120th, should it be deemed useful to extend this practice to the quickest time.

When some degree of accuracy has been obtained by the foregoing, the cord may be extended so as to enable the column to move on for several minutes, each minute being, in that case, pointed out by some distinct mark. Less frequently, but, however, occasionally, the officers of the battalion should likewise be subjected to the same exercise, which, in that case, will be superintended by a field officer.

S. 3. Instruction relative to the Serjeants.

The instruction of the serjeants, as far as it is here intended, is divided into three parts:—1st. The Exercise of the Pike; 2d. Some recollections and attentions required from them while acting in the battalion; and, 3d. The practice both of the perpendicular march to the front, and the preservation of distance in column.

column. The latter being, however, equally connected with the duties of the officers as well as of the non-commissioned officers, they have been treated separately in the conclusion of the instructions for the first named.

S. 4. *Exercise of the Pike.*

Position.—The Pike is held in the right hand, the right arm being extended at full length; the fore-finger under the shoe, which rests on it; the thumb to the front, and the pike kept in a perpendicular position against the hollow of the right shoulder.

Order Arms; 3 Motions.

1st. Seize the pike with the left hand at the right shoulder.

2d. Allow the shaft to slide through the fingers of both hands till it is within four inches of the ground.

3d. Drop the pike on the ground; withdraw immediately the left hand, and place the right hand in front of the shaft: fingers pointed downwards.

Shoulder Arms; 2 Motions.

1st. At the word *Shoulder,* place the thumb of the right hand as quickly as possible behind the shaft.

2d. At the last word, *Arms,* the pike is thrown in the position described for Shoulder Arms, the left hand being brought across the body to assist the motion and instantly withdrawn when it is placed on the right shoulder, the right hand seizing it at the same time and at once under the shoe, as already explained.

Port Arms; 1 Motion.

In one motion throw the pike from the shoulder across the body into a diagonal position, the shaft crossing opposite

opposite the point of the left shoulder, the right hand grasping the pike at the shoe, and the left at the height of the left shoulder, both thumbs pointing upwards; elbows close to the body.

Charge Bayonets.

Make a half face to the right; and, in doing so, bring down the pike to nearly a horizontal position, the blade a little upwards, the right wrist resting against the hollow of the thigh, against the hip.

Shoulder Arms; 2 Motions.

1st. In coming to the front throw the pike in its proper position on the right shoulder, the right hand holding it at the shoe in the manner directed, and the left hand opposite the right shoulder.

2d. Quit the left hand smartly, and bring it down to the left side.

Recover Arms; 1 Motion.

Throw the pike to the front in a perpendicular position opposite to the left eye, the right hand grasping it at the shoe, which touches the body slightly, and the left hand supporting the shaft by holding it opposite the left eye between the thumb and the forefinger; the left elbow is in this position bent, and risen as high as the left shoulder.

Shoulder Arms; 2 Motions.

1st. The pike is thrown into its position, the left hand assisting the motion by placing it in the right shoulder.

2d. Drop the left hand smartly, and bring it down the right side.

Trail (from Shoulder) Arms; 2 Motions.

1st. Seize the shaft with the left hand, at the height of the right shoulder.

2d. Lower the pike with the left hand, and lay hold of it with the right so as to place it to the trail; the

upper

upper part being somewhat advanced to the front, and the shoe a few inches from the ground; the left hand being withdrawn the instant the pike is placed.

Shoulder Arms; 1 Motion.

With the assistance of the left hand throw the pike at once into its proper position on the right shoulder; the left hand being immediately dropped along the left side as soon as it is placed.

Trail (from Order) Arms; 2 Motions.

1st. At the first word *Trail*, place the thumb of the right hand behind the shaft.

2d. As soon as the command is fully given slide the shaft through the fingers of the right hand, so as to situate the pike in the position of the trail, the upper part being a little advanced to the front, and the shoe a few inches from the ground.

Order (from the Trail) Arms; 1 Motion.

Drop the pike at once to the ground, to the position described for the Order, placing the right hand in front of the shaft; fingers pointed downwards.

Pile Arms.

In piling arms, after the firelocks are properly fixed, the pikes are generally placed across the muzzles.

S. 5. *Attentions in the Serjeants while acting in the Battalion.*

Serjeants, when in the battalion, may act either as covering or centre serjeants, or they may be ordered to fall in the supernumerary rank.

When

When Acting as Covering Serjeant.

In Line.—In line he covers his platoon commander in the rear rank, and steps into that officer's place in the front rank, in order to preserve it, whenever the duty of the latter may require him to quit it. *M. & P. Book of Atten. of Cov. Serj.*

Take Open Order.—At the command *Rear Ranks take Open Order* he recovers his pike; and at the word *March* moves into the front rank, to replace his officer, now in the front; and, as soon as he is posted, shoulders his pike. *R. & R. Part* III., *S.* 72.

Take close Order.—In resuming Close Order, at the caution *Rear Ranks take Close Order*, the serjeant faces to the right, and recovers his pike, while performing the first motion by placing his right foot behind his left one. At the word *March* he takes one or two side steps till in line with the rear rank, and fronts, replacing at the same time his pike in the shouldered position. *R. & R. Part* III. *S.* 73.

Wheeling into Open Column.—When the battalion breaks into open Column, whether the wheels are performed to the front or the rear, the covering serjeant falls back two paces at the caution, and, when the wheel is finished, covers his officer, who is placed on the pivot flank. *M. & P. Atten. of the Cov. Serj. R. & R. Part* III., *S.* 106 & 108.

Wheeling into Line.—" When from column, the " right in front, platoons wheel up to the left into " line, the serjeant, at the word *Wheel*, goes to the " right of the front rank of the platoon, and wheels " up with it, thereby preserving the officer's place. " If the wheel is to the right the serjeant is behind the " right file, ready to move up to the officer's place at " the conclusion of the wheel." *M. & P. Book Att. of Cov. Serj.*

Leading Division.—In wheeling into line or into column, and, in either case, whether the wheels are performed to the right or to the left, the covering serjeant of the leading division always runs out at the caution,

caution, to mark the spot at which the wheeling flank of his division is to arrive and halt. Should, however, when wheeling to the front, a serjeant of the supernumerary rank have been thrown out for that purpose, the covering serjeant of the leading division may act as directed for those of the remaining companies. *M. & P. Atten. of Cov. Serj. R. R. Part* III., *S.* 118.

Open Column.—While the column halts, the serjeant covers the platoon officer in the rear rank; when the column marches he falls behind the rear rank, and covers the second file from the pivot. *M. & P. Atten. in Cov. Serj.*

Open Ranks.—When the officer is in front of his platoon (as, for instance, when the direction is given to take *Open Order*), the covering serjeant is on the pivot flank of the front rank; and while posted there, and until the officer resumes his place, he is answerable for the platoon distance. *M. & P. Book Atten. in Cov. Serj.*

Column of Subdivisions and Sections.—" When the " battalion is in column of subdivisions, if the officer " is ordered to march in front of his platoon the ser- " jeant is on the pivot of the leading subdivision;—if " the officer is on the flank of his leading subdivision, " the serjeant takes the flank of the second in column " of sections; the serjeant also takes the flank of the " second section;" viz., that one which follows the leading one. *M. & P. Atten. of Cov. Serj.*

Close Column.—The serjeant covers the platoon officer in the rear rank. *M. & P. Atten. of Cov. Serj.*

Column of Grand Division.—When the column of grand division is formed, the covering serjeant of the company, which is on the right, covers his officer on the right flank, and the covering serjeant of the company, which is placed on the left, takes post in the centre of the front rank between the two companies, and consequently on the right of his own. *R. & R. Part* IV. *Close Column of the Line, No.* 3.

Countermarch by Files of an Open Column.—On the

the word *Face*, and when the officer quits his place to lead the files, the covering serjeant moves into it; at the word *Quick March* he faces to the right about (performing the three motions), stands fast, and thus becomes the pivot point for the front rank leader to close to. When the countermarch is finished, and the dressing concluded, at the delivery of the command *Eyes front*, he falls back into the rear rank, leaving his place to the officer. *M. & P. Atten. of Cov. Serj.*

Countermarch by Files in Close Column.—In this countermarch the covering serjeants stand fast while the column is ordered to face to the reverse flank, as well as while the even companies are directed to lead out for the purpose of disengaging, and they wait to face to the right about for the command *Quick March*, which follows the caution *The whole will Countermarch.* When thus faced the serjeants become the point at which the front rank leader of their respective companies are to arrive, as well as to halt and front.

In File, either with a single Company or with several.—When only one company is marching by files the platoon officer heads the front rank, and the covering serjeant leads the rear rank. Whenever more than one company proceeds by files the platoon officer is out of the ranks; and replaced in the front rank by his doubling serjeant, who in that case moves ahead of the front rank. *R. & R. Part* III., *S.* 94.

Movement by Files.—When the platoons file from line in order to form an open column, or from column for the purpose of taking a new position, either to the front or rear, the serjeant of each successively, as it arrives within thirty yards of that line (and no sooner), runs out, takes distance (facing if in column to its proper head), and places himself on the spot which is afterwards to be occupied by his officer, and there remains as a point for the same officer to bring and close in the pivot flank man of his platoon.

Deployment.—In deploying, the instant the officer takes a side step to allow his platoon to pass, the cover-ing

ing serjeant becomes the person responsible for the direction of march; and must therefore immediately take two points-de-vue to lead, and conduct his platoon in a straight direction. On the words *Halt, Front*, he halts and fronts with the rest, and remains on the outward flank; in marching up with his division to the part of the line already formed*, if the formation has taken place from the right, he waits to return to his proper post in the line behind his officer until he is replaced by the officer of the succeeding division, whose post by standing on the left of his own division, he now occupies; but if the formation takes place from the left, as he is already on the right of his platoon, in this instance the outward flank, he only falls back into the rear rank when his own officer, whose place he now preserves, after dressing his division, resumes his position in the line.

Platoon joining another on its Right.—Whenever a platoon (which is then separated) joins in line to one on its right, the covering serjeant must post himself on that flank, to preserve the place of his officer, who may be employed in dressing it. Should, however, this place be already occupied, he is to stand on the left, and remain there till he is replaced by the officer of the succeeding division; or, if no such division is to join on the left, he must continue till his own officer gives the word *Eyes front*, when he shifts to his proper flank, and covers him in the rear rank.

Echelon.—When the company stands in the echelon position, the covering serjeant is always posted on the outward flank of the front rank.

Formation into Echelon by wheeling Forward.—In wheeling into echelon to the front, the covering ser-

* The covering serjeants are here to pay particular attention to the direction given in Number 10, of Section 31, Part II., which enjoins to the men posted in the outward flank of a division that enters an alignement to the front to keep rather to the rear in coming up.

jeant,

jeant, at the caution, moves before the eighth file from the named flank, and takes the ordered number of paces on the circumference of the circle of which the intended pivot is the centre, and halts his body turned in the new position. When the wheel is performed, and the dressing concluded, at the word *Eyes front* he moves to the outward wheeling flank, his post in the echelon position. *R. & R. Part* III., *S.* 154.

By wheeling Backwards.—When the formation into echelon takes place by wheeling backwards, the covering serjeant places himself, at the caution, behind the eighth file from the pivot facing to the rear; and on the circumference of the circle, of which the intended pivot is the centre, takes the named number of paces, halting and fronting after having done so. When the eighth file in wheeling back touches his breast, he gives a low caution to halt, which being instantly repeated by the officer, and platoon dressed, he takes post on the outward wheeling flank as soon as the command *Eyes front* is heard. *R. & R. Part* III., *S.* 158.

Echelon by Sections.—In echelon by sections either to the right or to the left, the covering serjeant always takes post on the pivot of the proper second section from the Right. *R. & R. Part* III., *S.* 164, *No.* 2.

Retiring by alternate Companies.—In retiring by alternate companies the covering serjeants remain at the proper flank of their division, and do not, like the officers, shift to the inward flank when they belong to the companies of the right wing.

Hollow Square.—In the hollow square, serjeants generally cover their proper officer. Should they, however, be posted in their front, and in line with the first rank, they are to kneel down every time this rank is ordered so to do, and, while kneeling, to slope their pikes somewhat forward.

Solid Square.—In the solid square, if not otherwise directed, the covering serjeants are either behind or in front of their respective platoon commanders; and in the latter case, if in line with the first or second rank, they

they kneel whenever the men of the rank they belong to are ordered to take this position, and, while so situated, slope their pikes a little forward.

Firing.—"Whenever the battalion halts to fire, the "serjeants fall back, and, in concert with the super- "numerary rank, keep the rear rank well locked up, "and attentive to their duty. When the battalion "again moves, serjeants resume their places." *M. & P. Book Atten. of Cov. Serj.*

But where the platoon officer, while firing, is ordered to fall back into the fourth rank, as the centre officer is in firing by grand divisions, the covering serjeant is invariably to replace him in the front rank. *M. & P. Book "position of each rank in the firing by "battalion, wing, or grand division."*

Changing Flank.—All changes of position from one flank to the other are to be made with alertness and precision, and always to be performed behind the rear rank *.

Attentions in Serjeants when acting as Centre Serjeants.

Position in Line.—The number of centre serjeants are five, viz., one behind each colour in the rear rank, a third in the front rank betwixt the colours, a fourth covering this latter in the rear rank, and the fifth in the supernumerary rank. The sole business of the three last-mentioned serjeants is, when the battalion moves in line, to advance and direct the march.—*R. & R. Part* III., *Formation of the Battalion.*

Marching to the Front.—At the caution *The Battalion will advance*, the front directing serjeant moves out six exact paces in ordinary time; and the two serjeants who were behind him, in the rear and in the super-

* In quitting one flank in order to shift to the other, serjeants, as well as officers, should always face to the right about.

numerary

numerary rank, advance and place themselves on each side of him; an officer or non-commissioned officer from the rear replaces in the front rank, and between the colours, the leading serjeant; the centre serjeant, in moving out, marches and halts on his own observed points, and the two other serjeants dress and square themselves by him. These three non-commissioned officers, after being placed by the commandant or mounted officer in the exact position the direction of march will require, must remain perfectly steady, the centre one keeping or preparing his two objects to proceed on. While marching, the centre advanced serjeant is answerable for the direction and the equal cadence and length of step; to these objects he alone attends, while the other two, scrupulously conforming to his position, maintain their parallelism to the front of the battalion, and thereby present an object to which it ought to move square. At the command *Halt*, the three centre serjeants resume their post in the battalion. *R. & R. Part* III. *S.* 166.

When the battalion is to retire.—An officer or non-commissioned officer being at first placed thirty paces in the rear, at the caution *The Battalion will retire* the directing serjeants face to the right about, and the one posted in the centre of the front rank being the person who directs the march both to the rear as well as to the front, he advances in the line of the advanced officer six paces beyond the rear rank and halts; the other two serjeants place themselves on each side of him. At the word *Right about face*, the supernumerary officer or non-commissioned officer, who is to replace the directing serjeant in the centre of the battalion, moves up into the leading rank. While marching, the three centre serjeants act precisely as if the movement was to the front, the directing serjeant conducting the whole on his points under the correction of the field officer, who is ten paces behind the battalion. *R. & R. Part* III., *S.* 168.

Retiring by alternate Companies.—When the battalion

talion retires by alternate companies, the directing serjeant as well as the one who doubles him in the rear rank, remain attached to the king's colour; whereas the serjeant who is posted in the supernumerary rank follows the regimental colour. While in motion this latter and the directing serjeant are each six paces in advance of their respective colour, to assist the march. *R. & R. Part* III., *S.* 176.

Advancing and retiring by half Battalions.—In advancing or retiring by half battalions the centre serjeants behave in a manner similar to that explained while retiring by alternate companies, the directing serjeant and the one who covers him in the rear rank remaining here likewise posted with the king's colour, which in this instance is always attached to the right wing; and the serjeant in the supernumerary rank follows the motions of the left wing, and takes post six paces in advance of the regimental colour during its march to the front or to the rear. *R. & R., Part* III., *S.* 177.

Open and Close Column, Square, &c.—On every other occasion, as in open or close column, square, &c., the centre serjeants keep to the colours, and with them form a separate division, which situation in the different movements will be hereafter described at the instructions to the officers when carrying the colours*.

Serjeants, when attached to the Supernumerary Rank.

The duties of the non-commissioned officers, when acting in the supernumerary rank, are perfectly similar to those hereafter detailed for the officers when posted in the same †.

Besides the above instructions, which are peculiar to the under officers, they should also, as they are often

* See Part III. Sect. 6.

† Ibid.

often called to replace the officers, be trained accordingly.

The necessity of order, steadiness, and silence, during the performance of the movements, as well as their prompt though deliberate execution, without any appearance of hurry, are principles which ought to be strongly inculcated in the infantry soldier, and therefore demand the particular attention of the non-commissioned officers.

Markers.—" All non-commissioned officers, or persons on foot, marking a direction for the march in " column, or formation of the line or its parts, take " up such direction in file by covering each other, and " then stand faced to the flank of the column, or " front of the line, so that their breasts become the " line of march, or line of formation." *M. & P. Atten. in Cov. Serj.*

Pioneers.—" The pioneers, in column of march, " are in front; in line they are formed two deep be- " hind the centre, and nine paces from the rear " ranks."

Drummers.—" Drummers, in column of march or " close column, are with their companies, and on the " flank not the pivot one. In line, the grenadiers and " light drummers are six paces behind the rear rank of " their companies; the battalion drummers are in two " divisions, and formed six paces behind the third and " seventh companies. In parade, at open ranks, the " drummers preserve their six paces from the rear " rank." *M. & P. Atten. in Cov. Serj.*

Music.—" The music, in open or close column, are " on the flank which is not the pivot one; in line " they are in a single rank, behind the right centre " company, three paces in the rear of the fourth rank; " in parade, at open ranks, they are between the co- " lours and the front rank." *M. & P. Atten. in Cov. Serj.*

Music, &c.—" Drummers, music, pioneers, &c. " will take care not to impede the flank movements " of

"of the close column, nor its formation into line, but "will get into the rear of their respective battalions "as soon as they are disengaged from each other." *M. & P. Atten. in Cov. Serj.*

S. 6. *Instruction of the Officers.*

The instruction of the officers of a regiment is the peculiar province of its field officers, whose unremitted attention to this essential part of their duty is so sufficiently pointed out by the object itself as to render any further elucidation unnecessary; but although this position is universally admitted, the methods employed to impart this necessary knowledge to the officers is but seldom sufficient to answer the proposed end. To confine this instruction to the common parade, and imagine that every thing has been done, and this task has been most amply fulfilled by ordering the officers to fall in according to their seniority, to perform the eighteen manœuvres, or even the whole of the manœuvres comprehended in the field exercise of the battalion, is altogether to misunderstand what is here intended; and when it is considered that even the junior ensign is often called to take charge of a division, and every officer, in the hour of danger and in the presence of an enemy, under the most critical circumstances, liable to head a battalion, the imperious necessity of having each in his turn posted on the flank of a division, as well as ordered in rotation to take charge of the battalion, and give the words for the execution of a named manœuvre or directed charge of position, will be most obviously displayed.

It is only in pursuing the method just mentioned, that officers will acquire the true knowledge of their profession, and will become adequate to perform on service

service what may be there required from them, as well as to act with that coolness, energy, and decision, which cannot with justice be expected from them if they have not been previously properly trained.

Officers should likewise be made perfect masters of the different cadences as well as length of pace; and, in the manner hereafter recommended, accustomed to preserve the perpendicular direction on the march, and platoon distance while in column; both attainments of such considerable moment as to disqualify an officer to conduct a division, and therefore to act as platoon commander, if in any way deficient in either.

"Squads of officers," say the Rules and Regulations, "must be formed, and exercised by a field "officer; they must be marched in all directions, to "the front, oblique, and to the flank; they must be "marched in line, at platoon distance, and preserve "their dressing and line from an advanced centre; "they must be placed in file at platoon distance, and "marched as in open column*; they must change "direction as in file, and cover anew in column. In "these and other similar movements the pace and the "distance are the great objects to be maintained. "From the number of files in divisions, they must "learn accurately to judge the ground necessary for "each; and, to extend that knowledge to the front of "greater bodies, they must acquire the habit of readily "ascertaining by the eye perpendiculars of march, and "the squareness of the wheel†".

Another drill, to which the officers, though less frequently, should however occasionally be subjected, is

---

* While so marching in open column, they may be likewise practised to salute with their swords.

† For the practice of the officers and non-commissioned officers to the perpendicular march, and the preserving of distance while in column, see Part III., Sect. 7.

the

the Firelock Exercise; and no officer is on any consideration, on his joining, ever to be permitted to command a platoon prior to his being examined and found capable of handling his arms, as well as thoroughly grounded in every other knowledge required from a soldier.

It is however to be observed, in respect of this last drill, that the same degree of exactness which, in the performance of the motions of the firelock, is insisted on in the privates, is by no means to be expected from the officers, nor is it necessary; this would only waste a time which might and ought to be more usefully employed. Provided an officer knows how the motions are performed, as well as the position of the firelock, the arms, fingers, &c., at each, and consequently is enabled to instruct and to correct, that is all that is here requisite; to pretend to more is absurd. It is the duty of a corporal, and even of a serjeant, to be expert in handling the firelock, and to perform the motions of both the manual and platoon exercise with the utmost precision; but an officer has other objects of much greater importance to attend to, and should only bestow to this branch of instruction the time which is absolutely necessary to effect the purposes expressed in the foregoing. It is obvious that a repetition of this drill about twice a year will prove fully sufficient to accomplish this end.

In addition to the foregoing, which may with propriety be viewed as the practical part of the profession, the commanding and field officers of a regiment or battalion ought frequently to assemble their officers, and, when thus together, reason upon the principles on which the movements are established as well as the time required for their execution, and both adduce the arguments which may be advanced in support as well as against the various modes of performing any given movement, in order to inquire into the advantages peculiar to them, or display the defects and faults they are

are liable to, &c., and thus instruct his officers in the theoretical as well as practical part of every branch of the profession.

Another object, which demands also to be strictly attended to, is the word of command, the smart and prompt execution of the movements greatly depending on the energy and precision with which it is delivered. Officers must be accustomed to give the word, even to the smallest body, in the full extent of their voice, and in a sharp tone. "It is not sufficient," say the Rules and Regulations, "to advance with bravery; it is "requisite to have that degree of intelligence which "should distinguish every officer according to his "station; nor will soldiers ever act with spirit and "animation when they have no reliance on the capacity "of those who do conduct them."

The following instruction to the officers is here divided into three heads:—1st. The Sword Exercise; 2d. Some necessary Recollections while acting in the Battalion; 3d. Their Posts and Situations in the Movements of the Field Exercise.

1st. *Sword Exercise.*

Position.—In giving words of command, as well in as out of the ranks, officers are to stand perfectly steady, and in their proper position; their swords held firmly in the full of the right hand, with the upper part of the blade resting against the shoulder; the right wrist against the hip, and elbow drawn back. *M. & P. Book "of the Explanation of each Rank in "the Firings by Battalions, Wings, or Grand Di- "visions."*

Rear Ranks take Open Order.—On the command *Rear Ranks take Open Order*, officers recover their swords by bringing them briskly up in a perpendicular direction, the point upwards and a little inclined to the front, the guard to the left, and the shell opposite the right eye; the right elbow bent, and the upper part

part of the arm as near to the body as the motion will permit.

March.—On the word *March* officers advance in front of their respective companies, and after dividing the ground, at a signal given by the officer on the right of the whole, who has purposely advanced two paces, and faced the line of officers to do so; they bring their swords in the position directed for their Carriage at Open Order; which is as follows:—

Carriage of the Sword at Open Order.—Bring the sword across the chest, and by bending the left elbow, take hold of the blade with the left hand, the thumb along the same and pointed upwards, the hilt being firmly held in the right hand, the guard to the front.

Salute while Halting.—On the words *Present Arms,* and while the men perform the second motion of that command, the officers recover their swords as before explained, the left hand quitting at the same time the blade, and being brought along the left side. At the third motion officers drop their swords by stretching their right arm, the point a little advanced, and a few inches from the ground; the guard preserved to the left; the left hand is at the same time to be brought in front to the peak of the cap.

Shoulder from the Present.—On the command *Shoulder Arms* officers recover their swords with the first motion, dropping at the same time their left hand along the left side. With the second motion they replace their swords in the diagonal position across the chest, as described for Open Order*.

Support Arms at Open Order.—When the direction to *Support Arms* is given officers remain steady for the two first motions; and during the performance of the third they place the upper part of the blade in

* In saluting as well as in retaking the shoulder position, officers, when a flugelman is advanced in front, take the time from him.

the

the left shoulder, so as to rest against it, and at the same time they bring their left hand over their right one, which keeping a firm hold of the hilt is now brought a little to the left.

Shoulder from the Support.—On the command *Shoulder Arms* from the support, officers resume while the men perform the third motion, the position described for Open Order, the left hand being brought to the blade and placed in the manner there explained.

Rear Ranks take Close Order.—On the hearing of the words *To take Close Order* officers face to the right, recovering their swords, as explained for the first position when Open Order is taken, in placing the right foot behind the left, the first motion of the facing. On the word *March* they move in ordinary time to their respective posts in the line, and in going through the right about they replace their swords in the position ordered for Close Order while executing the third motion of the facing about.

When on the March Ranks take Open Order.—Officers attached to a division, receiving the direction *To take Open Order*, while on the march recover their swords at the hearing of this command, and immediately advancing in front of their company or division, they assume the carriage described for the sword when at Open Ranks the instant they are posted.

Salute while on the March.—When this opening of the ranks is performed in order to pass in review order, and salute a superior officer, the officers thus advanced in front of a division, when at about six paces from him, and at the signal of the one placed on their right, Recover their Swords, as explained for the first motion of the salute when performed while halted; executing this however here while they advance the left foot, so as to drop their swords while stepping to the front with the right; at the same time they bring their left hand in front to the peak of their cap.

When

When at about ten paces past the reviewing officer, at the signal given by the officer posted on the right, swords are recovered while advancing the right leg, as well as left hands dropped along the left side; and while moving the left foot the swords are brought in the diagonal position across the chest described for Open Order.

Resuming Close Order on the March.—On resuming Close Order on the March, which, in the case of passing a reviewing officer, is directed to take place about thirty paces after passing him, on the words *Rear Ranks take Close Order*, officers recover their swords, and move to their proper situation at Close Order; which, when assumed, they bring their swords in the shouldered position, as directed by the Regulations.

Support Arms when at Close Order.—When at Close Order the command to *Support Arms* is delivered, officers remain immoveable during the performance of the two first motions; and with the third place their left hand over their right, which holding the hilt is brought a little to the left.

Shoulder Arms.—On the words *Shoulder Arms*, while the men execute the third motion, the left hand is withdrawn, and the proper carriage of the sword resumed.

2d. *Necessary Recollections.*

1st. Whenever a battalion is in line, platoon officers give no commands except in firing. *M. & P. Atten. in Plat. Officers.*

2d. All changes of position are to be made with alertness and precision; and, if from one flank to the other, always behind the rear rank*.

---

* The officers and non-commissioned officers should always face to the right about in leaving a flank in order to take post on the other; this, as before observed, adding to the steadiness of appearance in those changes of position, particularly when the word by which they are implied is a direction to the men to change their front by facing to either flank.

3d.

3d. Officers, in assuming the command of a division, are to ascertain the number of files of which it is composed, and to recollect that the three-fourth of the number of files is nearly the number of ordinary paces of thirty inches contained in its front *; and

* The following Table shews the ground a number of files will cover when drawn up in line, each man being supposed to occupy a space of twenty-two inches.

TABLE.

Number of Files, each supposed to occupy twenty-two Inches.	Front of Division in ordinary Paces of thirty Inches.		
	Paces.		Inches.
5	3	....	20
10	7	....	10
12	8	....	24
14	10	....	8
15	11	....	—
16	11	....	22
18	13	....	6
20	14	....	20
30	22	....	—
40	29	....	10
50	36	....	20
100	73	....	10

However, as the ground taken up by a company varies considerably by the size of the men of which it consists, officers, on taking charge of a division, should invariably, previous to their taking post on the flank, ascertain its extent by pacing it behind the rear rank.

4th.

4th. Again, that it requires, to complete the quarter of the circle, as many wheeling paces of thirty-three inches as there are files in the body which is wheeling.

The two-thirds of this number of files to describe the sixth of the circle, or an angle of sixty degrees; the half for the eighth of the circumference, of forty-five degrees; the quarter of this number of files to describe the sixteenth of the circumference, or twenty-two degrees and a half; and one-eighth to complete the thirty-second part, or eleven degrees and a quarter.

5th. When in a column of march, the pivots are on no account to move after the word *Halt* is given; and, if ordered to form, each platoon wheels up to its adjoining pivot; the whole will then perhaps (as in the case of marching in a road, along the different turnings of a height, &c.) be in a winding line. Should a straight alignement be required, the commanding officer will give the necessary directions to that effect; and therefore, without his doing so, all attempts in the pivots to correct the line are improper. *M. & P. Atten. in Plat. Officers.*

6th. In wheeling on a moveable pivot, the pivot (and consequently the platoon officer) describes the larger circle when the change of direction is to the reverse flank; and he passes over the smaller arch when the alteration in the direction is to the pivot side.

7th. In filing by divisions, while in open column, whether to the front or to the rear, the dressing is always taken from the hand the division should face if ordered to front, and therefore always towards the side where the front rank of the division is placed, from which side the distances are also preserved. *M. & P. Atten. in Plat. Officers**.

* By this rule it is obvious that, in movements to the rear, distances and dressing are always taken from the same point to which they would be made if the movement was to the front; that is, from the left in going to the rear, if it should be from the right in going to the front.

O 8th.

8th. Leaders of the third, fourth, &c., platoon from the directing flank, are never, in filing by divisions in column, to overpass the straight line which joins the head of the first and second; but are if any thing to be rather behind it till they arrive and halt exactly in the new line*. *M. & P. Atten. of Plat. Officers.*

Instruction to the Officers, relative to their Posts and Situations in the different Movements of the Field Exercise of the Battalion.

Officers, when with the battalion, are either posted on the flank of a division, to act as platoon officers, or placed in the fourth rank, as supernumeraries; they are also sometimes intrusted with the colours, and charged to carry them.

When Platoon Commanders†.

Position in Line.—"When the battalion is formed "in line, company, or platoon, commanders are all "on the right of their platoons." *M. & P. Atten. of Plat. Officers.*

At Open Order.—At the caution *Rear Ranks take Open Order* they recover their swords; and at the word *March* take three steps to the front in the ordinary time, so as to place themselves three paces advanced from the second file from the right. *R. & R. Part* III., *S.* 72.

Resume Close Order.—At the caution *Rear Ranks take Close Order,* officers face to the right, recovering

---

* The present direction is on the same principle as that given for the dressing.

† These instructions, with very little deviation, and few additions, are taken from what is mentioned under the head of Attentions in Platoon Officers, in the book of Manual and Platoon Exercise.

their

their swords, while performing the first motion of the facing. At the word *March* they step into their post in line, and face to the right about, placing their swords from the recovered into the ordinary position while executing the third motion of the right about face. *R. & R. Part* III., *S.* 73.

Marching in Line.—When the battalion marches in line, platoon officers become individuals equally attentive as the soldiers to their personal exactness of march, and are on no account to attempt to correct the dress of their company by looking along the line or calling to their men. *R. & R. Part* III., *S.* 166.

Marching to the Rear.—At the command *To the right about face* the platoon officers face to the right about, like the rest, remaining in their proper front rank, now in the rear. At the word *March* they move behind their covering serjeants, who are posted in the rear rank, now ahead.

Wheeling into Column.—" In wheeling from line " to column," either forward or backward, " each " moves out, and places himself one pace before the " centre of his platoon; each turns towards his men " during the wheel, and inclines to the pivot flank; " each gives the word *Halt, Dress,* when his wheeling " man has just completed his degree of wheel; each " squares his platoon, but without moving what was " the standing flank; each then places himself on the " proper pivot flank. After the wheel into column is " completed, no one is to cause his platoon to shift, " by way of covering on the pivot flank, unless so " ordered by the commanding officer, or that in the " course of marching a straight line is gradually taken " up."

Wheeling into Line.—" In wheeling from column " into line, each platoon officer places himself one " pace before the centre of his platoon; each turns " towards his men during the wheel, and inclines to- " wards the pivot of his preceding platoon; each " gives his word *Halt, Dress,* when his wheeling man,

" on whom his eyes are fixed, is just arrived at the next " standing pivot man; each then from that next pivot " man corrects the interior of his platoon upon his " own pivot man; each then takes his place, and re- " mains steady on the right of his platoon." *M. & P. Atten. in Plat. Officers.*

Wheeling into Column of Subdivisions or Sections.—In wheeling into column of subdivisions or column of sections, the platoon commander, at the caution, steps in front, and places himself before the centre of the subdivision or section which by the movements is to become the leading one, and during the wheel inclines to the pivot of this same leading subdivision or section, in the same manner as it has been explained for a division. When the degree of wheel is completed he gives the word *Halt, Dress,* for both subdivisions, or the whole of the sections his company is divided into, and takes post on the proper pivot of the leading subdivision or section. *R. & R. Part* II., *S.* 47, 48. *Part* III., *S.* 110.

Column of Subdivision or Section wheeling into Line.—In wheeling into line from column of subdivision or section the word *Halt, Dress,* is likewise, at the conclusion of the wheel, given for the whole by the platoon commander.

Open Column.—Platoon officers are on the pivot flank, unless differently ordered, or permitted, as on a march for a considerable distance, to step in front of their platoons. *M. & P. Atten. in Plat. Officers.*

March of the Open Column.—" When an officer is " marching on the pivot flank he is answerable for " distance and covering; these circumstances alone " must solely engage his attention, and he can only " occasionally give a glance of his eye towards his " platoon, which of course must dress to him with- " out any particular direction." *M. & P. Atten. in Plat. Officers.*

Leading Officer.—" On the leading platoon officer " of the column much of the precision of march de- " pends;

" pends; he must lead at an equal, steady pace; he " must lead on two objects either given to him, or " which himself takes up, on every alteration of po- " sition; this demands his utmost attention; nor must " he allow it to be diverted by looking at his platoon, " the care of whose regularity depends on the other " officers and non-commissioned officers belonging " to it; the second platoon officer must also have a " knowledge of the points on which the first leads; " he is always to keep that first officer and those " points in a line; and those two officers, together " with the placed mounted officers, thus become a di- " rection for the other pivot officers to cover. In march- " ing in open column the covering serjeants are placed " behind the second file from the pivot officers, that " the officers may the more correctly see and cover " each other in column." *M. & P. Atten. in Plat. Officers.*

Centre Platoon Officers.—" The officer of one of " the centre platoons is always in open column to " preserve distance for the colour files." *M. & P. Atten. in Plat. Officers.*

Marching in Column at Open Ranks.—When, while proceeding in column, ranks are opened, the platoon officer steps three paces in front of his division, and, while so marching, keeps so near to the preceding one as not to hinder the flank of his own division from preserving its proper distance. If the platoon commander is the only officer attached to his division, he is about the centre, towards the right; when there are more he is always in front of the second file from the right. *R. & R. Insp. or Review March, past in ordinary Time.*

On the March wheeling on a fixed Pivot.—" If the " column is in movement, and platoons are succes- " sively to wheel into a new direction, each officer, " to whatever hand he is to wheel, gives his word from " the point he is then placed at, whether in front or on " the flank; if on the wheeling flank, he conducts

" it;

" it; if he is on the standing flank, he steps out two " or three paces, to see that his platoon wheels quick, " with a lengthy step, and that he may time his word " *Halt*; this done, he is to fall back to his place on " the pivot flank, no longer to look to his platoon, " but, having his eye fixed on the officer of the pre- " ceding platoon, he is to give his word *March* at the " instant that officer is taking the last step, which " establishes the proper distance betwixt the platoons;" observing to pronounce it while he places his right foot to the ground, that his men may step off the instant those of the division in his front advance the left. *M. & P. Atten. in Plat. Officers.*

Wheeling of a Column on a Moveable Pivot.— " When the head of a column of march changes its " direction, and that marching in an alignement is not " in question, instead of making regular wheels on " fixed points, the officer who conducts the leading di- " vision will often be directed gradually to bring it " round into the new direction, by the turn of the out- " ward shoulder, making both his flanks continue move- " able; but each succeeding division, without the for- " mality of command or halt, does the same thing, the " whole attention resting on each pivot flank, which at " no rate must increase its distance, but, during this " operation, preserve the same equality of time and " length of step at which it was before moving." *M. & P. Atten. of the Officers.*

Decrease the Front of a Column.—In forming a column of subdivisions or sections from a column of divisions, after the general direction the words of execution to the subdivisions or sections to double behind are delivered by each platoon commander to those of his own company; and each platoon commander posts himself on the pivot flank of his respective leading subdivision or section when the intended diminishing of the front has been effected. *R. & R. Part* II., *S.* 56, 57.

Increase the Front of a Column.—In increasing the front

front of a column from a column of subdivisions or sections to that of divisions, the general caution is likewise given by the battalion chief, and the words of execution for the rear subdivisions or sections to come up by the platoon officers, each to his respective company. *R. & R. Part* II., *S.* 56, 57.

Countermarch of Platoons.—" When platoons in " column are each to countermarch on its own ground, " the officer, when his platoon faces, goes to that flank " which is to become the pivot flank, conducts his " platoon in file, and closes its leader to the serjeant, " who has remained to mark the pivot, *Halts*, *Fronts*, " and dresses it square; he then places himself where " the serjeant stood." *M. & P. Atten. in Plat. Officers.*

From Open form Close Column.—In forming close from open column, whether the movement takes place to the front or to the rear, platoon commanders *Halt* and *Dress* their divisions the instant they approach to within one pace of the division they are close to. However, when this alteration in the depth of the column is effected on a rear division, as those in its front must perform it, the rear rank being ahead at the conclusion of the movements, the words *Halt*, *Front*, *Dress*, must be substituted for the command *Halt*, *Dress*, which is given to each division on having moved up to an advanced one.

From Close form Open Column.—In forming open from close column, when it is performed to the front, the rear division is first directed to stand fast, and the others, marching on, are successively halted by their respective officers when they have moved at their proper wheeling distance from that in their rear, and which has just halted before them*. *R. & R. Part* III., *S.* 153.

---

* In some regiments, in opening a column from a rear division, those in front are successively halted by the platoon officer

From

From the front Division.—When the opening out takes place to the rear, and from the front division, the latter is ordered to stand fast, and the others faced about and moved (the rear rank in front) till they have successively acquired their distance, when they are halted and fronted each by its own officer. *R. & R. Part* III., *S.* 153.

On a Central Division.—When this formation into open column is effected on a central division, it partakes of both the above operations. *R. & R. Part* III., *S.* 153.

Another Method of forming Open from Close Column.—The column may also be opened from any named division by the leading one only marching off, and each of the others receiving successively the word *March* from its commander, when the division in front has acquired its due wheeling distance. *R. & R. Part* III., *S.* 153.

Changing the Head of a Column.—In changing the head of a column by the countermarch of companies from the rear, the platoon commanders successively face their divisions to the reverse flank, which, on account of the opposite wing being brought ahead, becomes by this movement the pivot one; platoon officers, therefore, after shifting to it for the purpose of heading the files, and after leading their divisions out, do not, when they deliver the words *Halt, Front,* return to their former post, but remain at the flank they are now posted on. When the preceding division has moved to its proper distance they give the word *March,* and proceed to the front. *R. & R. Part* III., *S.* 101.

Column of Grand Division.—In a column of grand divisions the platoon officer of the right company is placed on the right, and that of the left company on

---

in their rear, whose division being halted before, he gives the word *Halt, Dress,* to that in its front the instant it has moved at a distance equal to the front of his own.

the

the left of the grand division. *R. & R. Part IV.*

Close Column of the Line.

Close Column.—"In close column of divisions "officers are on the pivot flank;" which is on the left when the right is in front, and the right when the left is in front. *M. & P. Atten. in Plat. Officers.*

Deployment.—"In forming line, before the divi-"sions face, they (the platoon commanders) are "shifted to the leading flank, if necessary; the "officer of each stops in his own person when the "division nearer to the forming point than himself "receives the words *Halt, Front;* he allows his ser-"jeant to proceed with the division, at the due instant "gives his word *Halt, Front, Dress*, and, as soon as "the front of his division is clear, the word *March*, "conducting it into line; before the division arrives "within three or four paces of its ground, the officer "will have stepped out nimbly to the flank of the "preceding division, and will be thus ready to give "the word *Halt, Dress*, at the instant his inward "flank man joins the preceding division. The men "dress by the formed part of the line, and the officer "corrects them on the known distant point; he then "resumes his platoon place, which has been preserved "by a serjeant. When the close column or part of "it forms line on a rear division, the officer of each, "when the one behind him halts, fronts, will step "nimbly round to the rear (and, without impeding "his division, allow his serjeant to proceed); from "thence he can judge the proper moment of giving "his words *Halt, Front*, to his division; he then "places himself on his inward flank, and marches up "when his front is clear." *M. and P. Atten. of Plat. Officers.*

In general a mounted field officer halts, fronts, the "divisions of the close column when they march up "into line." *M. and P. Atten. of Plat. Officers.*

Position in the Echelon.—In wheeling into echelon officers do not step in front of their division, but,

 at

at the caution, shift (if not already there) to the named pivot or inward flank; and, when the required degree of wheel is accomplished, after halting and fronting their division, from it take post at the same.

Change Position by Echelon.—" When the battalion changes position by the echelon march, the " named division wheels its eighth file into the new " direction, the other divisions wheel their eighth " file half the number of paces as the named one; " the serjeant is on the outward flank, the officer on " the inward flank, of each division; at the word " *March* they move on, preserving their relative distance and covering of pivots from before them; and " just before the inward flank of each division arrives " at the outward flank of its preceding one, which is " already halted in line, its officer places himself before that flank; and, when its inward man touches " it, he gives his word *Halt, Dress up,* if the movement is to the front, and dresses his division on the " distant prepared flank point, so that his division is " steadied before the arrival of the next one. When " the change is made to the rear, the retiring part of " the line faces about before the division wheels are " made, proceeds as above, and each officer gives the " word *Halt, Front, Dress back,* to his division, when " its inward man touches the preceding formed one." *M. and P. Atten. in Plat. Officers.*

Retiring by alternate Companies.—In retiring by alternate companies, officers of the divisions belonging to the right wing, at the command *Right about face,* shift to the inward flank of their respective companies, and remain there until the line is re-formed; they then return to the right, their proper post in line. The reason for this change of position in the platoon officers on the right of the colours is because both the dressing and the preserving of distance being, in the present instance, from the centre, it is indispensably requisite that the platoon commanders should be posted on the inward flank, and therefore that those of the left wing

wing should be on the proper right of their companies, and those of the right wing on the proper left of theirs. *R. and R. Part* III., *S.* 176.

Marching by Files.—When a single company or division marches by files the platoon officer heads the front rank, and his serjeant the rear rank; but, when more than one company or division is thus directed to march, officers are always out of the ranks, and replaced in the front rank, each by his covering serjeant, who in this instance heads the same. This position of the officers out of the ranks is here required to preserve, while on the march, both the line and step. *R. and R. Part* III., *S.* 94.

" When the platoon of a column file separately to " a flank the officer conducts the head; and when he " arrives within thirty paces of the new position, in " which he is to form, he detaches his serjeant to mark " the point at which he is to place his pivot front " rank man, either in filing to front or rear. The " officer stops at that serjeant, and *Halts, Fronts,* " and *Dresses,* his platoon close to the serjeant; he " then himself, after correcting his platoon, replaces " the serjeant who falls back to the rear rank. In " filing, distances and dressing are taken from that " hand to which, by a face of a platoon, the whole " would stand fronted, in column, and the line breaks " into column towards the directing point. The " leader of the third, fourth, &c., platoons from " the directing flank, are never in the course of " marching, to overpass the straight line which joins " the heads of the first and second, but are, if any " thing, to be behind it, till they arrive and halt " exactly in the new line. In movements to the rear, " distance and dressing are always taken from the " same points to which they would be made if the " movement was to the front; that is, from the left " in going to the rear, if it should be from the right " in going to the front." *Atten. in Platoon Officers.*

Hollow

Hollow Square.—When a hollow square is formed, platoon officers are posted on the right of their respective divisions in line with the front rank, unless differently directed.

Solid Square.—In the solid square the platoon officers of the two front and two rear divisions are posted in the intervals left in the centre of their respective divisions; the two officers of the two centre divisions occupy the space left open, or interval formed, in the centre of the reverse flank; and the commanders of the division immediately in front, and in the rear of the two latter take post in the interval left on the pivot side; by which means two officers are posted in the middle of each face to command it, and each interval is occupied by the officers who were the nearest to it*. The remaining platoon commanders, if the square has been formed by more than eight divisions, as well as the other officers and serjeants, are in the void space in the centre near their companies, or wherever the commander may think proper to post them.

Square Firing.—When the square is ordered to fire, and two first ranks throughout the column are directed to kneel, the file coverers behind the eight officers commanding the four faces fall back, to enable those officers to stand in line with the third rank. Their covering serjeants, or even two under officers, may now be ordered in their front, in line with the first and second rank; and, while they kneel, should slope their pikes to protect them.

Firing by Battalion, Wing, and half Battalion.—In firing by battalion, wings, or half battalions, the word of command is delivered by the chief, or by one of the field officers, and platoon commanders remain steady, each on the right of his own company.

* Figure 51 exhibits a solid square, the right in front.

In

In firing by Grand Divisions.—In firing by grand divisions, on the close of the preparative, the officer commanding, and who stands on the right of the grand division, takes a pace to the front, and faces to the left, towards his men. The officer whose grand division is directed to commence the fire instantly gives the words *Make ready*, *Present*, *Fire*, which are successively delivered by the others, every officer leaving three pauses (each of them equal to the ordinary time, viz., the seventy-fifth part of a minute) between his word *Ready* and the fire of the preceding one. This is, however only to be understood where there are four or five grand divisions; because,—if there were but three,—five, or even six pauses, would be required to establish the proper interval, and allow sufficient time for the first division to be re-loaded and shouldered again when the last fires, which is the object here intended to be obtained by those pauses. When there are but two grand divisions the word *Ready* is to be given to the one the instant the other is shouldered. When the *General* is beat as a signal to cease fire, officers resume their position into the ranks at the hearing of the last stroke of the drum. *R. and R. Inspection or Review; and M. and P. Firing by Grand Divisions, and Firing by Platoons.*

Centre Officer of the Grand Division.—In firing by grand divisions the centre officer falls back, on the preparative, into the fourth rank, and is replaced by the covering serjeant; but he resumes his place in the line the instant the signal to cease firing is heard.

Firing by Platoons.—When the direction is given to fire by platoons, officers step out, and face to the left towards their companies at the preparative, in the manner already explained where the fire takes place by grand divisions; and likewise, at the signal to cease firing, they fall back into the ranks. In firing by platoons the words of command are to be pro-

nounced

nounced short, as *Ready*, *P'sent*, *Fire*, instead of *Make ready*, *Present*, *Fire*.

When there are five divisions in a wing, an interval of two pauses is to be made betwixt the firing of each division and the pronouncing of the word *Ready* for the succeeding one. When there are only four, three pauses become necessary*. This interval, however, is only requisite during the first round, after which the men are not to shoulder their firelocks after loading, but to throw them to the Recover; and the officer of each platoon, the instant he sees the whole of his men thus ready, is to give, without waiting for any other platoon, the commands *P'sent*, *Fire*, the word *Ready* becoming now unnecessary on account of the previously assumed position of Recover Arms. Should the men be in the act of loading when the signal is given to cease fire, they are, notwithstanding this, to come to the Recover, and thus wait for the words *Half cock*, *Shoulder Arms*, which are given by the platoon officer as soon as he sees that the whole of his men have recovered. When they have shouldered, the platoon officer resumes his place in the ranks †.

---

* Unless where, in a successive formation, the divisions already in line fire while those in their rear are still coming up. A battalion or body consisting of more than six divisions should always, in firing by platoons, perform it by wings, from centre to flank or flank to centre, each carrying on its own independently, and without any regard to the other. Were, under those circumstances, the fire executed throughout the line, and the division by which it commenced, though re-loaded, ordered to await until it had passed regularly through the whole, a loss of fire must be indubitably sustained, which must always be the case whenever, the fire being successively performed, every part of the battalion has not executed its own without the time the battalion or body would have required to fire a volley, and to load again.

† When a wing is composed of only three divisions, the platoon firing should take place through the whole from flank to flank, only one pause being observed between the firing of a platoon and the making ready of a succeeding one.

Supernumerary

Superuumerary Rank.

General Instructions.—When acting in the supernumerary rank, officers, as well as serjeants, are in the rear of their respective companies;—when in line, whether the battalion is halted, or in march, they are three paces from the rear rank;—in open column they are within one pace of the rear rank;—in close column they go on the flank of their division which is not the pivot;—and when grand divisions are formed, supernumeraries proceed to the rear ot the column; in both the hollow and solid squares they are placed in the centre or void space either in the rear or about the company they belong to. "Their great attention "during the movements is, that files are correct, "ranks kept up, and that perfect order is preserved "among the soldiers,—circumstances in which they "greatly assist the platoon officer, who, having the "important objects of distance and covering of pivots "to observe, cannot in such situation be giving mi- "nute directions to his platoon without losing sight "of his more material duties. During the firings, "the supernumerary rank, assisted by the platoon "serjeants, are to keep the rear ranks well closed "up to the front, and to prevent any break begin- "ning in the rear." ***Book of M. and P. Atten. of Plat. Officers.***

Respective Position of the Supernumeraries when in the Rear of their Companies.—When supernumeraries are, either in line or in open column, or while in the echelon position, in the rear of their companies, the first lieutenant, or whoever may be next in seniority to the officer who commands the company, is always posted behind the second file from the opposite flank to that on which the platoon commander is posted; that is to say, behind the second file from the right when the commanding officer of the company is on the left flank, and behind the second file from the left when he is on the right; the second lieutenant, or next

next in seniority, is behind the second file from the flank at which the commander stands; and the ensign is in the centre. Should there be four officers acting as supernumeraries to one same company, the two juniors are to divide the ground between the two seniors; the elder of the former being on the same side as the elder of the two latter. Serjeants are posted between the officers *.

Position at Open Order.—At Open Order the captain or commander of the company is placed three paces in front of the second file from the right; the lieutenant covers the second file from the left; and the ensign is opposite the centre. When four officers are attached to one company, the two juniors should divide the ground between the two seniors, the elder of the former being on the right; a fifth should be posted opposite the centre, and so on.

Serjeants' Position, when Supernumeraries, in taking Open Order.—Serjeants, when posted in the supernumerary rank, do not, like the officers, move to the front in taking Open Order; but, at the word *March*, step back, so as to preserve their original distance of three paces from the rear rank.

Officers, when carrying the Colours.

Colours, how carried.—Colours are carried in the right hand, the higher part of the shaft inclining rather forward, and the shoe being lodged in the colour belt's pocket when in front, a little to the left, at the height of the hip or waistcoat pocket.

Salute.—In saluting, the colours are dropped to the ground, the right hand keeping hold of the shaft, and lowering it until the right arm is fully extended.

Colours carried, supported.—When, on the march,

---

* *Fig.* 52 shews a division, the platoon commander being on the right; and *fig.* 53 when he is posted on the left. *Fig.* 54 exhibits the situation of the officers at Open Order.

arms

arms are directed to be supported, colours are to be carried in the right arm, the top of the shoe being about a foot from the ground, and the shaft resting against the right shoulder. At the word *Carry Arms*, the position first directed is resumed.

Order Arms.—When arms are directed to be ordered, at the last word, *Arms*, the left hand is brought to the lower part of the shaft, which is placed in a perpendicular position, opposite the centre of the body, and, when so, permitted to slip through the fingers till the under part drops to the ground, this being executed in time with the firelocks.

Shoulder Arms.—In shouldering arms, at the last word, *Arms*, the colours are quickly replaced into the shouldered position; and, as soon as the shoe is lodged into the belt's pocket, the left hand is smartly brought down along the left side.

Colours' Division.—The colours' division consists of the two officers carrying the colours, and the five centre serjeants. The senior officer has charge of the king's colour, and is posted on the right. Each colour is covered in the rear rank by a serjeant; a third serjeant is posted between the colours; a fourth doubles this latter in the rear rank; and a fifth in the supernumerary rank, the chief purpose of these three under officers being, as already explained, to advance and direct the march, when the battalion moves to the front or to the rear. The position of the colours and serjeants in the different movements are as follows:

In Line.—In line the colours' division is placed betwixt the two centre companies, the two officers carrying the colours, and the centre serjeant being in line with the front rank, *R. and R. Part* III., *Formation of the Battalion.*

At Open Column.—In taking open order, at the word *March* the colours step out three paces to the front, and are replaced in the first rank by their covering serjeants.

Resume

Resume Close Order.—At the caution to *Close Ranks* the officers carrying the colours and serjeants face to the right; on the work *March* every one resumes his post at close order. *R. and R. Part* III. *to take Open and to resume Close Order.*

Marching to the Front and Rear.—In moving to the front or to the rear in line, the three centre serjeants are advanced six paces to direct the march, and the place of the directing serjeant is preserved by an officer or serjeant from the rear, who steps betwixt the colours when the march is to the front, or betwixt the two serjeants in the leading rank when the line is retiring. *R. and R. Part* III. *S.* 166, 168.

Wheeling into Open Column.—In wheeling into open column, the colours and centre serjeants wheel in a separate division, and place themselves behind the third, fourth, and fifth files from the pivot flank of the leading centre division, which is always the position of the colours' division in open column, whether it is halted or in motion. *Part* III. *S.* 106.

Close Column.—In close column the colours' division is always on the reverse flank to that of the two centre companies, which in the column is placed in the rear. *R. and R. Part* III. *Close Column.*

Grand Divisions.—When a column of grand divisions is formed, the colours and serjeants are posted on the reverse flank of the centre division, which outflanks on the reverse side of the column. *R. and R. Part* III. *S.* 147.

Close Column, the Rear Rank in Front.—When a close column faces to the right about and proceeds to its rear, the rear rank leading, the colours and serjeants remain attached to the division on whose flank they stand when the column has faced to its proper front.

Change of Front by the Countermarch.—When a battalion in line changes its front by the countermarch on, or from its centre by files, or on its centre by companies or subdivisions, the colours' division stands fast until the change is effected, and the whole is formed, when

when the colours and serjeants will be directed to face to the right, and to countermarch into the new front.

Retiring by alternate Companies.—In retiring by alternate companies, the king's colour remains attached to the right centre company, whether it belongs to the right or left companies, and directs the movement to the rear of the line it makes part of, the centre serjeant advancing six paces before it during the march; the regimental colour follows the motions of the left centre company, its directing serjeant* being likewise six paces in its front while it is proceeding to the rear; distances and dress are in this movement preserved from the colours. *R. and R. Part* III. *S.* 176.

Advance and Retire by half Battalion.—In advancing or retiring by half battalions the king's colour remains always with the right wing, and the regimental with the left; while in motion, the men of each half battalion are looking to, and guided by, their respective colour, before which a directing serjeant is advanced six paces, *viz.*, the centre serjeant before the king's colour, and the serjeant covering the supernumerary rank before the regimental one. *R. and R. Part* III. *S.* 177.

Echelon.—When the divisions of a battalion wheel into the echelon position, the three files of colours and centre serjeants wheel up as a separate division, parallel to the others, and on the march preserve their relative situation to the division which is moving in their front. *R. and R. Part* III. *S.* 164.

Hollow Square.—Colours and centre serjeants are posted within the hollow square, behind the centre of the front a face, which is the name given to that, on which the formation of the square has taken place. *R. and R. Part* III. *S.* 178, *No.* 2.

---

* The serjeant who doubles the centre one in the supernumerary rank.

On

On the March.—When the square is directed to march, the colours' division at the caution moves behind either the centre of the face, or the angle which is announced to lead the movement; at the word *Halt* colours and serjeants return to their original position behind the centre of the front face. *R. and R. Part* III. *S.* 178, *Nos.* 3 *and* 4.

Solid Square.—In the solid square, the colours, coverers, and centre serjeants, are in the void space of the square. *R. and R. Part* III., *S.* 178, *No.* 10, *and Part* IV., *S.* 189.

S. 7. *Instruction to the Officers and Non-commissioned Officers relative to the Perpendicular Directions while on the March, and preserving of the Distance while in Column.*

The preserving of the perpendicular direction on the march, as well as the keeping of the true wheeling distance while in column, have been already noticed in the foregoing as attainments not to be dispensed with, either in the officers or non-commissioned officers; they should therefore spare no trouble in rendering themselves perfectly masters of them; but though a certain habit in both is acquired by frequently acting in the battalion, yet as this is not to be depended on, officers, under the direction of the field officers, and non-commissioned officers, under the superintendence of the adjutant, should be carefully drilled, and afterwards occasionally practised to those two important objects, in the manner hereunder explained.

Perpendicular

Perpendicular Direction of March.

The straight direction on the march consisting principally in due quickness and exactness in taking the *points de vue*, this will be practised as follows: an equilateral triangle being at first traced out by means of a cord of about 30 feet, the line *A. B.*, *fig.* 56, drawn from the centre of the basis to the summit of the angle *B.*, will be prolonged as far as the ground permits, *E.* and this line being marked all along by small pegs put in the ground at a certain distance from each other, and so as not to be seen at *A.*, where the officer to be practised in taking of the perpendicular is to be placed.—The officer will then be posted at the same point *A.*, and from it directed to halt a person moving in the direction shewn by the line *F. G.* while he is crossing the perpendicular *A. E.* and should he prove untimely in giving the word *Halt*, and pronounce it either previous to the said person reaching the point of intersection *K.*, or after he has passed it (as, for instance, *L.* or *M.)*, a third person is immediately, through the assistance of the pegs, to take post at *K.*, to point out in what respect, as well as to what degree, he has erred in taking his *points de vue* for the true perpendicular direction.

It will readily occur that the distance *A. K.*, between the officer at *A.* and the line *F. G.*, which at first should be only about fifty yards, is gradually to be increased as far as the ground will permit *O. P.* *fig.* 56; the spot from which the *points de vue* are taken, *A.*, is likewise to be frequently altered.

When some precision has been obtained by the foregoing, the whole of the pegs, with the exception of those at *A.* and *E.*, will be withdrawn, and the officer or under officer at *A.*, being directed to provide himself with the necessary objects to proceed in the perpendicular at the word *March*, this command will be given,

given, and the person or object at *E.* removed while he is in motion.—At the direction to *Halt*, which is here to be delivered unexpectedly, the degree of rectitude observed in the advance by either the officer or the non-commissioned officer thus practised, is to be ascertained, and his error explained and corrected, should he appear to have deviated from the path he ought to have pursued.

Method to Train Officers and Non-commissioned Officers to Taking and Preserving of Distance in Column.

The whole or only a number of officers of the battalion, under the direction of one of the field-officers, may be trained to the knowledge of distances as follows:—One being posted at *A.*, *fig.* 57, and supposed to lead a column, the others will be ordered to place themselves in its rear, *B. C. D. E.*, leaving between each other a distance capable of containing a named number of files, which distance must be afterwards verified by means of a cord, on which every 22 inches (the space allowed for each file in the rank) is distinguished by either a piece of cloth or a knot *.

When the distances have been thus ascertained the whole may be directed, at the word *March*, to proceed forward; and while advancing, the officer in front ordered to change direction to either flank, performing this occasionally as if the change had been effected on a halted pivot: and sometimes by winding about, as if the operation was taking place by a shoulder forward; the measure above explained being regularly applied

* Instead of measure or cord thus marked at every 22 inches, a number of men may be ordered to attend on those occasions, and the distances can be readily proved by directing as many of them as there are named number of files to take post in line between the officers *A.* and *B.*, *B.* and *C.*, *C.* and *D.*, &c.—*Fig.* 57.

every

every time the word *Halt* is given, to ascertain whether the original distance in which they stood has been duly observed while on the march.

The non-commissioned officers, under the care of the adjutant, should in like manner be practised to the foregoing.

S. 8. *Field Officers, Adjutant, and Staff; Battalion at Close Order.*

Book of Platoon and Manual Exercises.—The colonel (except when advanced in front, for the purpose of exercising the battalion when it is single) is in rear of the colours, mounted: the 1st and 2d lieutenant-colonels, mounted, in rear of the 1st and 8th battalion companies.

The first and second majors, mounted, in rear of the 3d and 6th companies.

The adjutant, mounted, in rear, and a little to the left, of the colonel.

N. B.—This dislocation of mounted officers has a reference to the battalion only while halted.

When the regiment manœuvres, or is put in motion, the mounted officers are to be prepared to give such aid as circumstances may require from them, with the utmost alacrity and precision.

Battalion at Open Order.

The colonel, dismounted, to be advanced four paces in front of the colours.

The first and second lieutenant-colonels, dismounted, at two paces interval, and two paces in rear of the colonel.

The first and second majors on the right and left of the line of officers, mounted.

The adjutant, mounted, four paces in rear of the rear rank, and centre of the battalion.

Marching

Marching past the Reviewing General in Column of Companies or Divisions.

Ordinary Time.

The colonel in front of the centre of the grenadier company.

The first lieutenant-colonel and major, with the interval of a horse's length, in a line in rear of the colonel.

The second lieutenant-colonel and second major in a line, with the same interval, in rear of the light infantry company.

The adjutant in rear of the whole.

Marching past in Quick Time.

The field officers and adjutant are posted as in marching past in ordinary time;—the same order is also generally observed in a column of march.

Adjutant.

It is the particular business of the adjutant on all occasions, except in advancing in line, to ascertain, under the guidance of the field officers, points of formation, dressing, and march. In this important duty he may be greatly assisted by having two or three non-commissioned officers properly trained to line themselves quickly with any two given points. *M. & P. Att. of Plat. Off. Ajt.*

The various points required in the movements and exercise of the battalion are as follow:—

Open Column entering an Alignement.—When the battalion, in open column, enters an alignement, the point of entry *A.*, *fig.* 58, and two points *C.* and *D.* ahead, to direct the march when the alignement is entered.

Wheeling into Line.—In wheeling into line, a point beyond each flank of the intended line, *A B.*, *fig.* 59.

Open

Open Column.—When a line, after wheeling backwards by divisions, is to march in the prolongation of its flank, and whenever a battalion moves in open column, two points, C. D, *fig.* 60, for the leading officer to conduct the march.

Close Column.—In close column, while on the march, two points, A. B, *fig.* 61, to direct its movement.

March by Files.—When a line, after facing, is to move in files, two points, A. B, *fig.* 62, a head, for the front officer to lead on.

Countermarch by Files on or from the Centre, and by Divisions or Subdivisions on the Centre.—When, in line, the front is changed by the countermarch on or from the centre by files, or on the centre by divisions or subdivisions, the point of each wing, C. D, *fig.* 63, is to be marked by a serjeant; or two points provided, E. and F, beyond each flank, to correct the dressing.

Changing the Head of a Column by Countermarch of Divisions from the Rear.—In changing the head of a column by the countermarch of companies from the rear, the instant the rear company or division has led out and fronted, two points, A. B, *fig.* 64, in the new alignement to direct its march.

Deploying.—If a close column deploys into line on a flank division, a point of appui, A. *fig.* 65, and a point of dressing beyond the opposite flank, B, are required, if the formation takes place on a central division, a central point of appui, A, *fig.* 66, and a point of dressing or correction beyond each flank, C. D, *fig.* 66, become necessary.

Open Column filing by Divisions.—When the divisions of an open column move separately by files, two points, A. B, *fig.* 67, ahead of the directing division (that from which distances and dressing are to be preserved in filing) must be prepared for its officer.

Change of Position by the File Movement.—In the change of position by the filing of divisions, if on a flank division the point on which the pivot of the leading

ing division is to rest, A, and a point beyond, B, *fig.* 68, will be given, to determine the line of the other pivots, S. S. S, which are taken by the serjeants; if the change is central, the point A, *fig.* 69, where the pivot flank of the division on which the change of position is to take place is marked, as well as two points, B. C, one on each side, which three points determine the direction of the other pivots, S. S. S*.

March in Echelon.—In the echelon march of division to the front or to the rear, two points, A, B, *fig.* 70, ahead of the leading flank division, to direct its progress.

Change of Position by Echelon Movement.—When the battalion takes a new position by the echelon march, a point, A, *fig.* 71, where the leading flank enters the line and forms, and another, B. beyond the opposite flank, on which the divisions in coming up correct successively their dressing.

Hollow Square.—To facilitate the formation of the

* When the battalion changes to a distant position, either to its front or rear, by the filing of its divisions, and that this new position is parallel or oblique to the one it has quitted, the battalion, after breaking into open column, is directed to face, and objects, A. B, *fig.* 73, are provided for the leader of the second division, which crosses the new line at E, as near as can be judged to where the pivot flank of this division is to be placed. The whole being then put in motion, the leader of the second platoon marches steadily in the given direction, and the commander of the battalion remains with the head platoon H, and, by ordering it insensibly to advance or to keep back, regulates the heads of all the others, which, while in motion, endeavour to remain in line with the two leading ones, keeping, if any thing, rather to the rear, so as to be able, at the word *Halt*, quickly, although successively, to arrive in the line pointed out by the two leading divisions. In the case of the new direction being already prepared by the points L, M, same figure serjeants, when the head of the column is within thirty or forty paces of the new line, may run out and mark the pivot flank of their respective companies, S. S. S. *R. & R. Part* III., *S.* 123.

hollow

hollow square, the angles A, B, *fig.* 72, not formed by the front face, may likewise be marked.

Advance and Retreat in Line.—The ascertaining of points to move on when the battalion advances or retires in line is the peculiar province of the commanding officer, and therefore does not depend on the adjutant.

Advance and Retreat by Wings or alternate Companies.—When the advance or retreat is performed by half battalions, a field-officer directs the progress or march of the left wing. When the retreat is performed by alternate companies, a field-officer is likewise to take charge of the line formed by the left companies.

When acting in brigade or line, adjutants generally mark the point at which their respective battalions enter an alignement, and the point of formation on which the dressing of each battalion is to be corrected. The commander of such brigade or considerable line has commonly a distant point, D, *fig.* 74, on which he determines and corrects the several battalions' points *.

---

* When a considerable open column enters, marches, and forms on a straight alignement, the several points and prolongation of the line to be marked by the adjutants are thus defined in Regulations:—

R. & R. Part IV., *S.* 180.—1st. " Before the head of a considerable column of march enters a straight line which it is to " prolong and form upon, the point S. of entry must be marked by " a fixed person, who is to remain there till he is relieved; also " another point, R, at least sixty or seventy paces from the first, " and in the exact direction which is to be given to the new line. " Three other persons, M, N, O, immediately and successively " prolong themselves on R. S. as the original base; and being " also corrected from S. upon such distant point D. (if any) as " the commander shall have taken, they place themselves at least " 200 paces from S. and from each other."

Prolongation of the Line by Adjutants.—2d. " The line being " thus in time prepared, the head of the first battalion arrives " and wheels into the direction at S, and the adjutant of that " battalion remains at the point of entry till the last division of

Staff

Staff.

Close Order.—When the battalion is at Close Order the staff of chaplain, surgeon, quarter-master, and assistant surgeon, are three paces behind the music.

" his battalion has entered; he then gallops on for about 200 " paces, and posts himself on the line. The adjutant of the se- " cond battalion, who has in his turn placed himself at the point " of entry, as soon as his last division has entered at it, gallops on " and relieves the first adjutant, who goes on about 200 paces " further, and again posts himself. When the third battalion has " entered, its adjutant relieves the second; that second relieves " the first; and the first proceeds 200 paces further, and again " alignes himself. In this manner, and till the last battalion has " entered the line, do the adjutants successively and diligently " relieve each other. If any of the adjutants overtake or interfere " with the advanced persons, who in the front are prolonging the " line, such adjutants may return to their battalions, as being no " longer of service."

Prolongers of the March.—3d. " As to the persons, M, N, O, " who are in front of the column, two of them at least having " taken their station by the time that the leading battalion " enters the line, as soon as the head of it approaches the first of " them he gallops on and new alignes himself beyond the other " two; and this operation each successively repeats till the co- " lumn halts, which has always had (independent of any accidental " distant point) two such persons to march upon."

Adjutants.—6th. " If the column halts when the last battalion " has entered, the adjutants remain fixed till the line is cor- " rected and formed; but if the column is still carried on, then " the person posted originally at S, the point of entry, when he " sees the rear of the column approaching the last adjutant, " quits that point, relieves that adjutant (who proceeds, &c.) " and repeats that operation till the column halts and forms in " line."

9th. " When a column halts to form, such persons as are then " marking that line are not to quit their posts till so ordered, or " till the line is put in march."

Manner in which Adjutants are to act in preserving the Alignement.—11th. " Although the posting and successive relieving of " adjutants on the line will undoubtedly preserve the direction, " yet troops that are sufficiently trained ought certainly to pro- " long and form justly on any line by having two given points

Open

Open Order.—In taking Open Order, at the word *March* the staff officers place themselves on the right of the front rank of the grenadiers, the following order being observed amongst them from right to the left;—the chaplain, the surgeon, the quarter-master, and the assistant-surgeon, the latter being on the left.

Battalion reviewed singly.—When the battalion is

" of march always ahead of the column, one point of entry " marked and remaining, the commanding officers of battalions " moving correctly on the flank of their leading divisions, and " the adjutants or other mounted officers only occasionally stop-" ping in the true line till the battalion they belong to has passed. " This should suffice to correct any small inaccuracy of the pivots, " and keep the whole in the general direction given by the of-" ficers advanced in front of the column."

Prolongation of a Line.—18th. " When a line already formed " is to wheel into open column and prolong its direction, three " persons, M, N, O, take their stations in the front as points " of march and the adjutants A, A, A, *fig.* 75, place themselves " each close to the pivot flank of his own second division; the " column is put in motion; the last adjutant, when the rear " approaches the one next to himself, relieves him; and he going " on, they successively relieve each other."

Change of Direction.—19th. " When a line prolonging a straight " direction changes into another straight direction, the advanced " persons, M, N, O, *fig.* 76, will of course be first placed in that " direction, the front adjutant will be at the point of change till " he is relieved, and the column will proceed as before."

General Aids in marching in Column.—20th. " If the march of " the open column (although in open ground) is not meant to be " critically straight, then the placing of adjutants can be dis-" pensed with, and the divisions, at their true wheeling distances, " will scrupulously follow the line which the head of the column " traces out; but, the better to prevent any improper deviation " of the rear, commanding officers or adjutants will frequently " stop at true points of the march until the rear of their battalion " has passed, and always at points where the head of the column " makes any considerable change of direction. If every division " of a column does not accurately follow the path traced out by " the leading one, opening or closing of distances must take " place, running up or stopping short will ensue, and the column " will not be in a situation to form in line with precision." *R. & R. Part* IV., *S.* 160.

reviewed

reviewed singly, the division of drummers may be moved up, and formed two deep on each flank of the line; the pioneers may form two deep on the right of the drummers of the right; and the staff may be formed on the right of the whole;—but this licence is never to be acted upon when more than one battalion is in line. *M. & P. Exercises, S.* 52. "*When the Battalion takes "Open Order.*"

Serjeant-Major.

General Salute.—When the battalion, at Open Order, performs the General Salute, the serjeant-major and drill-serjeant are posted in rear of the colours behind the supernumerary rank.

Marching past.—In marching past a reviewing general in column of companies or divisions, the serjeant-major and drill-serjeant are behind the supernumerary rank of the light company; the former on the right, and a little to the left of the adjutant.

With the exception of the two foregoing instances, no fixed place is allotted to the serjeant-major, who, as well as the drill-serjeant, is, when the battalion is put in motion and manœuvring, to give, under the immediate direction of the adjutant, every assistance which may be required.

S. 9.

S. 9. *Recollections and Attentions in Commanding Officers of Battalions.*

General Attentions.

No Part of the Exercise to be carelessly performed.—1st. Commanding and field officers are not, under any consideration, to permit even the most trivial part of the exercise to be performed either in a careless or slovenly manner. Operations which have in view the correction and redressing of mistakes occurring during the execution of the movements must of course be attended to with the same attention as the manœuvres.

Commands.—2d. All commands are, upon every occasion, to be given loud, quick, and in the full extent of the voice. They are delivered by the commandant, without being repeated by the platoon officer, whenever the movement directed is to be executed by the whole at once; it is therefore by the word of the chief only that the battalion is, both in line as well as in column, put in motion by the word *March*, or, if moving, halted by the command *Halt*; that divisions are either wheeled from line into column, or column into line; brought into the echelon position, and arms ordered to be supported, carried, &c. *R. & R. Part* III., *S.* 74.

Battalion never to cover more Ground than its proper Extent.—3d. In whatever shape or situation, a battalion is never to cover more ground than its proper extent when formed in line. Commanding or field-officers are therefore to pay particular attention to see, 1st. That, in line, the files do not open out; 2d. That distances are preserved in column; 3d. That all alterations on the march executed by the successive wheel of divisions are when so performed executed at the increased time and length of pace, as well as by every division

division on the very spot it was effected by that ahead; and, 4th. That no improper extension results from the increasing or diminishing in the front of divisions in column.

Dressing.—4th. A battalion is dressed, after moving in line, from the centre, towards which eyes are directed;—after wheeling into line, from the flank, which was the leading one in column;—and, in all successive formations, from the point of appui to the distant object of dress, to which the partial correction of divisions likewise took place before*.

Officers, in dressing a line, are always carefully to ascertain the points at which the errors of dress originate, in order to apply the correction from them. Those points are generally removed a few files nearer to the point of appui than those at which the deviation from the true line appears to take place.

Correctness in the Performance of the Movements.—5th. During the execution of the movements, the commanding officer is to be particularly attentive to see that every individual, according to his situation, is observant of the directions laid down in the Rules and Regulations, and to notice whether the platoon officers are at their posts, as well as the adjutant correct in ascertaining the points of march, of dress, and of formation. In column he is generally ahead, to watch over the just leading of it; and at the word

* The greatest fault a commander may perhaps be guilty of, in the exercise as well as in the instruction of the battalion, is to dress it from an improper point, this being infallibly calculated to destroy every instruction intended by this correction, and to cause, were a line thus obtained, the displacing indiscriminately of those who had been exact in lining themselves as well as those who had been defective in their position; it would besides, by not pointing out the source where the mistakes originated, leave every individual uninformed whether he was properly posted in the alignement or not, and consequently in the latter case leave him ignorant in what respect he had deviated from its true position.

Halt,

Halt, if required, to correct the line of pivots on the point or distant object in the rear.

Attentions in the Movements.

Wheeling on Centre.—In wheeling on the centre the named flank always wheels back, viz., the right when the direction is *On your Centre to the Right*, or *Right about, Wheel*, and the left when the wheel is to be *On the Left* or *Left about.*

Change of Front of a Line by Countermarch of Division.—In changing the front of a line or battalion on its centre by companies, subdivisions &c., one wing faces to the right about, and both wings are then directed to wheel inwards by companies, subdivisions, &c., which wheel will be for the whole to the same side, and to the right if it be the right wing which has faced about, and to the left if it be the left wing which has changed its front to the rear.

Countermarch of a Column.—When a column changes its front by the countermarch of divisions, the facing and countermarch are always to the reverse hand; *to the right* when the right is in front, *to the left* if the left leads.

Change Head of a Column.—In changing the head of a column by the countermarch of divisions from the rear, the divisions are faced, and lead out to the reverse flank.

Close Column deploying.—A battalion close column may deploy on any of its divisions, front, rear, or central; but in all cases the line formed upon is that on which the head of a column or columns is halted before the formation begins; the division, therefore, on which the battalion forms, if not already on that line, moves up to it as soon as cleared in its front.

Open Column halting to form into Line.—When an open column halts for the purpose of wheeling into line, and the line is intended to be a straight one, at the delivery of the word *Halt* the commanding officer,

 from

from the head of the battalion, corrects the pivot files of men (which however ought not to be necessary*) on the rear point, and places them in the true line.

Oblique Deployment.—When a close column has to form line in an alignement oblique to that in which it stands previous to its deploying, the division on which it is to take place is first wheeled forward on its reverse flank, *fig.* 77, when the new intended line is advanced; and forward on its pivot flank, B, when retired. The nature of this movement sufficiently points out the difficulty which would attend its being performed on any other division than the front one.

Change of Position of the Line by the Open Column.—In all changes of position of the line by the open column on a fixed point the whole of the divisions wheel so as to face that on which the alteration is to be effected; consequently when performed on a central division, the line breaks inward into two open columns, facing each other, so that one has its right in front and the other its left. When divisions are so situated they face all to the same side in filing into the new position, *fig.* 78; the word *Right* or *Left face* is therefore given for the whole; the division immediately fronting that on which the movement is performed must, in posting itself in a new line, take a double distance, namely, the distance necessary for itself and for the division before it.

On a distant Point.—In the change of position of a line by the open column to a distant point the battalion breaks towards that hand on which the new position outflanks the old one, this being the side the whole have to incline to during the march; but

---

* When this correction of the pivots takes place in the exercise which has in view the immediate instruction of the battalion, the commander should always precede the replacing of a defective pivot into the general line, by shewing the platoon officer the nature of this error, that he may in future guard against a repetition of the same mistake.

should

should this outflanking be immaterial, the line should, in preference, break towards the point of intersection of the two lines *, and thus, by bringing the head of the column nearer to the new alignement than its rear, facilitate the entering into it.

Open Column changing Position on a fixed Point.—When an open column changes position on a fixed point, it is effected on the same principle as for the line; the divisions ahead of the one on which the alteration is to be made countermarch; so as to front it; and, when this is accomplished, the whole face either to the right or to the left, and all to the same side. After filing into the new alignement, the divisions in front of that on which the movement took place countermarch again to their proper front, and the column is ready to proceed. Should this, however, not be intended, and required to wheel into line immediately after the divisions have filed into the new position, the division fronting the one formed on should, in that case, take a double distance, and thereby save the time which otherwise would be required for performing the countermarch.

Line changing to a Position parallel to the one it occupies.—In the change of a line to a parallel position, or nearly so, by the open column and filing of divisions, the divisions of the column always face to the pivot side when the change is to the front, and to the reverse flank when to the rear.

---

* When the battalion breaks to the hand on which the new line outflanks the old one, and this outflanking takes place towards the point of intersection, A, *fig.* 55, its head is nearer to it than its rear; but were the new line to outflank the old one from the point of intersection, the battalion, by wheeling so, would have its rear the nearest to the new position, and it would therefore require while in motion, a gradual wheel of the divisions, B, to enable the leading one to enter the new line before the rear is upon it. To avoid this, where the outflanking is trivial, the line should always break towards the point of intersection.

Wheeling into Echelon.—When the divisions of a battalion in line wheel into echelon, it is always forward to the flank on which it is intended to move, viz., *to the right* if to the right, and *to the left* if to the left. In wheeling into echelon to the rear the line faces about, and the divisions then wheel forward, the rear rank in front*.

Formation by Echelon.—In the oblique change of position by the echelon movement the several divisions of the line are placed and wheeled half the number of paces wheeled by the division on which the formation takes place. Therefore—

On a Flank Division.—When a line changes position by the echelon movement on a flank division, that flank division being first placed into the new intended line, the others are then wheeled (if the line is advanced, *fig.* 80) forward half the number of paces wheeled by the division the formation is on; but if the new line is a retired one, after the directing division has been wheeled back into the new position, the others face about, and, with their rear rank in front, wheel forward towards the new line half the number of paces wheeled by the division they are to form on; each division, in this latter case, resumes its proper front when it has entered the new alignement, *fig.* 81.

On a Central Division.—When the change takes place on a central division the retiring companies face to the right about; and after this is done, the whole wheel forward by divisions towards that of formation, which has previously been placed into the new line. It is to be observed, that in so wheeling into the echelon position, the divisions wheel all to the same

---

* Divisions may, when the line is thus retired, instead of facing about and wheeling forward, first wheel back to the new position, and then face about, obviating thereby the necessity for standing faced to the rear, more than the movement absolutely requires, which, unless some greater advantage is derived from it, ought always to be avoided.

side,

side, and consequently the same command, *To the right* or *To the left wheel*, is to be given for the whole.

Formation of the Line from Column by the Echelon Movement.—In forming line from column by the echelon movement, the divisions, as in line, are wheeled and placed at half the number of paces wheeled by the one the formation takes place on; the divisions in the rear of that on which the line is to form wheel backward on the reverse flank, A, *fig.* 79, and the division ahead of it, after facing about, wheel backwards on their pivot flank B, which causes here again, when it is performed on a central division, the whole to wheel backward on the same side, either to the right or to the left, the side thus wheeled on being, by the facing about of the divisions, ahead the pivot flank of these and the reverse flank of the others, which, placed in the rear, have preserved their natural front *, *fig.* 79.

Advance and Retreat of the Line.—When the battalion advances in line, the commanding officer ascertains from the rear the points the centre serjeant is to proceed on, and from the same gives the direction to *Step short*, *Step out*, *Oblique* to either flank, &c., which the general line may require, as well as attentively watches the advanced serjeants in order to apply instantly the necessary remedy, and direct the bringing forward of a named shoulder, the instant he sees

---

* Divisions in column may likewise here wheel forward on the pivot flank, and then face about; but, in all central formations, this should however be avoided, and the facing about in the retiring companies should always precede their wheeling on account of the word of command, which otherwise would cease to be the same for the whole, for the retiring divisions would then wheel forward on the one flank, while the divisions which are to move to the front would wheel backward on the other; and, if the former were to wheel to the right, the latter would on the left, &c.

the

the true line deviated from, which latter he will readily judge of by the degree of regularity preserved in the battalion while in motion; he will therefore occasionally glance his eyes along the rear rank to observe whether the line is kept throughout without any floating; and should this not be the case, but one wing prove rather advanced while the other keeps to the rear, he is immediately to order the serjeants in front to advance gradually the shoulder on the side where the battalion is falling back, and likewise direct a similar correction if, notwithstanding the line has been pretty correctly preserved, it appeared that the files were crowded in one wing, and an improper loosening of files occurred in the other, in which latter case the shoulder on the flank where the crowding takes place is to be brought to the front. When the battalion retires in order to prevent its standing any time unnecessarily faced to its rear, it is instantly to resume its proper front when halted; and, after facing about, lined, if required.

Firing.—In the advance of the battalion the preparative is instantly to be heard, and the firing to commence at the delivery of the word *Halt*, or, if retiring, at the words *Halt*, *Front*, the nature of the firing being always intimated while in motion, so as to prevent improper delay.

Recollections while acting in Line.

Command.—" When acting in line with others, the " commanding officer of each battalion conforms to the " movements of the regulating one, and from it takes " and rapidly repeats his words *Halt*, *Wheel*, *March*, " &c., and the least delay in repeating the word *Halt* " or *March*, must undoubtedly disorder the line in " proportion to that delay, for the whole of the line " should march or halt at the same instant."

Dressing.—When in line, at the word *Halt* the commandant of a battalion is to line each wing from his own colours, to which his men look, to the colours of

of the next adjoining battalion, which, in the event of all the colours having halted in an exact line, will procure a general continued one for the whole; and if not, until a special correction is made, and defective colours brought in the alignement, the best to be obtained under the existing circumstance, and the most calculated to prevent a flank being thrown out of the general line.

The outward wings of the two flank battalions of a line conform to the general line and inward wing of their respective battalion, *fig.* 89.

Close Column Deploying.—" When several close " battalions standing on the line are to extend and " form, the regulated and named battalion only can " be obliged to form on a central division; each of " the others will form on its front or rear division; viz., " on that which first arrives at its ground where it " *halts*, *fronts*, while the others move on by files, and " successively halt, front, and come up to it." *M. and P. Atten. of Com. Officers of Batt.*

Intervals.—Besides the great care required in commandants to keep their battalions in the general line, unremitted attention must be paid not to increase the intervals left between them, this being by far the greatest fault while acting with others. " Bad dress- " ing may be remedied without danger; but a false " distance presents a weak part to an enemy, and is " not to be closed without a hazardous movement and " great operation of the line." *M. and P. Atten. of Com. Officers of Batt.*

Field Officers not in Command of the Battalion.

The proper situation of the field officers not in command of the battalion might perhaps be best defined by stating it to be where their assistance is most required, and where they can prove of the greatest aid to the commandant. Should the latter, therefore, be differently engaged and not appear at the head of the open column when it marches, and particularly when it

it halts, to correct, if necessary, the pivots in the general line, one of the other field officers, and even the leading officer, when no field officer is there, should instantly attend to it, that the wheeling up may not be delayed. If, in the course of exercise and instruction, the commanding officer is not behind the centre when the battalion marches or halts, one of the other field-officers is likewise to replace him, give the proper aid, and line the battalion as soon as halted, &c. Beside these attentions the field officers here alluded to are to pay particular care, in the advance as well as the retreat of the line, that the original distance left as an interval between the battalions be carefully preserved while in motion.

S. 10. *System of Discipline.*

The system of discipline which seems the most eligible to promote both the instruction of the battalion as well as to maintain in it afterwards the degree of order and regularity the performance of the field exercise demands, appears to be the following:—All recruits, on their joining the regiment, should invariably be handed over to the adjutant and by him directed to attend the drill squad, in order to be there taught, in the succession laid down in the foregoing, the first rudiments of the knowledge of a soldier; first, alone and gradually; and afterwards, as they improve, with others, at open files, at close files, on a single rank, and, lastly in a body, on several ranks.

For the purpose of accomplishing the arduous task of teaching the recruits, a certain number of non-commissioned officers must be carefully selected; and each, as far as circumstances will admit, attached to that particular branch of instruction for which he seems most adapted. The whole of them, as already observed, are to be under the inspection of the ser-

jeant-

jeant-major and the immediate superintendence of the adjutant.

With the exception of Sundays, holidays, &c., the drill squad is invariably to turn out thrice a day, about two hours each time. The recruits, however, are generally to attend but twice; and those only who, from their dulness of comprehension or carelessness, while receiving instruction, appear evidently to require this additional attendance, are to be ordered to fall in a third time; by which means a difference is established between the careful and inattentive recruit, in the earliest stage of the drill, which, it is presumed, will prove of considerable advantage, and by stimulating the men to do their utmost on all occasions, as well as by imprinting on their minds the necessity of attention, they will insensibly become habituated both to that steadiness and precision which may with justice be considered as the characteristic quality of the complete soldier, since they are not to be dispensed with in the performance of any movement however trivial. All defaulters, who, from the battalion, have been ordered to attend the drill, should, for the time so directed, be present every time the squad turns out.

When thoroughly instructed in his duties, the recruit, who may then with propriety be denominated a soldier, is to be delivered over to his company. However, as no individual indifferently trained should ever be permitted to act with it, its captain (or, in his absence, the officer commanding the same) must not, under any consideration, admit of an individual thus proposed, unless he be altogether found adequate to the performance of his duties in the ranks; and, in the event of his not proving so, he must be invariably returned to the drill squad, and remain attached to it until he becomes completely qualified for admission into the company.

Twice (or at least once) a week the companies are to be assembled for the purpose of being exercised by

by their own officers, and this should take place, in rotation, without arms, divided into squads—without arms, in a body—and, with arms, either divided into squads, or acting in a body together. The various instructions to be given at those several drills being already fully detailed, it will only be necessary here to add, that all men found in any respect either deficient in their exercise or in paying the proper attention to it, are invariably to be sent to the drill squad, and ordered to parade with it three times a day.

These company drills which are particularly calculated to infuse, and perhaps more so to fix, the true principles of the movements amongst the men, are likewise wonderfully adapted to prevent their getting into false habits, which, unless narrowly watched, they can hardly escape if constantly acting in the battalion, and still more so if the precaution of exercising them in smaller bodies be neglected.

The field officers, who should frequently be present at those exercises, may, if the ground permits, superintend several companies at a time, a square being marked out for each, so as to prevent their interference with each other.

Exclusive of the company drills above recommended, the men should, about once a fortnight, as a further proof of the battalion exercise, be practised in the several regulated times of march, agreeably to the mode explained, Part I., Sect. 8, and both the bands of musicians, as well as drummers and fifers, ordered, under the direction of the adjutant, to be drilled to the said cadences and length of step, in the manner set forth, Part III., Chap. I., Sect. 2, about twice a month. Squads of officers are also regularly to be assembled, at least once every month, for ten months in the year, that they may be trained to taking the perpendicular, covering, and preserving distance, &c.; and in the remaining two months to practise the Firelock Exercise and the motions of the

Manual

Manual and Platoon. A more frequent repetition of any of the preceding drills taking place whenever a deficiency in the part instructed points out the necessity.

The several heads of instruction being thus constantly attended to, the battalion is to be exercised together twice a week, or eight times a month; at six of these exercises the movements are to be executed with the greatest exactness, while, at the remaining two, they should be performed with more promptitude, and nearer to the mode required on service.

In the first of these drills, which have in view the training of the battalion to the field exercise, the few movements performed must be executed with the utmost precision, the commandant observing always, after the giving of a command, whether the direction it implied has been duly and in every respect obeyed, according to the Rules laid down in the Regulations, as well as whether every body is at his post previous to delivering the word which is to direct the succeeding part of the movement. These drills may last about three hours at a time.

The other drill, the object of which is to render both officers and men familiar with the mode in which the movements are gone through when performed in presence of an enemy, and which may with propriety be considered as the application of what they have been taught before to the great and sole object of all military instruction, namely, the performance of the several duties which occur in war, the movements will be taken with that degree of quickness and decision which is there absolutely required, and often with an additional celerity, which the approach of an enemy, or other cases of emergency, may render indispensable; although, in this latter execution of the movements, the same degree of precision cannot be expected to prevail as in the first mentioned exercise, order, regularity, as well as silence, are, notwithstanding,

ing, to be preserved throughout in the one as well as in the other;—however, as those latter battalion drills do not subject the men to that constant constraint imposed on them when the regular performance of the movements are in question, they may, without occasioning too great fatigue, last double the time allotted for the first, viz., above five or six hours.

The commandant, therefore, on the days appointed for those exercises (which are always to take place in light marching order), will sometimes direct the battalion to go through the several manœuvres; but, more frequently, take his men out, and, while on the march, as the circumstance of the ground points out, order the column in which it is moving to increase and decrease its front, throw files into the rear, bring them up, wheel and deploy into line; or again, directing an officer to occupy a position or post which offers itself in view, and marching to it, halt the whole, and give the necessary instruction to his officers, correcting, more especially, the officer previously detached to take up the required position, should he not have displayed sufficient knowledge in his disposition, or proved injudicious in the placing of his sentries.

The battalion, being previously brought to an open ground, may also be practised to advance in line upon an enemy, fire and charge, as well as retire, in line, by half battalions, or alternate companies; or likewise, as if an attack of cavalry was expected, form a square, and move to the safest position the locality of the neighbouring country admits of.

The whole of the foregoing ought occasionally to be performed in a half run; the battalion, in order to anticipate an enemy in taking possession of an advantageous post, or to support a threatened position, being ordered, both in line as well as in column, to proceed at all speed for a hundred yards or upwards, and to accomplish this without either any material break taking place in the line or increase of distance in the column, and notwithstanding the crossing of a ditch,

ditch, leaping over a hedge, or the obviating of any other obstacle which it might have encountered in its progress. The battalion should also, at times unknown, receive the direction to disband, and to rally at the colours (to that effect carried to the rear) at the place the re-assembling is intended, and where each individual on this occasion is, without confusion, or even unnecessary hurry, to resume his post in the line or nearly so.

At other times the attack or defence of a village, and, if quartered in a fortified town, of a covert way, or a sortie, will be the lesson of the day; whereas the storming of a hill on several columns, which deploy when ascended,—the street firing, both advancing and retiring,—the passage of a defile or bridge from line, —the attack or defence of a retrenchment, &c., will be the objects practised at other exercises *.

---

* In large towns or barracks, where several corps are quartered, those similies of war may be the better exemplified by the whole of the garrison being now and then ordered for exercise together; and, on those occasions, were a few pieces of cannon and some cavalry intermixed with the infantry, it would prove of additional advantage by displaying to these different descriptions of troops the assistance they are to expect from each other when acting in concert, and the peculiar mode of defence to be used when opposed. Should a battalion, however, from circumstances, be compelled to act always singly, and to confine its instruction within itself, this disadvantage may in some respect be alleviated by each rank being made to act as a separate battalion, and thus ordered to advance in line, and perform any movement considered calculated to accustom the men, and particularly the officers, to the exercise of the line.

When moving in column, the wheeling into line might also be occasionally ordered on the reverse flank. The commanding officer, however, is not to omit apprizing the troops, in those cases, of his intention, otherwise the men would be very apt (instead of attributing it to its true cause, that of rendering the troops capable of thus forming, should a case of emergency require it), to consider it the mere result of inattention, and consequently feel disposed to entertain rather an equivocal opinion of the abilities of their commander for this irregular mode of forming the line.

It

It is to be observed, in these as well as in the drills which have in view the regular performance of the movements, and, in fact, every time the battalion assembles together, that no private correction to the men is any longer to divert the attention of the commandant; but all defaulters must regularly be marked down to attend the drill squad for a time proportionate to their offence. To pursue a different plan, and continue all along the individual correction, will become not only tedious, as well as waste a great deal of time, but prove pernicious by the inference it would naturally produce of the expected occurrence of those faults,—a position which ought carefully to be avoided, as inconsistent with the great attention presupposed to have been bestowed on the foregoing instruction, which, if admitted of, can allow the occurrence of those faults to be received only as the result of inattention. Soldiers who are aware of being narrowly observed, and of being sent to drill whenever they are found incorrect, will seldom be careless in the performance of their duties, which at once points out how imperatively it becomes incumbent on every officer, as well as non-commissioned officers, and particularly of those stationed in the supernumerary rank, not to permit during the movements even the slightest mistake to pass unnoticed, and the unremitted attention which is in this particular required from them.

In addition to the drills and exercises already recommended, the battalion, or part of it, is to turn out for about two hours in the morning, once a fortnight, for the immediate purpose of calling out the officers in rotation to take charge of it, and give the words of command for a named manœuvre or change of position. The whole of the men should likewise occasionally be paraded in full marching order, and thus moved for a few miles in the country, so as to render both the officers as well as the men familiar with the route march, and to impress them with the proper idea of this movement as well as imprint on the minds,

particularly

particularly of the former, that, however great the latitude may be which is there admitted for the ease of the men, yet that this latitude is never to amount to irregularity, disorder being as inadmissible in this as in the column of manœuvre, into which a body proceeding by the route march should at all times be readily convertible.

Officers are also regularly to be assembled by the commanding or field-officers for the purpose of reasoning on the theory of the movements, and of elucidating such questions of tactics and duty, whether in the field or in quarters, as may be put to them.

By the system here proposed, although there will be fewer parades and exercises, and, in general, less trouble than by the methods commonly pursued, there will be, however, more instruction; and, notwithstanding the strict performance of the movements, and consequently those so judiciously selected for an inspection and review * not being neglected, the daily rehearsal of the same manœuvres in the precise order and nearly on the same ground on which each individual is every day posted, will in a great degree be

---

* A moderate knowledge of military affairs will soon discover the judicious choice which has been made in the selecting the manœuvres pointed out in the Rules and Regulations to be performed at a Review, as well as how admirably they are calculated to display the degree of discipline which prevails in a battalion in which they have not been more frequently practised than any other movement;—but to confine the instruction of the battalion to their mere performance, and to suppose that a column cannot be formed on any of the companies as well as in rear of the grenadiers, and imagine it to be a military sin not to follow with the utmost exactitude the order in which the movements are there laid down, is both to misconstrue His Majesty's directions as well as diverge from the true principle of exercise, and to behave like the indifferent schoolmaster, who, perfectly unconcerned about the improvement of his pupils, is only anxious, for his own sake, to render them capable of answering the few questions which he knows will most probably be put to them on examination.

done

done away with. Battalions thus regularly trained will, it is presumed, not only be steady and capable of going through the eighteen manœuvres, as well as every other movement detailed in His Majesty's Regulations, with the utmost precision, but likewise be prepared for active service, and practised to what is there more particularly required from them. Great advantage is also likely to be derived from the difference which, from the earliest part of the instruction of the recruit, has been kept up throughout, in the proposed arrangement, between the attentive and the careless soldier,—a distinction which, perhaps, is not always sufficiently attended to.

A remark, which appears properly introduced on the present occasion, is the attention in the officer who commands never to call for the redressing of mistakes but to the proper person. It is neither the drill serjeant nor the serjeant-major, but the adjutant, who is answerable for the drill; nor should the under officers, nay, even the subalterns, be inquired of relative to the errors of the company whenever the captain is present. To apply, therefore to inferiors, in presence of those invested with the responsibility of the object found fault with, must obviously prove subversive of all discipline, and, by counteracting a portion of the system, ultimately produce the effect of spreading confusion throughout the whole.

Another object, which deserves also some consideration, is, whenever the battalion turns out for exercise, to post the companies according to the seniority of the officers who are to be present, and the places they are to occupy in the battalion, which, if attended to, will procure the double advantage of causing each platoon commander to fall in with his own company; and, by frequently altering their situation, accustom the men to act wherever they may be posted in the line*.

---

* Should this plan be approved of, the adjutant, whenever the battalion assembles for exercise, is to direct the companies

An observation which will now conclude what has been mentioned respecting the drill and exercise is the exceeding benefit which would result from the men being more frequently practised than they generally are in firing at the target, and by proportionate reward being granted to those who amongst their comrades excel in this very important attainment. The throwing up and levelling of retrenchments are likewise frequently required in the field, and should therefore not be neglected in quarters. And, finally, all manly exercises and diversions calculated to strengthen the man and inure him to fatigue, cannot be too strenuously encouraged by the officer commanding, to fill up the idle hours left between the parades and duties; and without fatiguing the soldiers by calling them too frequently under arms, they will be found to repress every kind of idleness, dissipation, and immorality, more effectually than any what punishment soever that can be resorted to.

---

to fall in according to the posts their respective commanders are to occupy. However, if only a part of the battalion is present, and more divisions are to be formed than there are companies, the supernumerary files of each are to be ordered to the rear, and the additional divisions, after being formed from them, placed in the line according to the situation allotted to the officer under whose charge they are afterwards to be placed.

Officers who are to be posted in the supernumerary rank (unless differently ordered) must always fall in the rear of the company they belong to.

A FEW QUESTIONS

CONNECTED WITH

THE DUTIES OF A SOLDIER

WHEN IN THE RANKS.

[The few questions here selected have been so arranged as to be easily understood by every private, who may therefore be made capable of answering them; and in such regiments as may approve of this Military Catechism, the captain and officers of each company might occasionally and (when the weather proves an obstacle to the men turning out) advantageously spend an hour in the barrack by applying promiscuously a number of the following questions to a few of the men; and if rewards were granted to those who answer most correctly, the small theoretical knowledge here proposed to be diffused amongst them would unquestionably be the better attended to in consequence.]

QUESTION. What are the principal qualifications required in a soldier when under arms?

Answer. Steadiness and silence.

Q. Can you tell me the advantages derived from steadiness?

A. They are so very important, that it is only in proportion to the steadiness of the men composing it, that a battalion will be the more or less competent to go through its movements with correctness. The greater the degree of attainment it has acquired in

this respect, the less liable will it be to be broken, and consequently the better will it behave in the presence of an enemy.

Q. As you say, amongst other things, that steadiness will render a battalion less liable to be broken, will you explain ~~to me~~ what are the advantages arising from the men remaining in order and together, as well as the dangers incurred by their being separated from each other, or, as it is called, the battalion being broke?

A. As long as the men remain together, they are able to assist and protect each other; and, as they are covered on each flank as well as in the rear, they are compelled only to defend themselves in front; but, as soon as separated, or asunder, if acting against infantry, they will, very probably, by being uncovered on the flanks and in the rear, be under the necessity at the same time of fighting alone against four; and, if acting against cavalry, they thereby expose themselves both to being sabred down by the horsemen, and trampled upon by the horses,—dangers which they will greatly prevent by keeping close together. By remaining in a body they will, in all probability, put to flight any infantry which may be opposed to them, as well as destroy any cavalry that should be daring enough to approach.

Q. But how does steadiness amongst the men produce those advantages you have been mentioning, viz., of rendering a battalion expert in the peformance of its exercise and movements, and of preventing its being broken?

A. Because, 1st. When the men are steady, they give the necessary attention to the movement performed; 2d. They are able instantly to correct any mistake that they may by chance commit; 3d. They will aways be in readiness to obey any command which may be heard; and, 4th. To execute all that they have to perform with proper firmness and in a soldier-like manner.

Q. What

Q. What are the attentions required in the soldiers during the movements?

A. They are, 1st. The preserving of position, which is to be kept throughout; and, 2d. The observance of the different rules given for the performance of each movement; amongst which, those recommended for the dressing, marching to the front, marching by files, and for wheeling, are of particular importance.

Q. What are the directions respecting the position?

A. They consist, 1st. In the squareness of the shoulders and body to the front; 2d. In keeping the head erect, and straight to the front, eyes being only glanced (when necessary) to the dressing point; 3d. The belly being kept in, the breast out, the upper part of the body leaning rather forward, and never back; and, 4th. In placing the heels in a line, knees straight without stiffness, the toes a little turned out, so that the feet form about an angle of sixty degrees.

Q. What are the principal attentions while dressing?

A. 1st. To glance the eyes to the dressing flank with the least possible turn of the head; 2d. To keep the head and body erect; 3d. To see the lower part of the face of the second man towards the dressing point; and, 4th. If the dress is to the front, to enter the line by short, quick steps, and not abruptly.

Q. Could you explain the points from which the dressing generally takes place?

A. The dressing (if not differently ordered by the words *Right dress*, *Left dress*, or *Centre dress)* always takes place from the point at which the officer stands who gives that command, to which eyes must of course be directed. In column this point is generally the pivot flank; after marching in battalion, the colours; and, in all successive formations, the division or file which first entered the alignement.

Q. What

Q. What are the attentions necessary in marching to the front or to the rear?

A. They are, when marching in ordinary time, 1st. At the word *March* to prepare the advance by inclining the body rather forward, and to keep this advanced position while in motion; 2d. To perform the first step without stamping, at full length, and always with the left foot; 3d. In taking the paces to the front or rear, to stretch the knee, point the toes, turn them a little outward, and keep them near the ground; 4th. In posting the feet, to place them flat on the ground without noise, and at the proper distance.

Q. How is the dressing preserved when advanced in line?

A. In marching, 1st. The men must chiefly depend for their dress on the equality of step, and the light touch (without crowding) of their neighbour's arm towards the directing point, from whom they are never to separate; but, as a further aid, they must, 2d. At the word *March*, immediately cast their eyes towards the dressing point, and keep them so fixed for five or six paces, and until, the dressing being properly established, they bring them again to the front, the habitual position of a soldier while marching as well as while halting; and likewise afterwards occasionally, and whenever the touch of the neighbour's arm on the directing flank is not properly felt, or on any command which alters the nature of the pace, to glance them again to the directing flank for a few paces; 4th. In changing the feet, when stepping with a different foot from the rest of the division, eyes are invariably to be turned to the dressing point, and so kept for a few paces.

Q. In giving the attentions required when marching, you mention they were those for the *Ordinary time*. What do you mean by that phrase?

A. By Ordinary time is understood the common time of march, which is seventy-five paces in a minute.

Q. Are

Q. Are there, exclusive of this, any other times of march?

A. Yes, the Quick and Quickest time, of which the former is 108, and the latter 120, paces in a minute.

Q. Pray does the length of step vary as well as the time of march?

A. It does; and the common pace of thirty inches for each step is lengthened to thirty-three whenever the command *Step out* is given, or shortened to about a foot when the word *Step short* is heard, each soldier, in the latter case, performing his pace by stepping as far as the ball of his toe, and no further.

Q. Are there any particular attentions requisite in the soldier when the step is altered, and, while moving by the common pace the words *Step out*, *Step short*, *Mark time*, are given, or, while proceeding by any of the latter, the commands *Ordinary* or *Forward* are delivered?

A. The two principal attentions, at all alterations which take place in the pace, are, 1st. To finish the step which was taking when the word was heard in the cadence previously moved at, and to perform the succeeding ones according to the new direction; 2d. As before observed, to turn the eyes immediately (if not already so cast) to the directing point, and keep them so fixed for five or six paces, when they may again be brought to the front.

Q. What are the attentions observable in moving by files?

A. They are, 1st. To look straight in the neck of the man immediately in front, so that the person placed before him may be obscured from his view, and to keep distance from the former; 2d. In advancing the foot, to place it to the front of the spot from whence the preceding man has taken up his, the distance between the files being only twenty-two inches, and the pace thirty; 3d. Not to look down, lean back, nor bend the knee, while so marching.

Q. Could

Q. Could you point out also the attentions of a soldier in wheeling?

A. Yes; 1st. To remain perfectly steady at the delivery of the caution; 2d. At the word *March*, and not before, to turn at once the eyes to the wheeling flank, and step off; 3d. While in motion, to keep in line with the wheeling man, who steps out thirty-three inches; and, to effect this, to keep the eyes the whole of the time fixed to the lower part of the face of the second man towards the wheeling side, shortening the pace if wheeling to the front, or lengthening it if to the rear, whenever this second man is more observable than he ought to be, and performing the contrary, in either case, if not sufficiently visible; 4th. Never to open out from the neighbour on the pivot side, but, without crowding, always to touch his arm lightly; 5th. Never to close more than necessary upon the pivot neighbour, and to resist all pressure from the neighbour on the wheeling flank; 6th. Not to turn the head too much; 7th. Not to stoop forward; 8th. At the words *Halt, Dress,* to direct the eyes to the flank, or point the command is heard from.

Q. The attentions observable for the principal movements being now fully detailed, will you mention those necessary while standing at ease?

A. They are, 1st. To keep the weight of the body on the right leg, which will naturally cause the left knee to bend; 2d. Not to move the left foot while performing the standing at ease, or resuming the attention, as otherwise the dressing would be lost.

Q. What is the attention required from the soldier in the turning of the eyes to the Right, Left, or Centre?

A. To perform those turnings of the eyes with the slightest movement possible of the head that the motion will admit of.

Q. Are there any attentions requisite in the facings?

A. Yes; they require to be performed correctly on

on the left heel, and so that the two motions in facing, and the three in facing about, be taken in the exact cadence of the Ordinary time; 2d. After effecting any of those changes of front, to remain perfectly steady.

Q. What is the soldier to observe in halting?

A. 1st. To finish the step which was begun when the word *Halt* was heard in the same time and length as if that command had not been given; and, when the foot in the air is thus placed, to bring the other up to it, or back, if stepping to the rear; 2d. To remain perfectly still after this is accomplished, eyes remaining fixed to the point to which they were glanced while in motion until differently ordered.

Q. What are the attentions requisite in obliquing?

A. 1st. To carry the foot which is brought in the oblique position agreeably to the mode directed; 2d. To advance that which is placed to the front, so that, if drawn back, the two heels would touch, and the feet be brought in the halted position; 3d. To preserve the parallel position square to the front, and therefore to keep rather to the rear the shoulder opposite to the inclining one, thereby to prevent its being brought to the front, which, by drawing the other back in order to face the diagonal moved on, is here the fault generally committed, and of course to be avoided.

Q. What is a soldier to remember when he inclines to a flank by the side step?

A. 1st. To keep up the shoulder on the movement side, so as to proceed in the continuation of the line he first stood in; if he draws it back he will step to the rear of it; 2d. Not to bend the knees; 3d. To perform his pace at the proper length of twelve inches.

Q. Exclusive of the increased degree of celerity necessary for their performance, is there any other difference between the step performed for the Ordinary and the Quick and Quickest time?

A. Yes;

A. Yes; in the steps taken for the two latter the feet are not thrown so much to the front, and the knees are somewhat bent: 2d. The marking time is here effected by the feet being successively lifted up and dropped to the ground by bending and stiffening the knees.

Q. What are the attentions required in wheeling on a moveable point?

A. While moving round, 1st. To keep properly dressed; 2d. To take care, when the pivot describes the smaller circle, not to open out; and, when the directing flank passes over the large arc, not to crowd on the pivot.

Q. Can you mention what is to be observed when turning on the march?

A. I can;—In performing the two first paces which effect the turning to the right or to the left, and the three first steps which accomplish the turning about, to remain on the exact spot without either falling back or advancing.

Q. Is there any particular attention required in wheeling by files?

A. Yes; the pivot man, in going round, must be particularly careful to step out a full pace of thirty inches, and the others equally so to keep up with him.

Q. Can you explain what is to be observed in all formations from files?

A. The great observance, in all formations from files, is, 1st. Never to pass the line of dress, and therefore always to keep rather to the rear of the man who is moving just in front, and is of course to enter the line immediately before; 2d. When the formation is to the front, after performing the half face, to look, during the whole time occupied in coming up, over the outward shoulder of the neighbour who is stepping in front, till he is just moving into the alignement, when eyes should be turned to the dressing point, so as carefully to enter the same.

Q. When

Q. When a division moves to the front into an alignement, what is the attention required in the individuals composing the same?

A. When a soldier belongs to a division which is moving to the front into an alignement, he is, in coming up, to guard against bulking out, and rather remain somewhat to the rear of his neighbour, towards the standing flank, in order to be able carefully and at once to move up and dress the instant the words *Halt, Dress*, are given for the division.

Q. Are there any particular attentions required in going through the Manual and Platoon Exercise besides the observance of the directions given for the performance of the motions?

A. Each man is, exclusive of the directions detailed for the execution of the Manual and Platoon Exercise, to keep his eyes constantly fixed on the flugelman, otherwise he will not, 1st. Perform the motions in time; and, 2d. By looking about, his attention will be diverted, and he will consequently be led into the commission of a number of mistakes.

Q. Can you tell me what is to be observed in firing?

A. In the first place every motion must be performed as directed in the Platoon Exercise; 2d. The loading must be quickly executed, without any appearance of hurry; 3d. The piece brought to its proper level at the *Present*; and, 4th. Great care taken not to load again when, after going through the motions of the firing, the charge has remained in the piece.

Q. How can a soldier know whether the contents of his piece went off or not?

A. A soldier may discover generally whether his piece went off or not by observing, immediately after firing, or even when half cocking, if the touch-hole smokes. Should, however, this mode of ascertaining it prove unsuccessful, he certainly cannot fail of perceiving

ceiving it, in ramming down the second cartridge, from the portion of ramrod which will then remain out of the barrel. There is therefore no excuse left for a man loading a third time previous to discharging his piece, and any one careless enough to be guilty of this breach of attention, deserves to be severely punished.

Q. Are the foregoing the whole of the precautions necessary to prevent accidents while firing?

A. No; besides them some attention is to be paid not to cock instead of half-cock, which, through improper hurry in loading, the soldiers are very liable to, and may prove the cause of very serious accidents. The men of the centre and rear ranks are likewise to be particularly careful to lock well up, and, on recovering, to take the proper position of the body and feet as directed; as well as while at the *Present*, not to rest nor even touch with the barrel, any part of the men placed in the front rank or ranks, their so doing being of very dangerous consequence.

Q. Are there any peculiar attentions required from the men posted in the centre or rear rank?

A. Yes; they consist in the mode of taking open and close order, both while halting as well as while on the march, and in locking up when required.

Q. What is to be observed in taking Open Order?

A. If while halting, to step back; and glance the eyes at the same time, so as to perform it altogether, and to remain perfectly steady after the last step is finished;—if on the march, to look well to the right, so as to preserve the dress while opening the ranks.

Q. What is to be observed in resuming Close Order?

A. When halted to glance the eyes to the right, so as to move up together, and in perfect dress;—when on the march, to dress well by the right, and close up to the front rank, by stepping out without altering

altering the cadence, which is to be carefully preserved.

Q. What are the attentions to be observed in locking up?

A. They are the same as those in taking Close Order; that is to say, to glance the eyes to the right, and take at the same time one or two short steps to the front, and the whole rank to perform this together.

Q. Can you acquaint me with the occasions which demand the rear ranks to lock up, and how many there are?

A. The rear ranks, which, at Close Order, are at one pace asunder, lock up on three occasions;—1st. When advancing in line; 2d. In wheeling forward; and, 3d. In firing. At all other times the rear ranks keep their natural distance of one pace.

Q. Is it usual for an express command to be given in those instances to the rear ranks to lock up?

A. No; the last words of the caution, viz., *Advance, Wheel, Fire*, are to be considered as the commands of execution for the rear ranks to lock up, and of course to be obeyed accordingly as soon as they are heard. After locking up, every man is to remain perfectly immoveable.

Q. What are the duties of a pivot man when wheeling?

A. 1st. To face accurately on the left heel, performing the two motions; 2d. When once posted, whether the wheels are into battalion or into column, not to alter his position in consequence of platoon dressing, nor on any other account, but remain immoveable, unless differently ordered by the commanding officer of the battalion; 3d. To face outwards in wheeling to the front, and inwards in wheeling backwards.

Q. Marching in column, what is the attention required in the pivot files?

A. As they are the points on which the formation

is made when the line is intended to be a straight one, they must be particularly careful to remain close to their pivot officers.

Q. In taking Open Order, when halting, do not the right and left flank men of both the centre and rear rank act as markers for those ranks? and in what manner do they perform this?

A. They perform it by taking, those of the centre rank one and those of the rear rank two paces to the rear at the caution, the first being performed with the left foot; and, as soon as the required number of steps have been taken, by facing to the right, executing regularly the two ordered motions. The whole of the markers of a battalion, after having thus faced, must be in a line, and cover exactly. At the word *March* they front, to mark the ground on which the respective rank of each is to halt and dress.

Q. In taking Open Order, do both the right and left flank men of the rear ranks always fall back to mark the ground?

A. No; when the company is single the ground for each rank is marked by its right and left flank man; but, when more than one company takes Open Order, the right flank men of the rear ranks of each company only fall back to shew the ground on which each rank is respectively to halt.

Q. As you have mentioned before, that steadiness and silence were the great qualifications required in a soldier when under arms, why is silence so necessary?

A. Because, when a man speaks in the rank, neither he nor the person he speaks to will be able to pay the requisite attention to the movements, nor to the commands which may be given; and, of course, disorder must naturally be the consequence of it.

Q. I have sometimes seen soldiers, while marching or wheeling, instead of glancing their eyes to the right or left, or bringing them to the front, drop them, and look to the ground. What have you to say with respect to this?

A. That

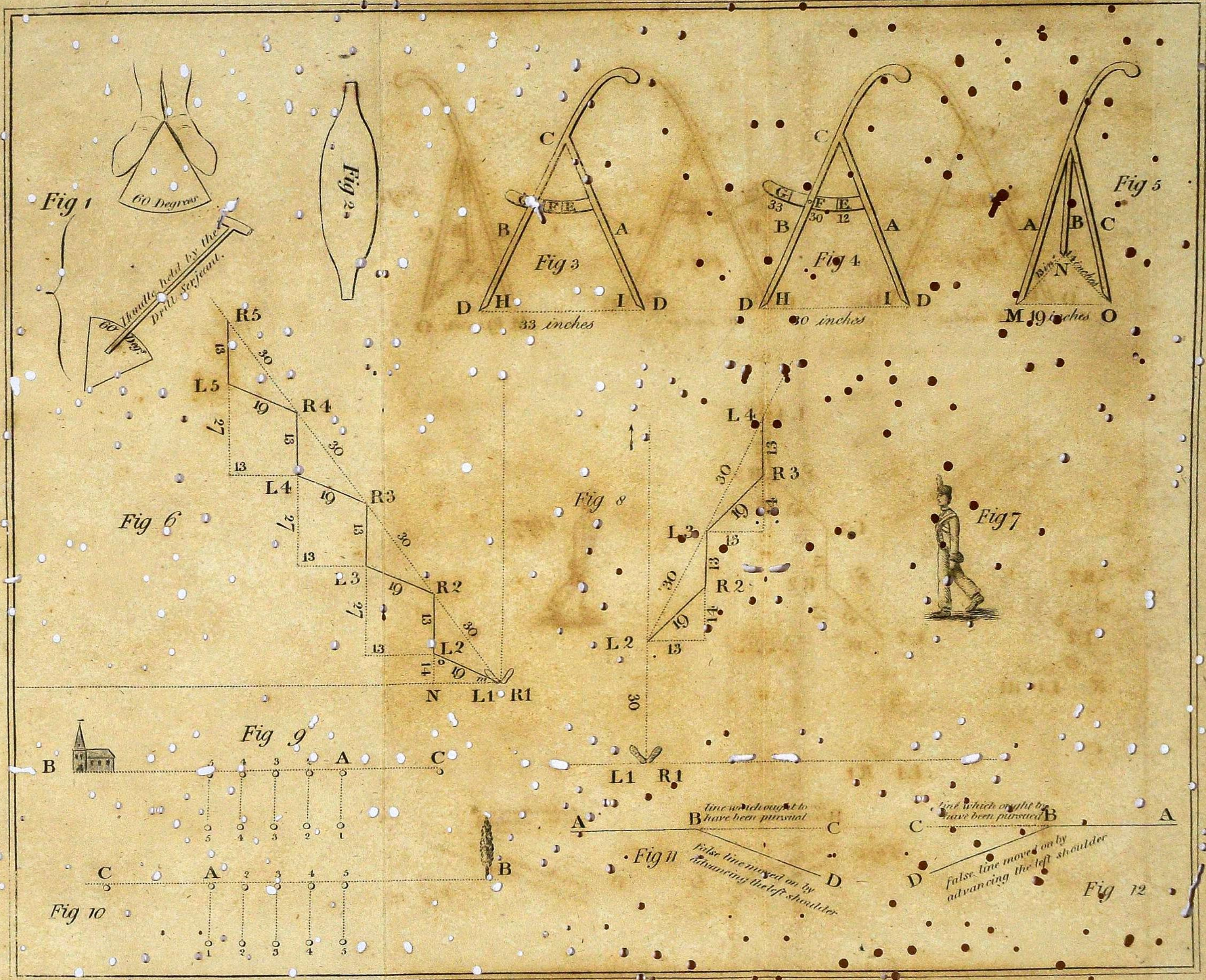
A. That it is, perhaps, the greatest fault a soldier can be guilty of in the ranks, because the instant he looks down, he will lose his dress, derange his position, and create confusion in whatever rank he may be posted.

Q. While marching or wheeling, does not the filling up of improper chasms on the directing flank, notwithstanding the rule which enjoins never to abandon the touch of the neighbour on that side, demand some particular attention?

A. Most certainly; and, whenever the neighbour on the pivot or directing flank moves off, either in marching or wheeling, the person standing next to him is not abruptly to close to him, but gradually to incline, because this chasm might have arisen from some mistake that had occurred amongst the men nearer to the pivot than himself; and, if so, will be filled up again by the re-dressing of the same. If this is not properly attended to, every error of each individual, particularly if placed near the pivot, will influence the whole, and a continual waving in the line must necessarily be the result.

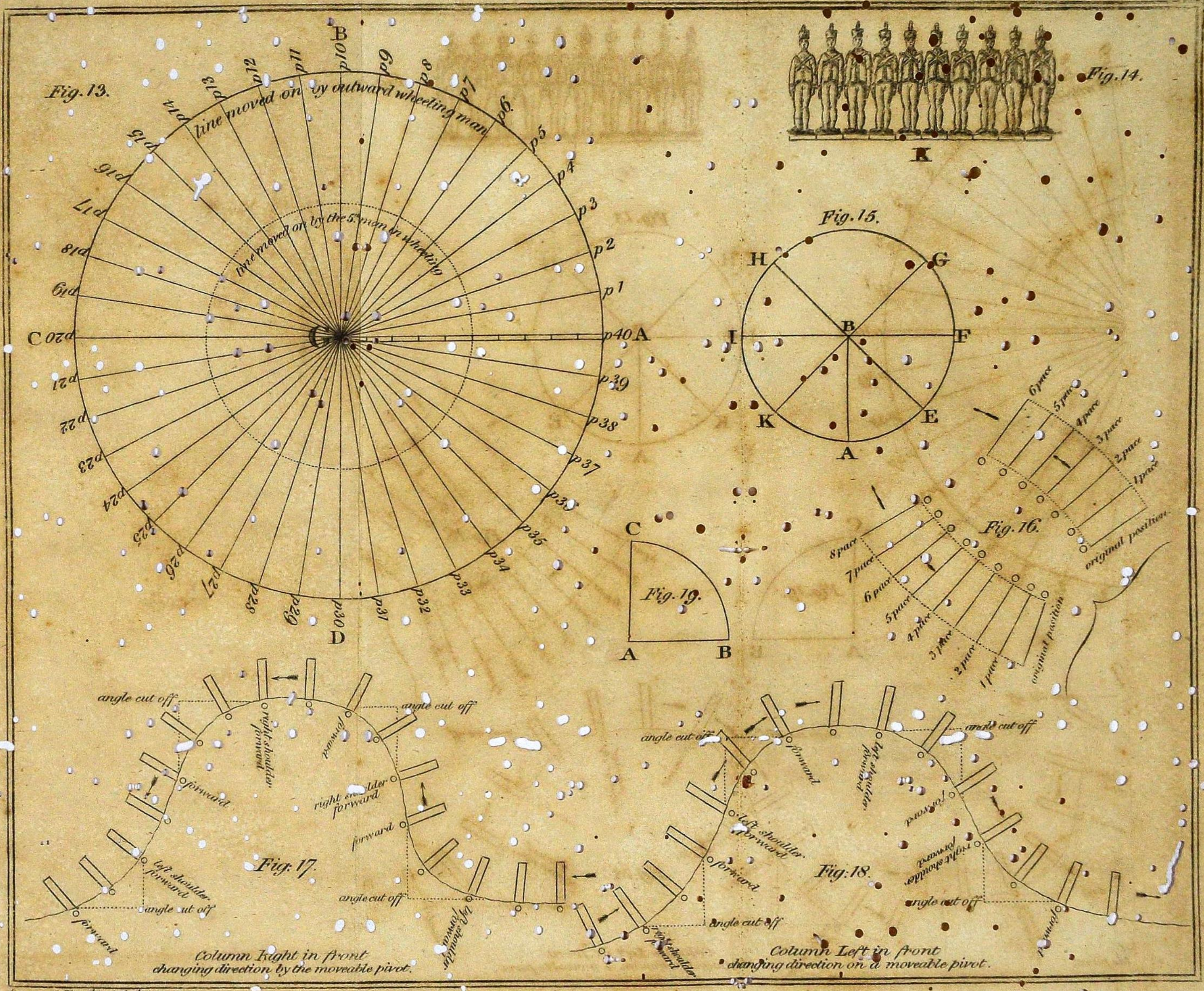
THE END.

Printed by W. Clowes,
Northumberland-court, Strand, London.



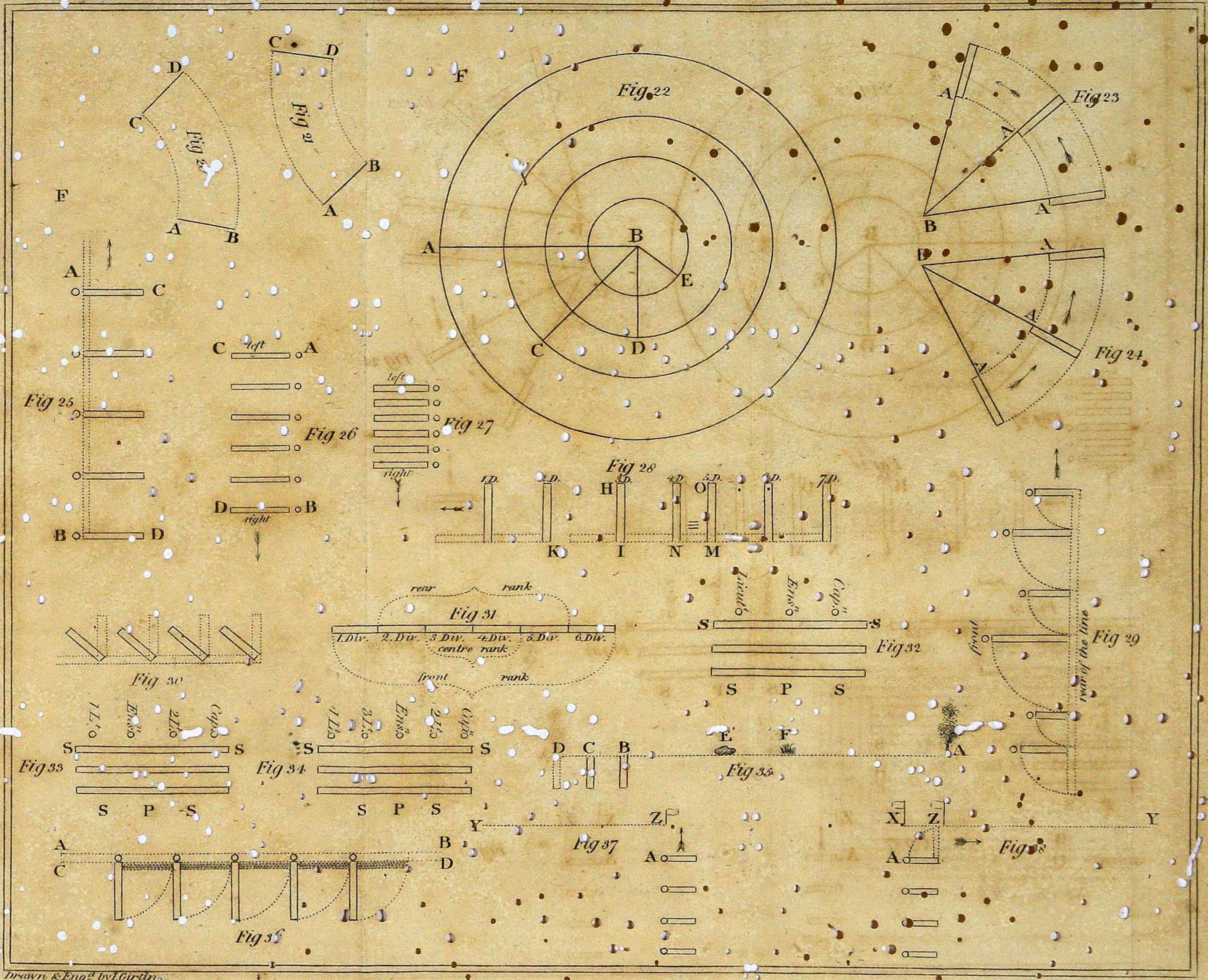
Drawn & Engraved by Martin 6 Broad St. Soho

Pub. March 1. 1816, by W. Clowes, Northumberland Court, Strand



Drawn & Engd by I.Girtin.

Pubd March 1. 1816, by W. Clowes, Northumberland Court, Strand.



Drawn & Engd. by I. Girdn.

London: Pub. March 1. 1816, by W. Clowes, Northumberland Court, Strand.

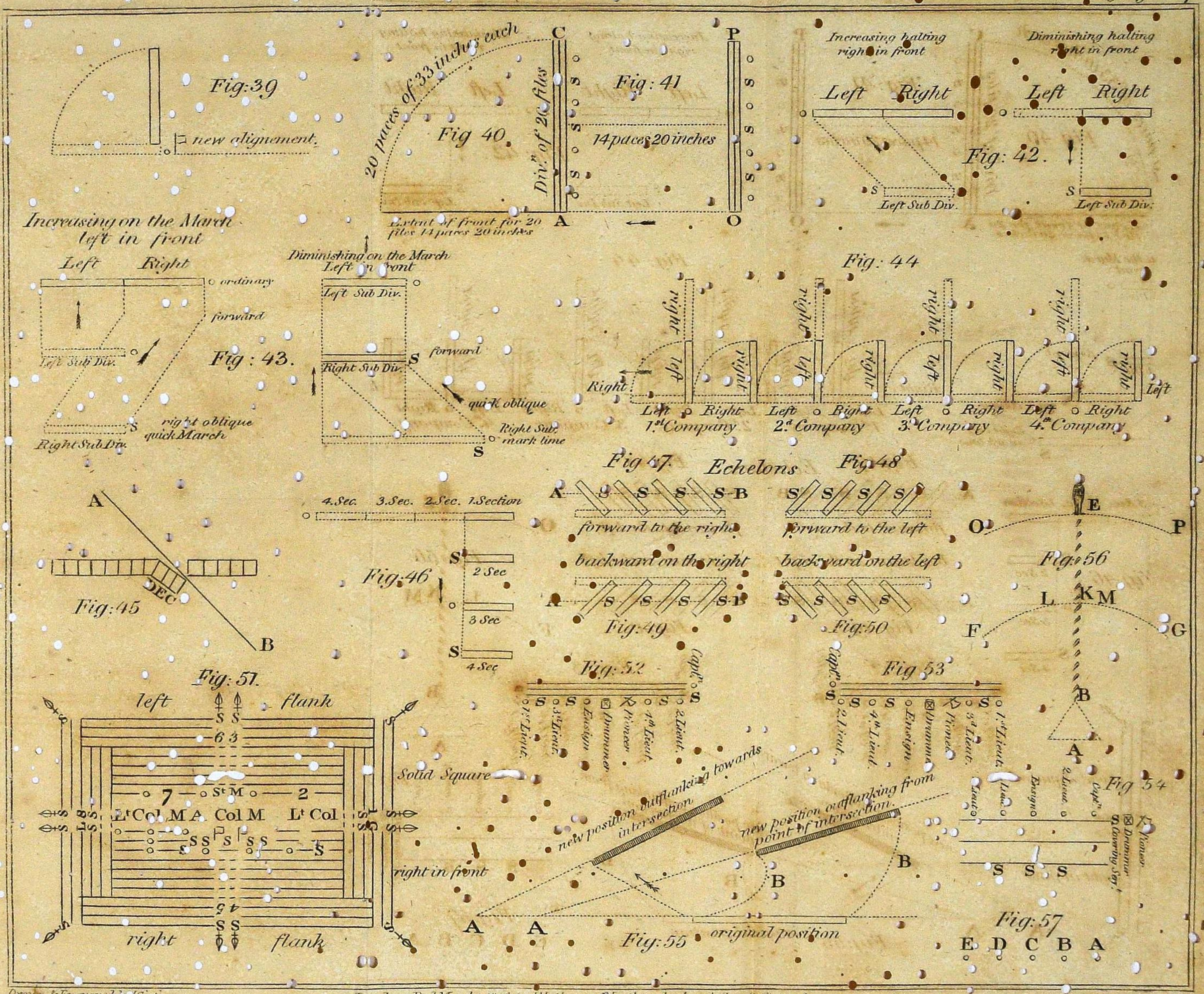
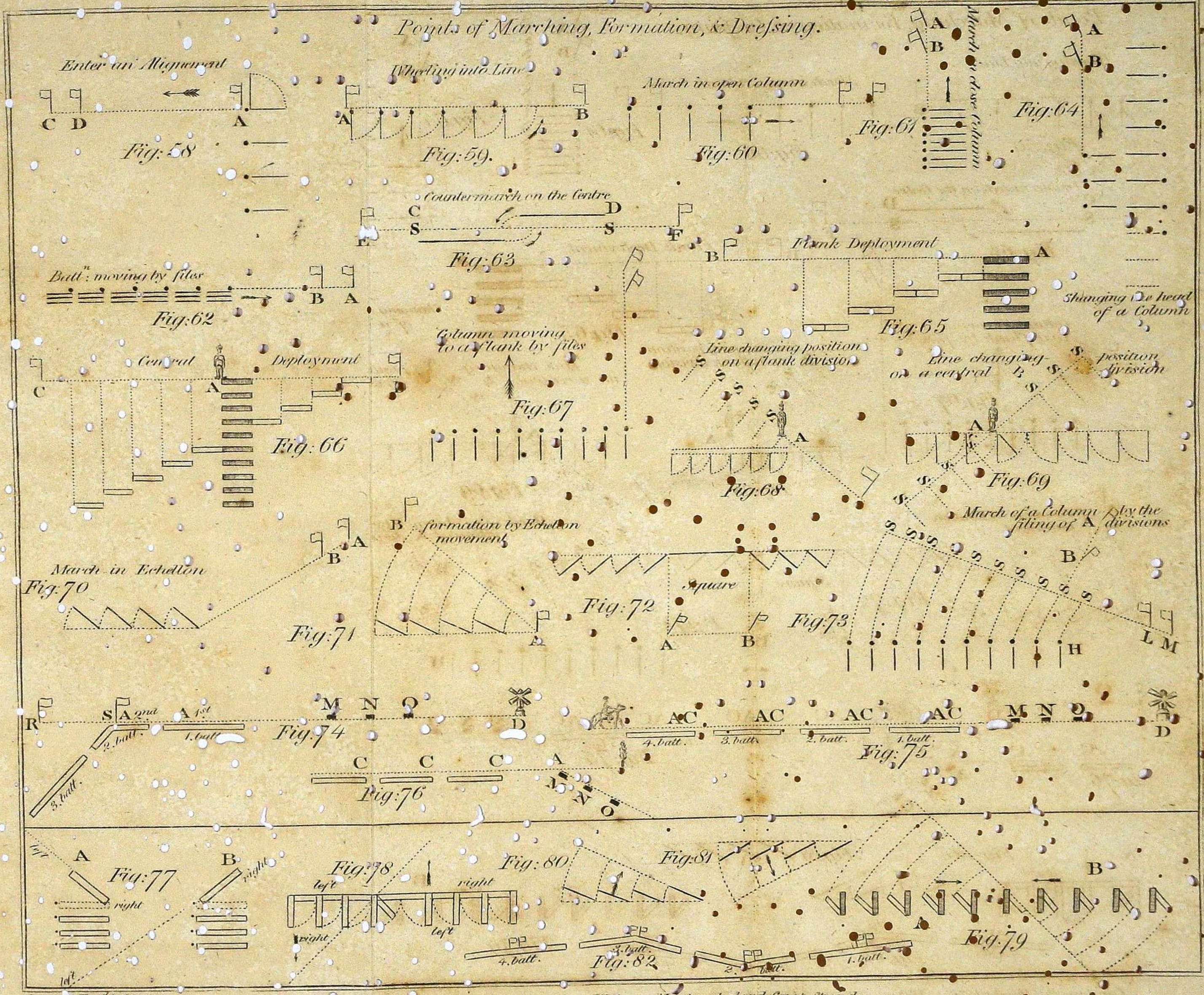


Fig: 39
new alignement.
20 paces of 33 inches each
Fig 40.
Div.n of 20 files
Extent of front for 20 files 14 paces 20 inches
Fig: 41
14 paces 20 inches
Increasing halting right in front
Diminishing halting right in front
Left
Right
Fig: 42.
Left Sub Div.
Increasing on the March left in front
ordinary
forward
Left Sub Div.
Fig: 43.
right oblique quick March
Right Sub Div.
Diminishing on the March Left in front
Right Sub Div.
forward
quick oblique
Right Sub. mark time
Fig: 44
right
left
1.st Company
2.d Company
3.d Company
4.th Company
Fig: 45
Sec
4. Sec.
3. Sec.
2. Sec.
1. Section
Fig: 46
2 Sec
3 Sec
4 Sec
Fig 47.
Echelons
Fig. 48
forward to the right
forward to the left
backward on the right
backward on the left
Fig: 49
Fig: 50
Fig: 56
Fig: 52
Fig 53
Capt.n
1.st Lieut.
3.d Lieut.
Ensign
Drummer
Pioneer
2. Lieut.
Fig: 51.
left
flank
Solid Square
St. M
Lt. Col. M
A. Col. M
Lt. Col.
right in front
right
flank
new position outflanking towards intersection
new position outflanking from point of intersection
original position
Fig: 55
Fig 54
Pioneer
Drummer
Covering Serj.t
Fig: 57
E D C B A



Drawn & Engd. by J. Cirtin.
London, Pub March 1. 1816 by W. Clowes, Northumberland Court, Strand.

MILITARY BOOKS, RETURNS, &c.

PRINTED AND SOLD BY AUTHORITY,

BY W. CLOWES,

Army Printer, Bookseller, and Stationer,

Northumberland-court, Strand, London.

FINANCE OF THE ARMY.

PUBLISHED BY ORDER OF THE SECRETARY AT WAR.

A COLLECTION of ORDERS, REGULATIONS, and INSTRUCTIONS, for the ARMY, on MATTERS of FINANCE and POINTS of DISCIPLINE immediately connected therewith. *Dated War-Office, 25th of April*, 1807, boards, 10*s*. 6*d*.

The FIRST SECTION of a SECOND VOLUME of ditto, *Dated War-Office, 1st of August*, 1815, sewed 2*s*.

The SECOND SECTION of a SECOND VOLUME of ditto.—*Price* 4*s. sewed, or* 4*s*. 6*d*. *in boards*.

This Publication contains a considerable quantity of additional matter to the First Section.

Books with which Officers are required by the General Regulations *to furnish themselves*.

GENERAL REGULATIONS AND ORDERS FOR THE ARMY, Dated *Adjutant General's Office*, 12th August, 1811; *Third Edition*, containing all

the General Regulations and Orders which have been issued to the Army, to the *First Day of January*, 1816, boards, 6*s.* 6*d.*

ADDENDA to the GENERAL REGULATIONS and ORDERS for the ARMY, being a Continuation of the Collection dated 12th August, 1811, price 3*s.* boards.

This Volume is published for the convenience of such Officers as are in Possession of the *Original Edition* of the General Regulations and Orders for the Army, dated 12th August, 1811, and completes the Collection to the 1st of January, 1816.

The GENERAL REGULATIONS and ORDERS for the ARMY, from the 1st *June*, 1815, to the 1st *January*, 1816, price 6*d.*

The GENERAL REGULATIONS and ORDERS for the ARMY, from *January*, 1816, to *February*, 1817, price 1*s.*

This Publication contains, among others, the Regulations of 20th December, 1816, respecting the Dress of Officers, and the General Order of 24th February, 1817, respecting the *Discharges* of Soldiers.

INSTRUCTIONS and REGULATIONS for the FORMATIONS and MOVEMENTS of CAVALRY, price 6*s.* boards.

REGULATIONS FOR THE SWORD EXERCISE of the CAVALRY, 7*s.* 6*d.*

WORDS of COMMAND and INSTRUCTIONS for the Performance of the LANCE EXERCISE, 1*s.* 6*d.*

Printed by W. Clowes.

REGULATIONS FOR THE FORMATION, FIELD-EXERCISE, AND MOVEMENTS, OF THE FORCES; *a New Edition*, to which are now added all the GENERAL ORDERS which have been issued relative to the same, 16 Plates, 6*s*.

THE MANUAL AND PLATOON EXERCISES, price 2*s*. boards.

REGULATIONS for the EXERCISE of RIFLEMEN and LIGHT INFANTRY, and INSTRUCTIONS for their CONDUCT in the FIELD; *a New Edition*, containing the LIGHT-INFANTRY EXERCISE, according to the King's Regulations, 8 Plates, price 3*s*. 6*d*. boards.

ABSTRACTS of the Rules and Regulations for the Formation, Field-Exercise, and Movements of the Forces, for Non-commissioned Officers, 2*s*.

GENERAL ORDERS AND OBSERVATIONS on the Movements and Field-Exercise of the Infantry, price 1*s*. boards.

ARTICLES OF WAR, and MUTINY ACT, 6*s*.

REGULATIONS AND INSTRUCTIONS FOR THE SWORD EXERCISE of the INFANTRY, with a Plate, 2*s*. boards.

TARGET for the INFANTRY SWORD EXERCISE elegantly Engraved and Coloured.—Price 8*s*. mounted on Canvas, in a Case, 10*s*. 6*d*.

Military Books lately Published.

In one large volume 8vo. with a copious Index, price 1*l.* boards, Dedicated by Permission to his Royal Highness the DUKE of YORK,

An HISTORICAL ACCOUNT of the BRITISH ARMY, and of the LAW MILITARY, as declared by the Ancient and Modern Statutes and Articles of War for its Government—with a free COMMENTARY on the MUTINY ACT, and the RULES AND ARTICLES OF WAR, illustrated by a variety of Decisions by Courts Martial.

By E. SAMUEL, Esq. President of His Majesty's Court at Berbice.

THE PRINCIPLES OF WAR, exhibited in the Practice of the Camp; and as developed in a Series of GENERAL ORDERS of Field-Marshal the DUKE of WELLINGTON, K. G., &c. &c. &c., in the late Campaigns on the Peninsula, with PARALLEL ORDERS of George the Second, the Duke of Cumberland, the Duke of Marlborough, Earl of Albemarle, Lord Stair, General Wolfe, &c. &c. &c. One volume 8vo. Price 10*s.* 6*d.*

An EXPLANATION of the EIGHTEEN MANŒUVRES, agreeably to HIS MAJESTY'S REGULATIONS for the FIELD-EXERCISE and MOVEMENTS of INFANTRY, with the *Cautions and Words of Command*, and *Remarks* on *each Manœuvre.* Price 2*s.* 6*d.* half-bound.

Printed by W. Clowes.

A TREATISE ON THE BRITISH DRILL, and EXERCISE of the COMPANY; with an Introduction to the FIELD-EXERCISE of the BATTALION; explaining the different Posts and Situations of every Individual in the Battalion, during the performance of its Movements. One volume 12mo. with 5 Plates, 2d Edition, Price 6*s.* boards.

By Captain A. GUASSO, 55th Foot.

DIVISIONS of the INSTRUCTION of RECRUITS in LIGHT INFANTRY MANŒUVRES. 2*s.* 6*d.* Boards.

A MILITARY GUIDE FOR OFFICERS ON ACTIVE SERVICE, containing Hints, under several Heads of Duty, applicable to Service on Detachment during a Campaign. One volume 12mo. 2 Plates, boards.

By Major J. J. SEELINGER, 66th Regiment.

REGULATIONS for ESTABLISHING and CONDUCTING REGIMENTAL SCHOOLS, 6*d.*

A NEW TABLE FOR FINDING HORIZONTAL DISTANCES, ELEVATIONS, and ALTITUDES, and for the MEASUREMENT of LANDS, &c. &c. &c. WITHOUT THE USE OF LOGARITHMS. With Directions for its Use and Application. Illustrated by Engraved Figures. For the Use of Military Draftsmen, Land Surveyors, and of Military and other Schools, &c. &c. &c. By Major Baron F. LINSINGEN. 4*s.* boards.

Regimental, Troop, Company, and Quarter-Master's Books, as prescribed by the General Regulations *of August* 12, 1811.

REGIMENTAL BOOKS.

No.		£	s.	d.
1	GENERAL Order Book	1	2	0
2	Regimental Order Book	0	13	0
3	Description and Succession of Officers and Non-commissioned Officers	1	4	0
4	Description of Soldiers	1	18	0
5	Letter-Book	1	1	0
6	Monthly Return Book	0	18	0
7	Miscellaneous Return Book	1	0	0
8	Effective-State Book	0	15	0
9	Registry of Furloughs	1	8	0
10	Description of Deserters	0	16	0
11	Account of Defaulters	0	16	0
12	Court-Martial Book	1	6	0
13	Registry of Deceased Soldiers	0	12	0
14	Record-Book	1	1	0
15	Registry of Marriages and Baptisms	1	12	0
16	Description of Horses (for Cavalry Regiments)	1	0	0
	Chests fitted with moveable Partitions, for Regimental Books	2	2	0

Printed by W. Clowes.

CAVALRY TROOP-BOOKS,

Adapted to Light and Heavy Cavalry, respectively.

No.		£	s.	d.
1	Memorandum-Book	0	3	6
2	Ledger	1	4	6
3	Orderly-Book	[illegible]	3	6
4	Size-Roll	0	9	0
5	Clothing, Accoutrement, and Saddlery Book	1	0	0
6	Mess-Book	0	19	6
7	Description of Horses	0	9	0

INFANTRY COMPANY-BOOKS.

1	Memorandum-Book..........................	0	3	6
2	Ledger..	1	4	6
3	Orderly-Book	0	3	6
4	Description-Book, or Size-Roll	0	9	0
5	Clothing-Book	0	9	0
6	Mess-Book	0	19	6

QUARTER-MASTER'S BOOKS.

1	Account of Clothing	0	12	0
2	Account of Accoutrements	0	12	0
3	Account of Arms	0	12	0
4	Account of Ammunition	0	12	0
5	Account of Fuel, Forage, and Provisions	0	13	0
6	Letter-Book	0	13	0
7	Account of Grenadiers' Caps, Colours, and Pioneers' Appointments	0	9	6

Returns, &c. Printed by W. Clowes.

PAY-MASTER'S

Estimate and Bill Book	0 12 0

Returns, &c. agreeably to the prescribed Forms.

	PER 100
Monthly Returns, Cavalry and Infantry	£1 5 0
Effective-States, Cavalry and Infantry	1 0 0
Morning, or Daily States, Cavalry and Infantry	0 16 0
Inspection Returns, Cavalry and Infantry ... Embarkation Returns, Cavalry and Infantry Disembarkation Returns, Cavalry and Infantry	2 10 0
Quarterly Returns of Officers absent without Leave .... Ditto of Officers desirous to purchase Promotion	1 0 0
Attestations, Nos. 1, 2, 3, and 4.......... each	0 16 0
Furloughs	0 16 0
Description Returns of Deserters	0 16 0
Returns of Arms, Cavalry and Infantry........	1 5 0
Returns of Recruits enlisted at Head-Quarters	0 16 0
Description Returns of ditto....................	0 16 0
Returns of Men unfit for Service..............	0 16 0
The New Forms of Discharges, as prescribed by the *General Order* of 24th February, 1817	0 16 0

Morning Reports, Field States, &c. &c.

RETURNS for the RECRUITING DISTRICTS, BRIGADE RETURNS, &c. &c. of all Descriptions, according to the prescribed Forms.

*** *Chests of Stationery on the shortest Notice.*

MAHARAJA SERFOJI'S SARASWA